





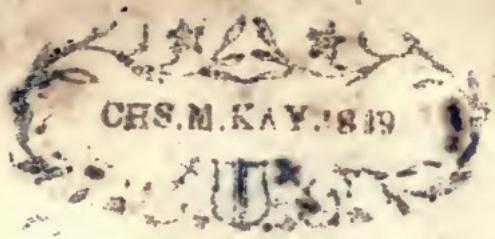
W. L. Huntington

W. L. Huntington

~~Ειρηνη~~ Ειρηνη

Wilber H. Young.  
Glen-dale Institute  
Kirkwood.  
Missouri.

25-



Charles M. Kay  
Shurtleff College  
June 9<sup>th</sup> - 1849

100-12-6270

100-12-6270

100-12-6270

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

# GALLOIA ANTIQUA.

Roman Miles

50

48

46

44

H I S P A N I A







THE FIRST SIX BOOKS  
OF  
CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES  
ON THE  
GALLIC WAR,  
ADAPTED TO  
BULLIONS' LATIN GRAMMAR;

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, ON THE IDIOMS OF THE LATIN  
LANGUAGE; COPIOUS EXPLANATORY NOTES; AND  
AN INDEX OF PROPER NAMES, ETC.

---

By Rev. PETER BULLIONS, D. D.,  
PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY; AND AUTHOR  
OF THE SERIES OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN AND  
ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN.

---

THIRD EDITION.

NEW-YORK:  
PUBLISHED BY PRATT, WOODFORD & Co.  
No. 82 WALL STREET.

1845.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1845, by  
PETER BULLIONS,  
in the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New-York.

EDUCATION LIBR.

PA6235  
B94  
1845  
Educ.  
Lib.

## PREFACE.

---

CÆSAR is usually, and with great propriety, among the first books put into the hands of pupils commencing the study of Latin. In adapting a portion of this work, as well as the Latin Reader, to his Latin Grammar, the chief object of the Editor has been to lead the student, in the beginning of his course, to a minute and thorough acquaintance with the principles of the language. The text of Oudendorp has been generally followed. For the sake of convenience, and also because, with many, Cæsar is the first book studied after the Grammar, the Introduction on the Latin Idioms prefixed to the Latin Reader has been prefixed here also. To this as well as to the Grammar reference is constantly made at the foot of the page, for the purpose of explaining and illustrating principles as they occur; and if the pupil will only take the pains to examine these references as he proceeds, he will gradually, and with comparatively little labor, become so familiar with the grammatical structure and idioms of the language that his future progress will be much more rapid and pleasant than it can be without such a course of training.

To the text copious notes have been added, for the purpose of explaining more particularly some constructions of the language,—aiding the pupil in the selection of an appropriate term, or, in giving variety to his expression,—and, in some cases, of assisting him to apprehend more clearly the meaning of the author. These, together with the references to the Introduction and Grammar above specified, contain such and so much assistance as an industrious and intelligent pupil, at this stage of his progress, in preparing his lessons, may be supposed to need from his teacher; so that by a proper use of this work, both the teacher will be relieved in a great measure from that labor, and interruption of other duties which the ren-

M577009

dering of this assistance would require, and the pupil will have always at hand the assistance needed. These notes are taken chiefly from Dymock's Cæsar, Glasgow edition. A few have been added from other sources.

The Vocabulary or index at the end of the work is abridged from the same author, and contains various and important information respecting the persons and places mentioned in the text, and also respecting many things belonging to the antiquities and polity of the Romans and their method of conducting military operations. In this part several wood cuts have been introduced to aid the pupil in forming correct ideas of some of the engines and operations of war, as they existed in the days of Cæsar.

The map of Ancient Gaul has been prepared with special reference to this work, and exhibits the divisions of that country, with the names of nations, tribes, and towns, mentioned by Cæsar, as they existed in his time, so far as their position can be ascertained from authentic sources. The modern names of the same places will be found, generally, by consulting the Index.

A correct pronunciation as it regards quantity should be attended to from the beginning. In order to aid the pupil in forming correct habits in this too much neglected part of study, the quantity of the penult syllable has been marked in all words of more than two syllables, except where the penult vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant, in which case it is always long; or where the penult vowel is followed by another vowel, in which case it is almost always short; or when the syllable being common, that is, either short or long, there is no danger of the quantity being given wrong. In words of two syllables there is little danger of wrong pronunciation, and if, in words of more than two syllables, the quantity of the penult is correctly given, there is little danger of error elsewhere.

With a view to render the work as full as was deemed necessary, and at the same time to bring the price so low as to make it more generally accessible, only the first six books of the Commentaries on the Gallic war have been taken. These contain all that portion of this author usually read in academies and schools, and to have taken more would only have increased the size and the price of the book without any corresponding benefit to the purchaser.

The Editor takes this opportunity to renew his grateful acknowledgements to the many learned men, and instructors of youth, for

the favor with which his humble labors have been received by them, and for the many important suggestions communicated, by which he has been enabled to add essentially to their value and usefulness. A Greek Reader adapted to the Greek Grammar is now preparing, and will be published as speedily as possible.

ALBANY ACADEMY, }  
February 26, 1845. }

#### NOTICE.

In the text, the references to the Grammar generally will be found at the places indicated, in all the editions. Those marked § 140, 1, 1st, 2d; 3d, 4th, will be found in editions previous to the last of 1844, at § 145, Obs. 5, 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th: And those marked § 140, 2, 3, 4, 5, will be found under § 140, Obs. 1, 2d, 3d, 4th, and 5th.

# INTRODUCTION.

---

## SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *Man is mortal*.
2. Sentences are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound*.
3. A simple sentence contains but one subject and one verb; as, *Life is short*. *Time flies*.
4. A compound sentence contains two or more simple sentences combined; as, *Life, which is short, should be well employed*.
5. In the combining of words to form a sentence, observe carefully the following

### *General Principles of Syntax.*

1. In every sentence there must be a *verb* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood, and a *subject*, expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must have a substantive expressed or understood with which it agrees, § 98 and § 146.\*
3. Every relative must have an antecedent or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees, § 99.
4. Every nominative has its own verb expressed or understood, of which it is the subject, §§ 100, 101, 102. Or is placed after the substantive verb in the predicate, § 103.
5. Every finite verb; i. e., every verb in the indicative, subjunctive or imperative mood, has its own nominative, expressed or understood, §§ 101, 102, and when the infinitive has a subject it is in the accusative, § 145. The infinitive without a subject does not form a sentence or proposition, § 143.
6. Every oblique case is governed by some word, expressed or understood, in the sentence of which it forms a part.

---

\* The references are to the sections in the Latin Grammar.

*Resolution or Analysis.*

Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate, § 94, 6. 7. 8. In analyzing a sentence, it is necessary to distinguish between the *Grammatical* subject and predicate, and the *Logical* subject and predicate.

The *Grammatical subject* is the name or thing spoken of, without, or separated from, all modifying words or clauses, and which stands as the nominative to the verb, or the accusative before the infinitive.

The *Logical subject* is the same word in connection with the qualifying or restricting expressions, which go to make up the full and precise idea of the thing spoken of.

The *Grammatical predicate* is the word or words containing the simple affirmation made respecting the subject.

The *Logical predicate* is the grammatical predicate combined with all those words or expressions that modify or restrict it in any way; thus:

In the sentence, "An inordinate desire of admiration often produces a contemptible levity of deportment;" the Grammatical subject is "*desire*;" the Logical "*An inordinate desire of admiration*." The Grammatical predicate is "*produces*," the Logical, "*produces often a contemptible levity of deportment*."

In Latin and English, the *general arrangement* of a sentence is the same, i. e., the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts, is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how "to take it in," or to arrange it in the proper order of the English. This is technically called *constructing* or *giving the order*. To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

*Directions for Beginners.*

**DIRECT. I.** As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or **NOMINATIVE**, and the predicate or **VERB**; the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to this,

1. Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future of the indicative, or in the imperative mood,\* and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

2. Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so, § 151. R. I. with exceptions.

DIRECT. II. Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows:

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting, Introductory, or connecting words*, if there are any.

2. The **NOMINATIVE**.

3. Words *limiting or explaining* it, i. e., words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the *verb*.

4. The **VERB**.

5. Words *limiting or explaining* it, i. e., words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it.

6. Supply everywhere the words *understood*.

7. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

DIRECT. III. In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

#### *Rules for construing.*

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.

Exc. The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it or be coupled with it, is put *before* its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

---

\* All the other parts of the verb are generally used in subordinate clauses. So, also, is the pluperfect indicative. In oblique discourse, the leading verb is in the infinitive, § 141. Rule VI.

III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause, should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb; (in English between the auxiliary and the verb.) Interrogative words, however, such as *quis*, *quotus*, *quantus*, *uter*, &c., come before the verb.

VI. After a transitive active verb, look for an accusative, and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative, and arrange the words accordingly.

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, &c., should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself, in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions should be placed before the last of two words, or sentences connected.

## LATIN IDIOMS.\*

### PARTICULAR DIRECTIONS AND MODELS FOR TRANSLATION.

[The following explanations and directions are intended chiefly for reference. But it will be of great advantage for the pupil to become familiar with them by going through them two or three times, *in course*, simultaneously with his reading lessons.]

1. BEFORE translating, every sentence should be read over till it can be read correctly and with ease, paying special attention to the quantity and pronunciation. The words should then be arranged according to the preceding general directions, and translated as they are arranged, separately or in clusters, as may be found convenient; always remembering to place adjectives and adjective pronouns with their substantives before translating. The sense and grammatical construction being thus ascertained, the translation may then be read over without the Latin, and due attention paid to the English idiom. The whole sentence, whether simple or compound, may then be analyzed as directed § 152, and last of all, every word parsed separately as directed, § 153.

2. In order to arrange and translate with ease, it is necessary to be familiar with, and readily to distinguish the different cases, genders, and numbers of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles, and to translate them correctly and promptly, in these cases and numbers, &c.; and also to distinguish and correctly translate the verb in its various moods, tenses, numbers, persons, &c. This can be acquired only by continual practice and drilling, which should be kept up till the utmost readiness is attained.

3. The English prepositions used in translating the different cases in Latin, for the sake of convenience, may be called SIGNS of those cases; and in translating these, the English *definite* or *indefinite* article is to be used as the sense requires. The signs of the cases are as follows:

Nom. (No sign.)	Acc. (No sign.)
Gen. <i>Of.</i>	Voc. <i>O.</i> or no sign.
Dat. <i>To</i> or <i>for.</i>	Abl. <i>With, from, in, by,</i> &c.

\* A *Latin idiom*, strictly speaking, is a mode of speech peculiar to the Latin language. It is here used in a more extended sense, to denote a mode of speech different from the English, or which, if rendered word for word, and with the ordinary signs of cases, moods, tenses, &c., would not make a correct English sentence.

In certain constructions the idiom of the English language requires the oblique cases in Latin to be translated in a manner different from the above. The chief of these constructions are the following:

#### 4. *The Genitive.*

1. The genitive denoting the place where, R. XXXVI., is translated *at*; as, *Romæ*, “At Rome.”
2. Denoting *price*, sometimes *for*; as, *Vendidit pluris*, “He sold it *for more*;” or without a sign; as, *Constitit pluris*, “It cost *more*.

#### 5. *The Dative.*

1. After a verb of taking away, R. XXIX.; the dative is translated *from*; as, *Eripuit me morti*, “He rescued me *from death*;” *Eripitur morti*, “He is rescued *from death*.” R. XXXII.-III. See § 123, Exp.
2. Denoting the doer after a passive verb, R. XXXIII., it is translated *by*; as, *Vix audior ulli*, “I am scarcely heard *by any one*.”
3. Denoting the possessor, R. XV., Obs. 1, it is translated as the genitive; as, *Ei in mentem venit*, “It came into the mind *to him*,” i. e., *of him*, or into *his mind*.
4. After verbs signifying “to be present,” *at*; as, *Adfuit precibus*, He was present *at prayers*. § 112, R. I.

#### 6. *The Ablative.*

1. The ablative denoting a property or quality of another substantive, R. VII., is translated *of*; as, *Vir mira magnitudine*, “A man *of wonderful size*.”
2. The place where, R. XXXVI. Exc., commonly *at*, sometimes *in*.
3. After the comparative degree, § 120, R. XXIV., *than*; as, *Dulcior melle*, “Sweeter *than honey*.”
4. Denoting the material of which a thing is made, § 128, Obs. 2, *of*; as, *Factus ebore*, “Made *of ivory*.”
5. After *dignus* and words denoting origin; also after *opus* and *usus*, signifying need, *cf*; as, *Dignus honore*, “Worthy *of honor*.”

6. Denoting time how long, sometimes *in*; as, *Uno die fecit*, "He did it *in one day*;" sometimes without a sign; as, *Uno die abfuit*, "He was absent *one day*."

7. Time when, *at*, *on*; as, *Solis occāsu*, "At the setting of the sun;" *Idi bus Aprilis*, "On the ides of April."

8. After verbs of depriving, § 125, *of*; as, *Eum veste spoliāvit*, "He stripped him *of his garment*."

### *Cases without Signs.*

7. When the genitive, dative, or ablative, is governed by an intransitive verb which is translated by a transitive verb in English, (§ 38, Obs. 4.,) or by an adjective denoting likeness, the sign of the case is omitted; as,

- |                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Gen. <i>Miserere mei</i> ,     | Pity me.                    |
| 2. Dat. <i>Præfuit exercitu</i> , | He commanded the army.      |
| 3. " <i>Placuit regi</i> ,        | It pleased the king.        |
| 4. Abl. <i>Utitur fraude</i> ,    | He uses deceit.             |
| 5. " <i>Potitus est imperio</i> , | He obtained the government. |
| 6. Dat. <i>Similis patri</i> ,    | Like his father.            |

*Obs.* But when rendered by an intransitive verb in English, the sign of the case must be used; as,

7. *Insidiantur nobis*, They lie in wait *for us*.

8. When a verb governs two datives, by R. XIX., the dative of the end or design is sometimes rendered without the sign; as,

1. *Est mihi voluptati*, It is to me [for] *a pleasure*; i. e.,  
It is [or brings] a pleasure to me.

9. The ablative absolute, R. LX., (See No. 109,) and frequently time how long, R. XL., are without the sign; as,

1. *Bello finito*, The war being ended.  
2. *Sex mensibus abfuit*, He was absent *six months*.

10. When the ablative is governed by a preposition, the English of that preposition takes the place of the sign of the ablative, and no other will be used; thus,

1. *Ab exercitu*, From the army. 4. *Cum dignitate*, With dignity.  
2. *Ex urbe*, Out of the city. 5. *Pro castris*, Before the camp  
3. *In agro*, In the field. 6. *Tenus pube*, Up to the middle

11. In order to specify more particularly, the English idiom sometimes requires the possessive pronouns, *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *your* *their*, (not expressed in Latin unless contrasted with others,) to be supplied before a noun, and espe-

cially if they refer to the subject of the sentence. The sense will shew when this is to be done and what pronoun is to be used; as,

1. *Filius similis patri*, A son like his father.
2. *Reverere parentes*, Reverence your parents.

12. Nouns in apposition, (§ 97, R. I.,) must be brought as near together as possible, and the sign of the case, when used, prefixed to the first only; as,

1. Nom. *Cicerō Orātor*, Cicero the orator.
2. Gen. *Cicerōnis oratōris*, Of Cicero the orator.
3. Dat. *Cicerōni oratōri*, To Cicero the orator,
4. Abl. *Cicerōne oratōre*, With Cicero the orator.

13. The noun in apposition is sometimes connected with the noun before it by the words *as*, *being*, &c.; as,

1. *Misit me cōmītem*, He sent me *as a companion*.
2. *Hic puer venit*, He came, *when [or being] a boy*.

### *Adjectives and Substantives.*

14. In translating an adjective or adjective' pronoun and a substantive together, the adjective is commonly placed first, and the sign of the case is prefixed to it, and not to the noun, § 98, R. II.; as,

1. Nom. *Altus mons*, A high mountain.
2. Gen. *Alti montis*, Of a high mountain.
3. Dat. *Alto monti*, To [for] a high mountain.
4. Abl. *Alto monte*, With a high mountain.

15. When two or more adjectives, coupled by a conjunction belong to one substantive, they may be placed either before or after it; as,

1. *Jupiter optimus et maximus*, Jupiter the best and greatest; or  
*Optimus et maximus Jupiter*, The best and greatest Jupiter.
2. *Viri sapientis et docti*, Of a man wise and learned; or  
*Sapiēntis et docti viri*, Of a wise and learned man.

16. The adjective must be placed after its substantive when the former has a negative joined with it, or another word in the sentence governed by it, or dependent upon it. So also *solus*; as,

1. *Dux peritus belli*, A general skilled in war.
2. *Filius similis patri*, A son like his father.
3. *Poēta dignus honōre*, A poet worthy of honor.
4. *Homīnes soli sapiunt*, Men alone are wise.
5. *Avis tam parum decōra*, A bird so little beautiful.
6. *Littōre non molli neque arenōso*, With a shore not soft nor sandy.

17. The adjectives *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cæter*, or *cæterus*, and some others describing a *part* of an object, are translated as substantives, with the sign of the case prefixed, and *of* before the substantive following, § 98, Obs. 9; as,

1. *Mediâ nocte*, *In the middle of the night.*
2. *Ad summum montem*, *To the top of the mountain.*

18. When these adjectives (No. 17,) describe the whole and not a part only, they are translated as No. 11.; as,

- |                        |                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Summum bonum</i> ,  | The chief good. |
| <i>Supremus dies</i> , | The last day.   |

19. An adjective without a substantive usually has a substantive understood, but obvious from the connexion, § 98, Obs. 5. Masculine adjectives, (if plural,) commonly agree with *homines*, or, if possessives, with *amicī*, *cives*, or *militēs*, understood; and neuters, with *factum*, *negotium*, *verbum*, *tempus*, &c.; as,

1. *Boni (homines) sunt rari*, Good men are rare,
2. *Cæsar misit suos (militēs)*. Cæsar sent his soldiers.
3. *Cocles transnāvit ad suos (cives)*. Cocles swam over to his fellow-citizens.
4. *Labor vincit omnia (negotia)* Labor overcomes all things.
5. *In postērum (tempus)* In time to come,—for the future.
6. *In eo (loco) ut.* In such a situation that.

20. Adjectives commonly used without a substantive, (but still belonging to a substantive understood,) may be regarded as substantives. They are such as *mortales*, *boni*, *mali*, *supéri*, *inféri*, *Græcus*, *Romānus*, &c. (See § 98, Obs. 5.); as,

1. *Mali odērunt bonos*, The wicked hate the good.
2. *Græcos Romāni vicērunt*, The Romans conquered the Greeks.

21. Adjective words when partitives, or used partitively, take the gender of the noun expressing the whole, and govern it in the genitive plural, (if a collective noun, in the genitive singular,) § 107, RULE X. In this case verbs and adjectives agree with the partitive as if it were a noun; as,

1. *Aliquis philosophorum* Some one of the philosophers has said.
2. *Una musarum veniet*, One of the muses will come.
3. *Multi nobilium juvēnum*, Many noble young men.

22. The comparative degree not followed by an ablative, or the conjunction *quam*, (than) is usually translated by the positive with *too* or *rather* prefixed. For explanation see § 120, Obs. 5.; as,

1. *Ira cundior est*, (scil. *æquo*,) He is *too* (or *rather*) *passionate*.
2. *Ægrius ferēbat*, He took it *rather ill*.
3. *Altius volāvit*, He flew *too high*.

*Obs.* In a comparison, *eo* or *tanto* with a comparative in one clause, and *quò* or *quanto* in the other, may be rendered "the ;" (See No. 44. 7. 8.) as,

4. *Quò plures, eo feliciōres*, *The more the happier*.

23. The superlative degree expressing comparison, is usually preceded by the article *the* in English, (§ 25,) as,

1. *Doctissimus Romanōrum*, *The most learned of the Romans*.
2. *Fortissimus miles in exercitu*, *The bravest soldier in the army*.

24. When the superlative does not express comparison, but only eminence or distinction, it is translated with the article *a* or *an* prefixed in the singular, and without an article in the plural; or by the positive, with *very*, *eminently*, &c., prefixed, (§ 25,) as,

1. *Homo doctissimus*. *A most learned (or a very learned) man*.
2. *Homines doctissimi*, *Most learned (or very learned) men*.

25. *Alius* repeated with a different word in the same clause, renders that clause double, and requires it to be translated as in the following examples:

1. *Alius aliâ viâ*, One by one way, another by another.
2. *Aliud aliis videtur*, One thing seems good to some, another to others, i. e. Some think one thing, and some another. (See other varieties. § 98. Obs. 11.)

The same usage occurs with words derived from *alius*. See Gr. § 98, Obs. 12.

26. The distributive numeral adjectives are usually translated by the cardinal number indicated, with "each," or "to each," annexed; sometimes by repeating the cardinal thus, "one by one;" "two by two," &c., § 24, 11; as,

1. *Consules binas naves habebant*, The consuls had *each two ships*, or, *had two ships each*.
2. *Quā singūli carri ducerentur*, Where wagons could be led *one by one*.
3. *Tigna binas*, Beams *two by two*, or in pairs.
4. *Singūlis singūlas partes distribuit æquales*, He distributed equal parts, *one to each*.
5. *Singūlis mensibus hoc fecit*, This he did *every (or each) month*.
6. *Plures singūli uxores habent*, They have *each many wives*.

*Pronouns.*

27. 1st. The adjective pronoun, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, with a noun following, is used as an adjective, and means, in the singular, "this,"—in the plural, "these."—*Ille*, *illa*, *illud*,—*is*, *ea*, *id*,—*iste*, *ista*, *istud*, with a noun, in the singular, mean "that,"—in the plural, "those."

2d. Without a noun following they are all used substantively, and mean, in the singular, *he*, *she*, *it*; in the plural, *they*; thus,

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Hic vir</i> , This man.       | 4. <i>Hic fecit</i> , He did it.                             |
| 2. <i>Illa femina</i> , That woman. | 5. <i>Illa vénit</i> , She came.                             |
| 3. <i>Ea urbs</i> , That city.      | 6. <i>Ea (Dido) condidit eam</i> , She built it, (Carthage.) |

*Obs.* In sentences containing an enumeration of particulars, the same pronoun is sometimes used in successive clauses, but they require to be translated differently, (§ 98, Obs. 12,); thus,

- |                    |                  |                |   |                            |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------|---|----------------------------|
| 7. <i>Hic</i> ,    | }                | — <i>hic</i> , | } | “another,” “the<br>other.” |
| 8. <i>Is</i> ,     |                  | — <i>is</i> ,  |   |                            |
| 9. <i>Ille</i> ,   | — <i>ille</i> ,  |                |   |                            |
| 10. <i>Alter</i> , | — <i>alter</i> , |                |   |                            |

When antithesis or contrast is stated, *hic* is translated "this," and refers to the nearer antecedent, *ille*, "that," and refers to the more distant; as,

11. *Hic minor natu est, ille major*, This is the younger, that, the older.

28. *Is*, *ea*, *id*, followed by *ut*, or the relative, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, in the next clause, means "such," and implies comparison. The relative after it may be translated, *that I*, *that thou*, *that he*, *that they*, &c., according as the antecedent requires, or it may be translated *as*, and its verb by the infinitive (§ 31, Obs. 2.); thus,

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Is homo erat ut</i> , &c.,     | He was such a man that, &c.  |
| 2. <i>Neque is sum qui terrear</i> , | I am not such that I may be frightened. Or better thus, I am not such a one as to be frightened. |

*Obs.* The adverb *eò* with *ut* following it means "so far," "to such a degree," "to such a point," "in such a state;" as,

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| 3. <i>Eò pervenit ut</i> , | " He came so far, (i. e. made such progress.) that;" |
|----------------------------|--|

*Possessive Pronouns.*

29. The possessive pronoun is equivalent in meaning to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, and may often be so translated; as,

1. *Beneficio suo populique Romanī,* By the kindness of *himself* and of the Roman people.
2. *Cum mea nemo scripta legat, vulgo recitare timentis,* Since no one reads the writings of *me*, fearing to recite them publicly.

30. The possessives, *suus*, *sua*, *suum*, in Latin, agrees in gender, number, and case, with the noun denoting the *object possessed*, but in English must be translated by a pronoun denoting the *possessor*; thus,

1. *Pater diliguit suos liberos,* A father loves *his* children.
2. *Parentes diligunt suam sobolem,* Parents love *their* offspring.
3. *Frater diliguit suam sororem,* A brother loves *his* sister.
4. *Soror diliguit suum fratrem,* A sister loves *her* brother.

*Obs.* In the first sentence, “*suos*,” agrees with “*liberos*,” but must be translated “*his*,” denoting “*pater*,” the possessor. In the second, *suam*, though singular, to agree with *sobolem*, must be translated “*their*,” so as to denote the possessors, “*parentes*,” &c.

*Usage of Sui, Suus;—Ille, Iste, Hic, Is.*

31. The reflexive, *sui*, and its possessive, *suus*, generally refer to the subject of the leading verb\* in the sentence; *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, never refer to that subject, but to some other person or thing spoken of; thus,

1. *Cato occidit se,* *Cato killed himself.*
2. *Pater diliguit suos liberos,* A father loves *his* (own) children.
3. *Parentes diligunt suam sobolem,* Parents love *their* (own) offspring.
4. *Dicit se valere,* He says that *he* is well.

*Obs.* In the second and third sentence, *suos*, “*his*,” and *suam*, “*their*,” referring to some other person than *pater* or *parentes*, would be made by the genitive of *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*. In the first and fourth, *se* would be made *eum*. For the difference between these words usually translated “*he*,” see Gr. § 28, Obs. 3.

---

\* See Gr. § 28, Obs. 3, 1st., with note.

*Note.* If a second subject and verb be introduced, the reflexive governed by that verb will belong to the new subject, unless the whole clause refer to the words, wishes, or actions, of the first subject; as,

5. *Scipio civitatibus Italiae reddi.* Scipio restored to the States of Italy, all the things which they *noscēbant,* recognised as *their own.*

### Usage of *Ipse*.

32. *Ipse* renders the word with which it is joined emphatic, whether expressed or understood, and is equal to the English, *myself, thyself, himself, themselves, &c.*, annexed to it; sometimes to the word *very* prefixed. With *numbers* it denotes exactness, and sometimes it is used by itself as a reflexive instead of *sui*, § 28, Obs. 3, 2d.; as,

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Ipse faciam</i> , (i. e. <i>ego ipse</i> .)        | I will do it <i>myself.</i>                  |
| 2. <i>Ipse fruēris otio</i> , (i. e. <i>tu ipse</i> .)   | Thou <i>thyself</i> enjoyest ease.           |
| 3. <i>Jacūlo cadit ipse</i> , (i. e. <i>ille ipse</i> .) | He <i>himself</i> falls by a dart.           |
| 4. <i>Cæsar ipse vénit</i> ,                             | <i>Cæsar himself</i> came.                   |
| 5. <i>Tempus ipsu m convénit</i> .                       | The <i>very</i> time was agreed on.          |
| 6. <i>Ad ipsu s portas</i> ,                             | To the <i>very</i> gates.                    |
| 7. <i>Decem ipsi dies</i> ,                              | Ten <i>whole</i> days.                       |
| 8. <i>Precātus est ut ipsu m liberāret</i> ,             | He begged that he would liberate <i>him.</i> |
| 9. <i>Donum ipsi datum</i> ,                             | A present given to <i>him.</i>               |

33. When joined with the personal pronouns, used in a reflexive sense, and in an oblique case, it sometimes agrees with them in case, but more commonly with the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative. It is always, however, to be translated with the oblique case, to which it adds the force of the word *self*, or simply of emphasis; thus,

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Se ipse interfecit</i> (or <i>se ipsum</i> .)   | He slew <i>himself.</i>                      |
| 1. <i>Nosce te ipse</i> (or <i>te ipsu m</i> .)       | Know <i>thyself.</i>                         |
| 2. <i>Mihi ipse</i> (or <i>ipsi</i> .) <i>faveo</i> , | I favor <i>myself.</i>                       |
| 3. <i>Agam per me ipse</i> ,                          | I will do it <i>myself.</i>                  |
| 4. <i>Virtus est per se ipsa laudabilis</i> ,         | Virtue is to be praised for its <i>self.</i> |
| 5. <i>Se ipsos omnes naturā dili-</i> <i>gunt.</i>    | All men naturally love <i>themselves.</i>    |

### RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

#### General Principle.

34. Every sentence containing a relative and its antecedent, is a compound sentence, of which the relative with its

clause forms one of the parts, and is used further to describe or limit its antecedent word in the other part. That word may be the subject, or belong to the predicate, or to some circumstance connected with either. But to whichever of these it belongs, the relative and its clause must all be translated *together*, and in immediate connexion with its antecedent word. Hence the following

*General Rule of Arrangement.*

35. The relative with its clause should be placed immediately after, or as near as possible to the antecedent, and, unless unavoidable, another substantive should not come between them; thus,

*Latin Arrangement.*

1. *Urbi imminet mons, qui ad Arcadiam procurrit.* Here “*qui*” with its clause, “*ad Arcadiam procurrit*,” belongs to, and further describes the antecedent subject, “*mons*.” As then the subject with all that belongs to it must be taken before the verb, (Gr. § 152, Direct. 2, 2d, 3d,) the above sentence should be arranged for translation, thus : *Mons qui procurrit ad Arcadiam, imminet urbi, A mountain, which extends to Arcadia, hangs over the city.*

Or, the English order may be inverted, thus : *Urbi imminet mons, qui procurrit ad Arcadiam, Over the city hangs a mountain, which, &c.*

But not, *Mons imminet urbi, qui, &c.*, because this arrangement would place “*urbi*” between the antecedent, “*mons*,” and the relative, “*qui*,” and so lead to a false translation. The following sentence also affords an example :

2. *Proxime urbem Eurōtas fluvius delabitur, ad cuius ripas Spartāni se exercēre solēbant.* Arrange, *Proxime urbem delabitur, &c., Close to the city flows ; or, Eurōtas fluvius, ad cuius ripas, &c.*

36. When another noun necessarily comes between the relative and its antecedent, there is more danger of ambiguity in English than in Latin, as the gender and number of the Latin relative will generally direct to the proper antecedent, to which in English we are directed chiefly by the

sense. The following sentence affords an example of this kind: *Ad Byzantium fugit, oppidum naturā munitum et arte, quod copiā abundat.*

37. The antecedent in Latin is often understood when the English idiom requires it to be supplied. It is generally understood, and should be supplied in the proper case:

1st. When it is intentionally left indefinite, or is obvious from the gender and number of the relative, and the connexion in which it stands, as in No. 19; as,

1. *Sunt (homines) quos juvat*, There are men whom it delights.
2. *Hic est (id) quod quærimus*, That which we seek is here.  
" *Hic sunt, (ea) quae quærimus* Those things which we seek are here.
3. *(Is) qui cito dat, bis dat*, (He) who gives promptly, gives twice.

*Note.* In the preceding sentences the antecedent supplied is in parentheses.

2d. The antecedent is usually understood before the relative, when it is expressed after it, and in the same case, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 2d.); as,

4. *(Pars) quae pars terrēna fuit*, The part which was earthy.
5. *(Locus) in quem locum venit*, The place into which he came.  
" *Apud Actium (locum) qui lo-* At Actium a place which is, &c. *cus est, &c.*

*Note.* 1. When the antecedent word is expressed in the relative clause, as in the examples Nos. 4, and 5, or is repeated, as in the following, No. 6, (§ 99, Obs. 1, 3d.,) it is omitted in translating; as,

- 6 *Erant omnino duo itinera, qui- bus itineribus domo ex- ire possent*, There were only two ways by which they could go from home.

*Note* 2. *Quisquis, quidquid, or quicquid*, (and also *quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque*,) "whoever, whatever," used as a relative without an antecedent, includes a general or indefinite antecedent, in such case as the construction requires, and is equivalent to *omnis*, or *quisvis qui,—omne*, or *quidvis quod*; as,

7. *Fortūnam quæcumque (i. e. They would hazard whatever quævis fortūnam quæ) fortune (i. e. any fortune accidat experiantur, which) might happen.*
8. *Quidquid tetigerat aurum Whatever (i. e. every thing which) he had touched became gold.*

**Note 3.** When the antecedent is a proposition, or clause of a sentence, § 99, Exp., the relative is put in the neuter gender, and sometimes has *id* before it referring to the same clause ; as,

9. *Servi, quod (or id quod) nunquam ante factum, manus missi et milites facti sunt;* The slaves, which never had been done before, were set free and made soldiers.

38. In the beginning of a sentence, a relative, with or without *quum*, or other conjunctive term, and referring to some word, clause, or circumstance, in a preceding sentence, usually has the antecedent word repeated, or, if evident, understood; and instead of *who* or *which*, may be rendered *this, that, these, those, or, and this, and that, &c.*, according as the closeness of the connexion may require, (§ 99, Obs. 8,) ; as,

1. *Quæ urbs quum infestaretur, And since (or because) this city was infested.*

“ *Qui legati quum missi essent, When these ambassadors had been sent.*

2. *Quæ contentio cuncta per miscuit,* This contention threw all things into confusion.

3. *Quiibus nunciis acceptis, These tidings being received.*

4. *Quod quum ille cernet, And when he saw this.*

5. *Quo facto, This being done (or accomplished)*

6. *Quæ dum omnia contemplabantur, And while they were contemplating all these things.*

7. *Quod quum impetrasset, And when he had obtained this.*

8. *A quo consilio quum revocaret. When he recalled him from this design.*

9. *Quo ictu ille extinctus est, And by this blow he was killed.*

**Note.** To this construction belongs *quod*, (apparently for *propter* or *ad quod*, § 128,) in the beginning of a sentence, referring to something previously stated, and meaning, “ *on account of, with respect to, or as to, THIS THING ;* ” as,

10. *Quod diis gratias habeo, On account of this, (for this thing, wherefor,) I give thanks to the gods.*

11. *Quod diceret se venturum, As to what (as to that thing which) he said, that he would come.*

39. When the antecedent word is not repeated, as in No. 38, the relative, with or without *quum*, or other conjunctive term, may be rendered *he, she, it, they, or and he, and she, &c.*, according as the antecedent word requires, (§ 99, Obs. 8,) ; as,

1. *Qui quum admitteret,* And when he admitted.
2. *Quæ quum vidisset,* And when she had seen.
3. *Quæ quum visa esset,* When she had been (or was) seen.
4. *Quam quum dare nollet,* And when he would not give it.
5. *Quibus quum occurrisset,* When he had met them.
5. *Qui (quæ; pl. qui, quæ,) res pondit,* And he, (she, they) replied.
6. *Qui (or quæ) quum ades sent.* And when they were present.
7. *Quem Meleager interfecit,* And Meleager slew him.
8. *Quam quum duceret,* And when he was leading her.
9. *Ad quem quum venissent,* And when they had come to him.
10. *Quem ut vidi,* As soon as, (or when) he saw him.

40. When the relative in any case is followed by the subjunctive mood, and the two clauses, viz: the antecedent and relative, involve a *comparison*; or the latter expresses the *purpose, object, or design*, of something expressed by the former, the relative is better translated by the conjunction *that* and the personal pronoun ; thus, *that I, that thou, that he, that they, &c.,* as the antecedent word may require, (See Gr. § 141, R. II. and Explanation,);

1. *Missus sum qui te adducerem,* I have been sent *that I might bring you.*
2. *Neque is qui facias id,* You are not such a person *that you should do that.*
3. *Quis est tam lynceus qui, &c.* Who is so sharp sighted *that he.*
4. *Misit legatos qui cognoscerent,* He sent ambassadors *that they might find out.*
5. *Fruges mandavit quas disseminaret,* She gave him fruits *that he might scatter them.*

41. In the expressions, *quippe qui, ut qui, ut pote qui*, the relative is better translated by the personal pronoun which represents the antecedent, (§ 141, Obs. 4,); as,

1. *Quippe qui nunquam legerim,* For, (or because) I have never read them.

42. After *dignus, indignus, idoneus*, and the like, in the predicate, the relative and subjunctive mood may be rendered by the infinitive, (§ 141, Obs. 2. 1st.); as,

1. *Dignus qui ametur,* Worthy to be loved.
2. *Si dignum qui numeretur* If you shall elect a person worthy to be reckoned, &c.

43. Sometimes the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should generally be placed first ; as,

1. *Qui bonis non recte utitur, ei bona mala fiunt,* Good things become evil to him who does not use good things well.  
 2. *Qui cito dat, (is) bis dat,* He gives twice who gives quickly.

### *Correlative Adjectives.*

44. The demonstratives, *tot*, so many, and *totidem*, just so many; *tantus*, as great, so great, as much, so much; *talis*, such; are followed by their relatives, *quot*, *quantus*, *qualis*, signifying *as*, to denote comparison; as,

1. *Tot homines quo<sup>t</sup>,* *As many men as.*
  2. *Tot idem naves quo<sup>t</sup>,* *Just so many ships as*
  3. *Tantus exercitus quantus,* *As great (or so great) an army as.*
  4. *Talis homo qualis,* *Such a man as.*

So also the correlative adverbs.

5. <i>Toties</i>	—	<i>quoties,</i>	As often	— as.
6. <i>Tam</i>	—	<i>quam,</i>	So	— as.
7. <i>Eò</i>	—	<i>quò</i>	By so much	— as.
8. <i>Tanto</i>	—	<i>quanto,</i>	By so much In proportion	— as; or — as.

45. Instead of the relative in such sentences, the conjunctions *ac*, *atque*, (§ 149, Obs. 6,) *ut*, and the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, are sometimes used and may generally be translated, "as," or "that."

1. *Honos talis paucis est delatus a c mihi,* Such honor has been bestowed upon few persons, as upon me.
  2. *Cum totidem navibus atque profectus erat, rediit,* He returned with just as many ships as he had departed with.
  3. *Nulla est tanta vis quae non frangi possit,* No power is so great as (or, that it) cannot be broken.

46. When the relative only is expressed in sentences implying comparison, the *demonstrative* (No. 44,) must be supplied and the sentence translated as above; as,

1. *Crocodilus parit (t a n t a) ova* The crocodile lays (as large) eggs  
*q u a n t a ansères,* as geese lay.  
 2. (*T o t*) *millia quo t unquam* As many thousands as ever came  
*venere Mycēnis,* from Mycenæ.

47. Sometimes, as in No. 43, the natural order of the sentence is inverted, so that the relative clause stands first and the antecedent follows it. In translating, the antecedent clause should be placed first; as,

1. *Quot homines tot causæ,*  
*arrange*  
*Tot causæ quot homines,* } *As many causes as there are men.*

48. The relatives, *quot*, *quoties*, *quantus*, *qualis*, used *interrogatively*, or *in an exclamation*, or *indefinitely*, in the indirect interrogation, and without implying comparison, have no reference to an antecedent term either expressed or understood, and are translated respectively, "how many," "how often," "how great," or "how much," "what," or "of what kind;" as,

1. *Inter. Quo t annos habet?* How many years has he? i. e.  
how old is he?
  2. *Indef. Nescio quo t,* I know not how many.
  3. *Excl. Cum quan tâ gravi-  
tate!* With how much gravity.
  4. *Indef. Doce quales sint,* Tell us of what kind they are.

## THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.

### *General Principle.*

49. Every finite verb (§ 95, 5,) has its own subject, expressed or understood, in the nominative case.

*Obs.* The subject of the verb is the person or thing spoken of, and may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, a *verb in the infinitive mood*, a *clause of a sentence*, or any thing which, however expressed, is the subject of thought or speech. (§ 101, Exp.)

### *General Rule of Arrangement.*

50. The subject and all the words agreeing with it, governed by it, connected with it, or dependent upon it, must be arranged in the order of their connection and dependence, and translated before the verb.

1. *Canis latrat,* The dog barks.
  2. *Ego Scribo,* I write.
  3. *Ludere est jucundum,* To play is pleasant.
  4. *Dulce est pro patriâ mori,* To die for one's country is sweet.
  5. *Totus Græcōrum exer- citus Aulide convenērat,* The whole army of the Greeks had assembled at Aulis.
  6. *Vir sapit qui pauca lo- quitur,* The man who speaks little is wise.

51. When the subject of a verb is the infinitive, either alone or with its subject; or a clause of a sentence, connected by *ut*, *quod*, or other conjunctive term, the English pronoun, *it*, is put with the verb referring to that infinitive or clause following it, and which is its proper subject; as,

1. *Facile est jubere,* It is easy to command.
2. *Nuntiatum est classem devinci,* It was announced that the fleet was conquered.
3. *Semper accidit ut absis,* It always happens that you are absent.
4. *Qui fit ut metuas,* How happens it that you fear.
5. *Nunquam Romannis placuisse* That it never had pleased the Roman imperatorem a suis mans, that a commander should militibus interfici, be killed by his own soldiers.

52. The verb must always be translated in its proper tense, and in the same person and number with its nominative. (See paradigms of the verb, §§ 54–70.) But when it has two or more nouns or pronouns in the singular, taken together, or a collective noun expressing many as individuals, as its subject, the verb must be translated in the plural; as,

1. *Et pater et mater venerunt,* Both his father and mother have come.
2. *Turba quoquoversum ruunt,* The crowd rush in every direction.

53. The nominative to a verb in the first or second person, being evident from the termination, is seldom expressed in Latin; but must be supplied in translating; as,

- |                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Scribo,</i> I write.     | 3. <i>Scribimus,</i> We write. |
| 2. <i>Legis,</i> Thou readest. | 4. <i>Legitis,</i> You read.   |

54. When the verb in the third person has no nominative expressed, it refers to some noun or pronoun evident from the connection; and, both in translating and parsing, the pronoun *ille*, or *is*, in the nominative case, and in the gender and number of the noun or pronoun referred to, must be supplied; as,

1. *(Ille) scribit,* (He) writes. 2. *(Illi) scribunt,* (They) write.

55. When the same word is the subject of several verbs closely connected in the same construction, it is expressed with the first and understood to the rest, both in Latin and English; thus,

1. *Cæsar venit, vidit, et vicit,* Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.
2. *Dicitur Cæsarem venisse,* It is said that Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.

### *Interrogative Sentences.*

56. A question is made in Latin in four different ways, as follows:

1st. By an interrogative pronoun; as, *Quis venit?* "Who comes?" *Quem misit?* "Whom did he send?" *Cujus pecus hoc?* "Whose flock is this?" &c.

2d. By an interrogative adverb; as, *Unde venit?* "Whence came he?" *Cur venit?* "Why did he come?"

3d. By the interrogative particles, *num*, *an*, and the enclitic, *ne*. Thus used these particles have no corresponding English word in the translation; they merely indicate a question; as, *Num venit*, or *an venit*, or *venitne?* "Has he come?" *Num videtur?* "Does it seem?"

4th. By simply placing an interrogation mark at the end of the question; as, *Vis me hoc facere?* "Do you wish me to do this?"

57. The interrogative pronoun or adverb, in all cases, is translated before the verb; as,

- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Quis fecit?</i>        | <i>Who did it? or who has done it?</i> |
| 2. <i>Quem misit?</i>        | <i>Whom did he send?</i>               |
| 3. <i>Quanto constituit?</i> | <i>How much did it cost?</i>           |
| 4. <i>Qualis fuit?</i>       | <i>What sort of a man was he?</i>      |

This is true also of the indirect question, i. e., when the substance of a question is stated but not in the interrogative form; as,

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 5. <i>Nescio quanto constituerit,</i> | I know not how much it cost.                                 |
| 6. <i>Docuit quam firma res esset</i> | He shewed them how firm a thing<br>concordia, agreement was. |

*Note.* When the verb in the direct or indirect question comes under § 103, R. V., the predicate, or nominative after the verb, is translated *first*, and the subject or nominative, in the direct question after the verb, as in Ex. 4; but in the indirect, before it, as in Ex. 6. Thus, in Ex. 4, *qualis* is the predicate, and *ille* understood, the subject; in Ex. 6, *res* is the predicate, and *concordia* the subject.

58. In all forms of interrogation not made by an interrogative pronoun, as in No. 57, the nominative or subject is translated *after the verb* in English, in the simple forms, and *after the first auxiliary* in the compound forms; as,

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Videsne?</i>     | <i>Seest thou? or dost thou see?</i>     |
| 2. <i>An venisti?</i>  | <i>Hast thou come? or have you come?</i> |
| 3. <i>Scribetne?</i>   | <i>Will he write?</i>                    |
| 4. <i>Num ibimus?</i>  | <i>Shall we go?</i>                      |
| 5. <i>Nonne fecit?</i> | <i>Has he not done (it?)</i>             |

6. *An egisset melius?* Would *he* have done better ?  
 7. *Nosne alēmus?* Shall *we* support ?  
 8. *Nonne Dei est?* Does it not belong to God ?  
 9. *Iste est frater?* Is that your brother ?

59. When a sentence not interrogative is introduced by *nec* or *neque*, not followed by a corresponding conjunction, (See No. 124,) in a connected clause, the verb will be translated by an auxiliary, and the English nominative will stand after the first auxiliary ; as,

1. *Neque hoc intelligo,* Neither do *I* understand this.  
 2. *Nec venisset,* Neither would *he* have come.  
 3. *Nec adeptus sum,* Nor have *I* attained.

### *The object of the verb.*

60. In translating, the object of a transitive verb in the accusative is arranged after the verb, and as near to it as possible. That object may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, an *infinitive mood*, or a *clause of a sentence*, (§ 116, Exp.) ; as,

1. *Romūlus condidit ur b e m ,* Romulus built a *city*.  
 2. *Vocāvit e a m Romam,* He called *it* Rome.  
 3. *Disee d i c ē r e v e r a ,* Learn to speak the *truth*.  
 4. *Obtūlit ut captīvos re- d i m ē r e n t ,* He offered that they should redeem the *captives*.

61. The interrogative or relative pronoun is always translated before the verb that governs it ; as,

1. *Q u e m mittēmus ?* Whom shall we send ?  
 2. *C u i dedisti ?* To whom did ye give it ?  
 3. *Deus q u e m colīmus ,* God whom we worship.  
 4. *C u i omnia debēmus ,* To whom we owe all things.

62. When a transitive verb governs two cases, the immediate object in the accusative, according to the natural order, is usually translated first, and after that the remote object in the genitive, § 122 ; dative, § 123 ; accusative, § 124 ; or ablative, § 125 ; as,

1. *Arguit m e furti ,* He accuses *me* of theft.  
 2. *Compāro Virgil i u m Homēro ,* I compare *Virgil* to *Homer*.  
 3. *Poscīmus te p a c e m ,* We beg *peace* of thee.  
 4. *Onērat n a v e s auro ,* He loads the *ships* with gold.

*Note.* The accusative of the person after verbs of asking, is translated by *of*, or *from* ; as,

5. *Pyrrhum auxiliūm poposcērunt ,* They demanded aid *of* (or *from*) *Pyrrhus*.

63. But when the remote object is a *relative*, or when the immediate object is an *infinitive*, or a clause of a sentence, or a noun further described by other words, the remote object must be translated first ; as,

1. *Cui librum deditus*, *To whom we gave the book.*
2. *Da mihi fallere*, *Give me to deceive.*
- “ *Dixit ei confiteor meum peccatum* *He said to him, I confess my fault.*
3. *Eum rogaverunt, ut ipsos defenseret*, *They entreated him, that he would defend them.*
4. *Docuit illos quam firma esset*, *He shewed them how firm it was.*
5. *Civitatem, antea solicitatam, armis ornat*, *He supplies with arms, the city already excited.*

64. When a verb, which in the active voice governs two cases, is used in the passive form, that which was the immediate object in the accusative, becomes the subject in the nominative, and the remote object in its own case immediately follows the verb. Thus, the examples No. 62, may be arranged and translated as follows, § 126.

1. *Arguer furti*, *I am accused of theft.*
2. *Virgilius comparatur Homo*, *Virgil is compared to Homer.*
3. *Pax possit te*, *Peace is begged of thee.*
4. *Naves onerantur auro*, *The ships are loading with gold.*

So also the participles.

5. *Accusatus furti*, *Accused of theft.*
6. *Comparatus Homo*, *Compared to Homer,*
7. *Onerata auro*, *Loaded with gold.*
8. *Nudata hominibus*, *Stripped of men.*
9. *Ereptus morti*, *Saved from death*

### *Impersonal Verbs.*

65. The impersonal verb has no nominative before it in Latin. It is translated by placing the pronoun *it* before it in English ; as, (§ 85, 2.)

1. *Decet*, *It becomes.*
2. *Constat*, *It is evident.*
3. *Tonat*, *It thunders.*
4. *Pugnatur*, *It is fought.*
5. *Itur*, *It is gone.*
6. *Curritur*, *It is run.*

66. Impersonal verbs governing the dative or accusative in Latin, may be translated in a personal form by making the word in the dative or accusative the nominative to the English verb, taking care always to express the same idea, (§ 85, 6, and § 113 ; thus,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Placet m i h i ,</i>	It pleases me ;	I am pleased.
2. <i>Licet t i b i ,</i>	It is permitted to you;	You are permitted
3. <i>Decet e u m ,</i>	It becomes him ;	He ought.
4. <i>Pudet n o s ,</i>	It shames us ;	We are ashamed.
5. <i>Tædet v o s ,</i>	It wearies you ;	You are wearied.
6. <i>Favetur, ill i s ,</i>	Favor is done to them;	They are favored.
7. <i>Nocetur h o s t i ,</i>	Hurt is done to the enemy;	The enemy is hurt.
8. <i>Misëret m e t u i ,</i>	It moves me to pity of you;	I pity you.
9. <i>Pænitet e o s ,</i>	It repents them;	They repent.
10. <i>Pænitet m e p e- cässe,</i>	It repents me, i. e.,	I repent of having sinned.

67. When the doer of an action denoted by an impersonal verb, or by a passive verb used impersonally, is expressed by the ablative with *a*, (§ 85, 6,) the verb may be translated personally in the active voice, and the doer, in the ablative, be made its English subject or nominative; as,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Pugnatur a m e ,</i>	It is fought by me ;	I fight.
2. <i>Curritur a t e ,</i>	It is run by thee ;	Thou runnest.
3. <i>Favetur a n o b i s</i>	It is favored by us ;	We favor.
4. <i>Favetur tibi a n o- b i s ,</i>	It is favored to you by us ;	We favor you; or you are favored by us.

*Note.* The doer in the ablative with *a*, is frequently understood, (especially when no definite person or thing is intended,) and must be supplied as the context requires; as,  
 5. *Ubi perventum est (ab illis,)* When it was come by them, i. e., when they came.

6. *Descenditur (ab hominibus,)* Men (or people,) go down.  
 7. *Conveniebatur (ab hominibus,)* People assembled.

68. Some verbs, not impersonal, are used impersonally, when used before the infinitive of impersonal verbs, (§ 113, Obs. 1,) as,

	<i>Impersonally.</i>	<i>Personally.</i>
1. <i>Potest credi</i>	It can be trusted to you ;	You can be trusted ; 66. 2.
<i>tibi,</i>		
2. <i>Non potest no- céri hosti,</i>	It cannot be hurt to the enemy ;	The enemy cannot be hurt ; 66. 7.
3. <i>Ut fieri solet,</i>	As it is wont to be done ;	
	or, As is usual.	

69. Verbs usually impersonal are sometimes used personally, and have their subject in the nominative, (§ 113, Obs. 1,) as.

1. *Doleo* I grieve, (Impersonally *Dolet mihi*,) It grieves me,
2. *Candida pax homines decet*, Candid peace becomes men.
3. *Ista gestamina nostros humeros decent*, These arms -become my shoulders.

*Usage of Videor, "I seem."*

70. *Videor*, "I seem," though never impersonal in Latin, is often rendered impersonally in English; and the dative following it, seems properly to come under Rule XXXIII, § 126, to denote the person to whom any thing seems or appears, i. e., by whom it is seen; thus, *Videor tibi esse pauper*, I seem to you, (i. e., I am seen by you,) to be poor. *Videor mihi esse pauper*, I seem to myself, (i. e., I am seen by myself,) to be poor; or, I think that I am poor. So the following:

1. <i>Videor esse liber</i> ,	I seem to be free; or, <i>It seems that I am free.</i>
2. <i>Videor mihi esse liber</i> ,	I seem to myself to be free ; or, <i>It seems to me, (or, I think) that I am free.</i>
3. <i>Vidēris esse</i> ,	You seem to be; or, <i>It seems that you are.</i>
4. <i>Vidēris tibi esse</i> ,	You seem to yourself to be; or, <i>It seems to you, (i. e., you think) that you are.</i>
5. <i>Vidēris mihi esse</i> ,	You seem to me to be; or, <i>It seems to me, (i. e., I think) that you are.</i>
6. <i>Tu, ut vidēris, non scribis</i> ,	You, as you seem, (or, as it seems) do not write.

*Obs.* The third person singular of *videor* followed by an infinitive, with its subject in the accusative, or by a dependent clause after *ut*, or *quod*, may be said to be used impersonally; though strictly speaking, that infinitive with its accusative, or that clause, is the subject, (See No. 51,); as,

7. <i>Videtur mihi te valere</i> ,	It appears to me that you are well; strictly rendered, That you are well appears to (or, is seen by) me.
8. <i>Illi videtur ut valeat</i> ,	It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, ( <i>another person</i> ) is well.
9. <i>Videtur sibi valere</i> ,	It appears to him, (or, he thinks) that he, ( <i>himself</i> ) is well. He seems to himself to be well.

*Verbs.—Indicative Mood.*

71. Verbs in the indicative mood are translated as in the paradigm in the Grammar. Care must be taken, however, to notice when the sense requires the *simple*, or *emphatic*, or *progressive* form.

72. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event extending to, or connected with the present, in itself or in its consequences, it is used *definitely*, and must be rendered by the auxiliaries, *have*, *hast*, *has*, or *hath*; as,

1. *Regem vidi hodie*,                    *I have seen the king to day.*

73. When the perfect tense expresses a past action or event, without reference to the present, it is used *indefinitely*, (Gr. § 44, III.) and cannot be rendered by *have*, *hast*, *has*, or *hath*; as,

1. *Regem vidi nuper*,                    *I saw the king lately.*

*Subjunctive Mood.*

The subjunctive mood is used in two different ways, viz : *subjunctively* and *potentially*. (Gr. § 42, II. and §§ 139–141.)

*Subjunctive used subjunctively.*

74. This mood is used subjunctively, but for the most part translated as the indicative, when it expresses what is actual and certain though not directly asserted as such. This it does,

1st. When it is subjoined to some adverb, conjunction, or indefinite term in a dependent clause, for the purpose of stating the existence of a thing, (without directly asserting it,) as something supposed, taken for granted, or connected with the direct assertion, as a cause, condition, or modifying circumstance, (§ 140, Obs. 4,); as,

1. *Ea cum ita sint discēdam*,     Since these things *are so*, I will depart.
2. *Si mādeat*,                         If it is wet.
3. *Quum Cæsar redīret*,             When Cæsar *returned—was returning*.
4. *Ita perterritus est ut mori- rētur*,     He was so frightened that he died.
5. *Gratūlor tibi quod rediēris*,     I am glad that you *have returned*.

6. *Si imperit a vērint*, If they have commanded.
7. *Si reliquissēm inīqui dicērent*, If I had left him, &c.
8. *Quum Cæsar profectus esset*, When Cæsar had departed.

*Obs.* In the first of the above examples the direct assertion, is *discēdam*, "I will depart." The dependent clause, *ea cum ita sint*, "since these things are so," expresses the existence of certain things referred to without directly asserting it, but taking it for granted as a thing admitted or supposed, but still affecting in some way the event directly asserted. This holds good of all the other examples above.

\* The dependent clause connected by *ut*, or *ubi*, "when;" *dum*, "whilst;" *priusquam*, "before;" *postquam*, "after;" and other conjunctions, (§ 140, Obs. 2 and 3,); and also by *quum* or *cum*, "when," (Obs. 4,) sometimes take the indicative mood.

2d. The subjunctive mood is used subjunctively, as above, after an interrogative word used indefinitely, in a dependent clause, or in what is called the *indirect* question, i. e., an expression containing the substance of a question without the form. All interrogative words may be used in this way, (See § 140, 5,); thus,

9. *Nescio quis sit — quid fieri at*, I know not who he is — what is doing.
10. *Doce me ubi sint dii*, Tell me where the gods are.
11. *Nescio uter scribere ret*, I know not which of the two wrote.
12. *Nescio quid scriptum esse et*, I know not what was written.
12. *Scio cui, (a quo) scrip - tum esse et*, I know to whom (by whom) it was written.
13. *An scis quis hoc fecerit?* Do you know who has done this?
14. *An scis a quo hoc fac - tum fuerit?* Do you know by whom this has been done?
15. *Nemo sciēbat quis hæc fecisset*, None knew who had done these things.
16. *Percunctatus quid vellet*, Having enquired what he wished.

*Note.* The direct question requires the indicative; as, *Quis fecit?* "Who did it?" The indirect requires the subjunctive; as, *Nescio quis fecerit*, "I know not who did it."

75. This mood is used subjunctively, and usually translated as the indicative in a relative clause, after an indefinite general expression, (§ 141, R. I.) a negation, or a ques-

tion implying a negation, and also after the relative in oblique narration, (§ 141, R. VI.) ; as,

1. *Est qui dicit,* There is one who *says.*
2. *Nullus est qui negat,* There is no one who *denies.*
3. *Quis est qui hoc faciat?* Who is there that *does this?*
4. *Antonius inquit, artem esse ēarum rerum quae sciān-* Antonius says that art belongs to those things which *are known.*  
*tūr,*

### The Subjunctive used Potentially.

76. The subjunctive mood is used *potentially*; 1st, in interrogative sentences; and 2d, to express a thing not as actual and certain, but contingent and hypothetical, (Gr. § 42, II. 2, and Obs. 3.) Thus used it is much less definite with respect to time, and is translated with some variety; as follows:

1. *Present,* by *may, can, shall, will, could, would, should.*
2. *Imperfect,* by *might, could, would, or should.*
3. *Perfect,* by *may have, can have, must have, &c.*
4. *Pluperfect,* by *might have, could have, would have, should have, and denoting futurity, should.*

The most usual renderings of each tense are the following:

77. *Present.* The present subjunctive used potentially expresses present liberty, power, will, or obligation, usually expressed by the English auxiliaries, *may, can, shall, will, could, would, should.* (§ 45, 1.)

1. *Licet eas,* You *may go.*
2. *An sic intelligat?* Can he *so understand it?*
3. *Men' moveat cimex Pantilius?* Shall (or *should*) the insect Pantilius *discompose me?*
4. *Quis istos ferat?* Who *could bear those men?*
5. *Si hic sis, aliter sentias,* If you were here you *would think otherwise.*

### Imperatively.

6. *Sic eat,* Thus *let her (or him) go.*
7. *Eāmus,* Let us *go.*
8. *Pugnetur, (Impersonally,)* Let it *be fought.*
9. *Dū faciant,* May the gods *grant.*

78. *Imperfect.* The imperfect subjunctive used potentially, is preceded by a past tense, and expresses *past* liberty, power, will, or duty, but still in its use expresses time very indefinitely. It is usually rendered by the English

auxiliaries, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, sometimes *had*, *would have*, *should have*; as,

1. *Legēbat ut discēret*, He read that he *might learn*.
2. *Quid facērem?* What *could I do?*
3. *Iret si jubēres*, He *would go* if you *should order it*.
4. *Cur venīret*, Why *should he come*.
5. *Rogavērunt ut venīret*, They entreated that he *would come*.
6. *Si quis dicēret, nunquam putārem*, If any one *had said* it, I *would not have thought* it.

*Note.* After verbs denoting to hinder, forbid, and the like, *quo minus* with the subjunctive, may be rendered by *from* and the present participle, (§ 45, II. 3.); thus,

7. *Impedivit quo minus iret*, He hindered him *from going*

*Obs.* An action or state which would, or would not exist, or have existed, in a case supposed, but the contrary of which is implied, is expressed in Latin by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, without an antecedent verb or conjunction, (§ 139, 2.); as,

8. *Scribērem, si nescesse es*. I *would write*, if it were necessary.  
*set*,
8. *Scripsissem, si necesse fuisset*, I *would have written*, had it been necessary.

79. *Perfect*. The perfect subjunctive properly expresses what is supposed to be past, but of which there exists uncertainty. Thus used it is commonly rendered by the auxiliaries *may have*, *can have*, &c. It is also used sometimes in a present and sometimes in a future sense, with much variety of meaning, according to its connection, (§ 45, III.); as,

1. *Fortasse erravērim*, Perhaps I *may have erred*.
2. *Etsi non scripsērit*, Though he *cannot have written*.
3. *Ut sic dixērim*, That I *may so speak*.
4. *Citius credidērim*, I *would sooner believe*.
5. *Facile dixērim*, I *could easily tell*.
6. *Quasi affuērim*, As if I *had been present*.

80. *Pluperfect*. The pluperfect (§ 45, IV.) is usually rendered by the auxiliaries, *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *should have*, as in the paradigm of the verb. But when an action is related as having been future at a certain past time, it is expressed in Latin in the pluperfect subjunctive, and translated *should*; as,

1. *Quodcumque jussisset me factūrum dixi*, I said that I *would do whatever he should order*

2. *Promisisti te scriptūrum, si* You promised that thou would  
*rogavisse m;* write, if I should desire it.  
 3. *Dum convalusset,* Until he should get well.

81. The pluperfect subjunctive active, with *quum*, in verbs not deponent, is used instead of a past participle active, (§ 49, 8,) and may be rendered by the compound perfect participle in English; as,

1. *Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset* Cæsar having said these things;  
 (literally, Cæsar, when he had said these things.)

82. When the subjunctive has a relative for its subject, and the relative and antecedent clause involve a comparison, they may be rendered as in No. 40, or the sense will be expressed if we render the relative by *as*, and the subjunctive by the infinitive; thus,

1. *Quis tam esset amens qui semper vivere t,* Who would be so foolish as to live always.  
 2. *Neque tu es qui nescias,* You are not such a one as not to know.

83. When the relative and subjunctive follow such adjectives as *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, (§ 141, Obs. 2.) and the like; or when they express the end or design of something expressed in the antecedent clause, their meaning will be expressed as in No. 40, or by the infinitive alone, or preceded by the phrase "in order to;" thus,

1. *Dignum qui secundus ab Romulo numeretur,* Worthy to be ranked next after Romulus.  
 2. *Legatos misérunt qui eum accusarent,* They sent legates to accuse (or, in order to accuse) him.  
 3. *Virgas iis dedit qui ibus agerent,* He gave them rods to drive, (in order to drive; or, so that with these they might drive.)

84. The subjunctive with, or without *ut*, after verbs signifying to *bid*, *forbid*, *tell*, *allow*, *hinder*, *command*, and the like, (§ 140, 1, 3d, and Obs. 5,) may be rendered by the English infinitive preceded by the subject of the verb in the objective case; as,

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Precor venias,</i>            | I pray that you may come; i. e.,<br>I pray you to come. |
| 2. <i>Dic veniat,</i>               | Tell her to come.                                       |
| 3. <i>Sine eat,</i>                 | Permit him to go.                                       |
| 4. <i>Non patieris ut eant,</i>     | You will not suffer them to go.                         |
| 5. <i>Non patieris ut vescamur,</i> | You do not suffer us to eat.                            |

85. When several verbs in the same mood and tense, have the same nominative, and are connected in the same construction, the *auxiliary* and "to," the sign of the infinitive, in the translation is used with the first only, and understood to the rest; as,

1. *Et vidisset et audivisset*, He might have both seen and heard.
2. *Et visus et auditus esset*, He might have been both seen and heard.
3. *Cupimus et videre et audire*, We wish both to see and hear.

### *The Infinitive Mood.*

86. When the infinitive is without a subject, it is to be considered as a verbal noun, (§ 144,) and translated as in the paradigm of the verb; as,

1. *Volo scribere*, I wish to write.
2. *Dicitur didicisse*, He is said to have learned
3. *Dicitur iturus esse*, He is said to be about to go.
4. *Dicitur iturus fuisse*, He is said to have been about to go.

87. When the verbs *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, in the indicative or subjunctive, are translated by the English auxiliaries, *can*, *will*, *will not*, *will rather*, and sometimes, in the past tense, by *could*, *would*, &c., the infinitive following is translated without *to* before it; as,

1. *Potest fieri*, It can be done.
2. *Volo ire*, I will go.
3. *Nolo facere*, I will not do it.
4. *Malo facere*, I will rather do it.
5. *Ut se volucrem facere vellet*, That he would make her a bird.
6. *Nihil jam defendi potuit*, Nothing could now be defended.
7. *Hoc facere non potuit*, He could not do this.
8. *Nolite timere*, Do not fear.

88. The present is generally translated as the perfect without "to," after the imperfect, perfect and pluperfect tenses of *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, when translated *could*, *would*, *would not*, *would rather*; and with "to" after the same tenses of *debeo*, and *oportet*, translated *ought*; as,

1. *Melius fieri non potuit*, It could not have been done better.
2. *Volui dicere*, I would have said.
3. *Sume re arma noluit*, He would not have taken arms.
4. *Maluit augere*, He would rather have increased.
5. *Quam potuisset edere*, Than he could have caused.
6. *Debuisti mihi ignoroscere*, You ought to have pardoned me.
7. *Dividi oportuit*. It ought to have been divided.

*Note.* A strictly literal translation of most of the above sentences would not express the precise idea intended; thus, in the third sentence, "He would not have taken arms," and "He was not willing to take arms," manifestly do not mean the same thing.

89. After verbs denoting to *see*, *hear*, *feel*, and the like, the present infinitive is often translated by the English present participle; as,

1. *Audivi eum dicere*, I heard him *saying*.
2. *Surgere videt lunam*, He sees the moon *rising*.
3. *Terram tremere sensit*, He felt the earth *trembling*.

*Obs.* So also when the infinitive alone, or as part of a clause, is the subject of another verb; as,

4. *Morari periculōsum est*, Delaying is *dangerous*.
5. *Morari periculōsum (esse) arbitrantur*, They think that *delaying* is *dangerous*.

### *The Infinitive with a subject.*

90. The infinitive with its subject in the accusative, though but seldom, is sometimes translated in the same form in English; as,

1. *Cupio te venire*, I wish *you to come*.
2. *Quos discordare novērat*, Whom he had known *to differ*.
3. *Hoc optimum esse judicavit*, He decided *this to be the best*.
4. *Eum vocari jussit*, He ordered *him to be called*.

91. The infinitive with a subject, usually is, and always may be, translated by the English indicative or potential, according to the sense intended. When so rendered, its subject must always be translated in the nominative; and this, if not a relative, is usually preceded by the conjunction *that*, (§ 145,); as,

1. *Cupio te venire*, I wish *that you would come*.
2. *Dicit me scribere*, He says *that I write*.
3. *Eos iisse putabat*, He thought *that they had gone*.
4. *Quem nunquam risisse ferunt*, Who they say never *laughed*.
5. *Rogavit quid faciendum (esse) putaret*, He asked *what he thought ought to be done*.

92. Both the Latin and the English infinitive, by their tenses, represent an act, &c., as present, past or future, *at the time of the governing verb*. Hence, when the one is translated by the other; that is, the Latin infinitive by the English infinitive, (Nos. 86 and 90,) any tense of the one

will be correctly translated by the same tense in the other, (except as in No. 88,) no matter what be the tense of the governing verb; as,

- |                             |   |                 |                   |                         |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Pres. <i>Dicitur</i> ,   | { | Pres.           | Past.             | Future.                 |
| 2. Past, <i>Dicebatur</i> , |   | <i>habēre</i> ; | <i>habuisse</i> ; | <i>habitūrus esse</i> . |
| 3. Fut. <i>Dicetur</i> ,    |   |                 |                   |                         |
- |                         |   |  |  |  |
|-------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| 1. Pres. He is said     | { |  |  |  |
| 2. Past, He was said    |   | to have; to have had; to be about to have. |  |  |
| 3. Fut. He will be said |   |  |  |  |

93. But when the Latin infinitive, with its subject, is translated by the English *indicative* or *potential*, the tense used in these moods, must be that which will correctly express the time of the act expressed by the Latin infinitive as estimated, not from the time of the governing verb, as in Latin, but as estimated from the present. That is, events present at the same time, or past at the same time, will be expressed in English by the same tense; an event represented in Latin as prior to the present time, (perfect infinitive after the present tense,) will be expressed by the English imperfect or perfect indefinite; and an event represented in Latin as prior to a past event, (perfect infinitive after a past tense,) will be expressed by the English pluperfect: thus:

1. Pres. *Dicunt eum venire*, They say that he is coming, or comes.
2. Past, *Dixerunt eum venire*, They said that he came.
3. Pres. *Dicunt eum venisse*, They say that he came.
4. Past, *Dixerunt eum venisse*, They said that he had come.
5. Past, *Cæperunt suspicari illam* They began to suspect that she ventre, came.

*Note.* The infinitive after the future does not follow this analogy, but is always translated in its own tense; as,

- |       |       |         |
|-------|-------|---------|
| Pres. | Perf. | Future. |
|-------|-------|---------|
6. *Dicent cum venire*, *venisse*, *ventūrum esse*.  
They will say that he comes, has come, will come.

94. 1. Present, past, and future time, are variously expressed as follows:

- 1st. *Present time* is expressed by the *present tense*, and sometimes by the *perfect definite*.
- 2d. *Past time* is expressed by the *imperfect*, *perfect definite* and *pluperfect*.—by the *perfect participle*,—the *present infinitive after a past tense*,—the *present tense used to express a past event*, § 44, I, 3,—and by the *pre-*

*sent participle*, agreeing with the subject of the governing verb in any of these tenses, § 49, 5.

3d. Future time is expressed by the *future*, and *future perfect*.

2. The infinitive of deponent verbs, is translated in the same manner as the infinitive active in the following examples in Nos. 95 to 100.

3. After verbs denoting to *promise*, *request*, *advise*, *command*, and the like, implying a reference to something future, the present infinitive, with its subject, is usually translated as the future, by *should*, or *would*, (See No. 100, 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9,); as, *Jussit, eos per castra duci*, He ordered that they *should be led* through the camp.

4. The Latin words for “*he said*,” “*saying*,” or the like, introducing an oblique narration, are often omitted, and the infinitive takes the form of translation corresponding to the time expressed by the word to be supplied.

From these principles are deduced the following directions for translating the infinitive with a subject.

#### *Present Infinitive after Present or Future time.*

95. DIRECT. I. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, the *perfect* used definitely, or *future tense*, the present infinitive is translated as the present; as,

##### *Active Voice.*

- |                               |                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Dico eum laudare</i> ,  | I say that he <i>praises</i> .       |
| 2. <i>Dixi eum laudare</i> ,  | I have said that he <i>praises</i> . |
| 3. <i>Dicam eum laudare</i> , | I will say that he <i>praises</i> .  |

##### *Passive Voice.*

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 4. <i>Dico eum laudari</i> ,  | I say that he <i>is praised</i> .       |
| 5. <i>Dixi eum laudari</i> ,  | I have said that he <i>is praised</i> . |
| 6. <i>Dicam eum laudari</i> , | I will say that he <i>is praised</i> .  |

#### *Present Infinitive after Past time.*

96. DIRECT. II. When the preceding verb is in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, or in the *present infinitive after a past tense*, the present infinitive is translated as the *imperfect*, or *perfect indefinite*; as,

*Present Infinitive Active.*

1. *Dicebam eum laudāre*, I said that he praised.
2. *Dixi eum laudāre*, I said that he praised.
3. *Dixeram eum laudāre*, I had said that he praised.
4. *Cæpi dicere eum laudāre*, I began to say that he praised.

*Present Infinitive Passive.*

5. *Dicebam eum laudāri*, I said that he was praised.
6. *Dixi eum laudāri*, I said that he was praised.
7. *Dixeram eum laudāri*, I had said that he was praised.
8. *Cæpi dicere eum laudāri*, I began to say that he was praised.

Exc. I. When the present infinitive expresses that which is always true, it must be translated in the *present*, after any tense, § 44, I. 1; as

9. *Doctus erat deum gubernare mundum*. He had been taught that God governs the world.

Exc. II. When the present infinitive expresses an act subsequent to the time of the governing verb, it is translated after any tense, by the potential with *should*; *would*; as,

10. *Jubet* { He orders
11. *Jussit* { *te ire*, He ordered { that you should go.
12. *Jussérat* { He had ordered }

*Perfect Infinitive after Present or Future time.*

97. DIRECT. III. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, *perfect definite*, or *future tense*, the perfect infinitive is translated as the imperfect or perfect indefinite; as,

*Active Voice.*

1. *Dico eum laudavisse*, I say that he praised.
2. *Dixi eum laudavisse*, I have said that he praised.
3. *Dicam eum laudavisse*, I will say that he praised.

*Passive Voice.*

4. *Dico eum laudatum esse*, I say that he was praised.
5. *Dixi eum laudatum esse*, I have said that he was praised.
6. *Dicam eum laudatum esse*, I will say that he was praised.
7. *Dico eum laudatum fu-isse*, I say that he has been praised.
8. *Dixi eum laudatum fu-isse*, I have said that he has been praised.
9. *Dicam eum laudatum fu-isse*, I will say that he has been praised.

*Perfect Infinitive after Past Tenses.*

98. DIRECT. IV. When the preceding verb is in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, or in the *present infinitive after a past tense*, the perfect infinitive is translated as the *pluperfect*; as,

*Active Voice*

1. *Dicēbam eum laudavisse*, I said that he *had praised*.
2. *Dixi eum laudavisse*, I said that he *had praised*.
3. *Dixēram eum laudavisse*, I had said that he *had praised*.
4. *Cæpi dicere eum laudā - vissē*, I began to say that he *had praised*.

*Passive Voice.*

5. *Dicēbam eum laudātūm esse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
6. *Dixi eum laudātūm esse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
7. *Dixēram eum laudātūm esse*, I had said that he *had been praised*.
8. *Cæpi dicēre eum laudātūm esse*, I began to say that he *had been praised*.
9. *Dicēbam eum laudātūm fuisse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
10. *Dixi eum laudātūm fu - isse*, I said that he *had been praised*.
11. *Dixēram eum laudātūm fuisse*, I had said that he *had been praised*.
12. *Cæpi dicēre eum laudātūm fuisse*, I began to say that he *had been praised*.

*Future Infinitive after the Present Tense.*

99. When the preceding verb is in the *present*, or *perfect definite*, or *future tense*, the future infinitive with *esse*, is translated as the future indicative; and with *fuisse* by *would have*, or *should have*, in the pluperfect potential in a future sense, and *fore*, for *futūrum esse*, by *will be*.

*Active Voice.*

1. *Dico eum laudatūrum esse*, I say that he *will praise*.
2. *Dixi eum laudatūrum esse*, I have said that he *will praise*.
3. *Dicam eum laudatūrum esse*, I will say that he *will praise*.
4. *Dico eum laudatūrum fu - isse*, I say that he *would have praised*.
5. *Dixi eum laudatūrum fu - isse*, I have said that he *would have praised*.
6. *Dicam eum laudatūrum fuisse*, I will say that he *would have praised*.

*Passive Voice.*

7. *Dico eum laudatum iri*, I say that he will be praised.
8. *Dixi eum laudatum iri*, I have said that he will be praised.
9. *Dicam eum laudatum iri*, I will say that he will be praised.

*Future Infinitive after Past Tenses.*

100. DIRECT. VI. When the preceding verb is of the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, the future of the infinitive with *esse*, is rendered by *would* or *should*; and with *fuisse*, by *would have*, and *should have*; and *fore* for *futūrum esse* after any past tense, by *would be*; as,

*Active Voice.*

1. *Dicēbam eum laudatūrum* I said that he would praise.  
*esse*,
2. *Dixi eum laudatūrum*, &c. I said that he would praise.
3. *Dixēram eum laudatūrum* I had said that he would praise.
4. *Dicēbam eum laudatūrum* I said that he would have praised.  
*fuisse*,
5. *Dixi eum laudatūrum*, &c. I said that he would have praised.
6. *Dixēram eum laudatūrum* I had said that he would have  
praised.

*Passive Voice.*

7. *Dicēbam eum laudatum* I said that he would be praised.  
*iri*,
8. *Dixi eum laudatum iri*, I said that he would be praised.
9. *Dixēram cum laudatum* I had said that he would be praised.  
*iri*,
10. *Dicēbam (dixi) eum fore* I said that he would be safe.  
*tutum*,

*Usage of Fore.*

*Obs.* *Fore* is used for *futurum esse*, and, with a subject after present tenses means "will be," after past tenses "would be." Both of them when followed by a subjunctive with *ut* (§ 145, Obs. 6,) after a present tense, may be translated by the future indicative of that verb; and after a past tense, by the imperfect potential; as,

11. *Credo eum fore tutum*, I believe that he will be safe.
12. *Credēbam*, or *credidi*, (*credi-*) I believed, (had believed) that he  
*dēram* *eum fore tutum*, would be safe.
13. *Credo fore* (or *futūrum esse*) I believe that you will learn.  
*ut discas*,
14. *Credēbam* or *credidi* (*credidē-*) I believed, (had believed) that you  
*ram* *fore* (or *futūrum es-* would learn.  
*se*) *ut discères*,

*Participles.*

101. Participles are usually translated after their nouns, as in the paradigms of the verb; thus,

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Present active, <i>Homo c a r e n s fraude,</i> | A man wanting guile.                                      |
| 2. Future active, <i>Homo scriptūrus,</i>          | A man about to write.                                     |
| 3. Perfect passive, <i>Vita bene a c t a ,</i>     | A life well spent.  |
| 4. _____, <i>Cæsar c o a c t u s ,</i>             | Cæsar being (or having been) compelled.                   |
| 5. (Deponent,) <i>Cæsar r e g r e s s u s ,</i>    | Cæsar having returned.                                    |
| 6. Future passive, <i>Mala v i t a n d a ,</i>     | Evils to be avoided,<br>i. e., which ought to be avoided. |

*Exc.* But when a participle is used as an adjective, (§ 49, 3,) it is translated, like the adjective, before its substantive; as,

7. *Tigrin ostendit mansue-factam;* He exhibited a *tamed tiger.*
8. *In ferventib us arēnis* Standing on the *burning sands.*  
*insistens,*

*Future Participle Active.*

102. When the Future participle active is used to express a *purpose, end, or design* of another action, (§ 146, Obs. 3,) it is rendered by "to," or the phrase "in order to," instead of "about to;" as,

1. *Pergit c o n s u l t ā r u s ora-* He goes to consult (or, *in order to cūla,* consult) the oracle.

*Obs.* The present participle is also sometimes used in this sense; as,

2. *Venerunt p o s t u l a n t e s ci-* They came to (or, *in order to*) ask  
    *bum,* food.

*Perfect Participle Passive.*

103. As the Latin verb has no perfect participle in the active sense, (except in deponent verbs,) its place is usually supplied by the perfect participle passive in the case absolute, (§ 146, Obs. 8,) ; thus, "Cæsar having consulted his friends," rendered into Latin, will be, *Cæsar a mīcīs cōsultis*, literally, "Cæsar, *his friends being consulted.*" Hence,

104. When the action expressed passively by the perfect participle in the case absolute, or agreeing with the object of a verb, is something done by the subject of the leading

verb in the sentence, the participle is rendered more in accordance with English idiom, by the compound perfect active participle in English, agreeing with the subject of the verb, and followed by its noun in the objective case, (§ 49, 8, and § 146, Obs. 8,); thus,

1. *Cæsar, his dictis, profectus est*, translated in the Latin idiom, *Cæsar, these things being said, departed.*  
English idiom, *Cæsar, having said these things, departed.*
2. *O p ē r e p e r a c t o, ludēmus*,  
Latin idiom, *Our work being finished, we will play.*  
English idiom, *Having finished our work, we will play.*
3. *Pythiam ad se v o c ā t u m pecuniā instruxit*,  
Latin idiom, *He supplied with money Pythias being called to him.*  
English idiom, *Having called Pythias to him, he supplied him with money.*

105. The perfect participle of deponent verbs having an active signification, accords with the English idiom, and is best translated literally; as,

1. *Nactus naviculum*, *Having found a boat.*
2. *Cohortatus exercitum*, *Having exhorted the army.*

106. When the perfect participle of deponent or common verbs, expresses an act nearly or entirely contemporaneous with the leading verb, it may be translated by the English present participle in *ing*, (§ 48, 5, Note,); as,

1. *Rex hoc facinus miratus* The king, *admiring this act, dismissed the youth.*
2. *Columba delapsa referit sa-gittam*, *The dove falling brings back the arrow.*

### *The Future Participle Passive.*

107. After verbs signifying *to give, to deliver, to agree or bargain for, to have, to receive, to undertake*, and the like, the participle in *dus* generally denotes *design or purpose*, and is rendered simply as in the paradigm, or with the phrase "in order to," prefixed, (§ 146, Obs. 4,); as,

1. *Testamentum tibi tradit l e* - He delivers his will to you *to (or g e n d u m , in order to) be read.*
2. *Attribuit nos trucidandos* He has given us over to Cethagus *Cethēgo, (in order) to be slain.*

108. The participle in *dus*, especially when agreeing with the subject of a sentence or clause, generally denotes *propriety, necessity, or obligation*, and is rendered variously, as

the tense of the accompanying verb and the connection require, (§ 146, Obs. 5,); the following are examples:

1. *Legātus mitten dūs est*, An ambassador must (or should) be sent.
2. *Legātus mitten dūs erat* or An ambassador had to be sent.
3. *Legātus mitten dūs erit*, An ambassador will have to be sent.
4. *Legātūm mitten dūm esse*, That an ambassador should be sent.
5. *\_\_\_\_\_ mitten dūm fu- \_\_\_\_\_* ought to (or isse,) should) have been sent.
6. *Dissimulanda loquitur*, He speaks things that ought to be concealed.
7. *Dissimulanda loquebā-* He spake things which ought to have been concealed.
8. *Quæ dissimulanda erunt*, Which will have to be concealed.
9. *Dic, quid statuendū Say, what is to be (or must be) sit*

### *Ablative Absolute.*

109. When a participle stands with a substantive in the ablative absolute, R. LX., the substantive is translated without a sign, No. 9, and after it the participle, as in the paradigm of the verb; as,

1. *Romūlo regnante*, Romulus reigning.
2. *Hac oratiōne habitā*, This oration being delivered.
3. *Cæsare ventūro*, Cæsar (being) about to come.
4. *Præceptis tradendis*, Rules being to be delivered.
5. *Bello orto*, War having arisen.

*Note.* The future participles, Ex. 3, 4, are seldom used in the case absolute.

110. When two nouns,—a pronoun and a noun,—a noun or a pronoun and an adjective, are used in the ablative without a participle, (§ 146, Obs. 10,) they are translated in the nominative without a sign, and the English participle “*being*,” inserted between them; as,

1. *Adolescentūlo duce*, A young man *being* leader.
2. *Mario consule*, Marius *being* consul.
3. *Me suasōre*, I *being* the adviser.
4. *Annibāli vivo*, Hannibal *being* alive.
5. *Se invitō*, He *being* unwilling.

### *Gerunds and Gerundives.*

111. The gerund, being a verbal noun, is translated in

the same manner as other nouns of the same case, and at the same time may govern the case of its own verb, § 147; as,

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. N. <i>Petendum pacem,</i>            | Secking peace.                           |
| 2. G. <i>Petendi pacem,</i>             | <i>Of seeking peace.</i>                 |
| 3. D. <i>Utendo libris,</i>             | <i>To (or for) using books</i>           |
| 4. Ac. <i>Obliviscendum injuriārum,</i> | Forgetting injuries.                     |
| 5. Abl. <i>Parendo magistratui,</i>     | <i>By obeying the magistrate.</i>        |
| 6. Abl. <i>Petendo pacem,</i>           | <i>With, from, in, by seeking peace.</i> |

112. Of verbs that govern the accusative, instead of the gerund in the oblique cases, the Latins commonly used the participle in *dus*, in the sense of the gerund, and agreeing with its object in gender, number and case; the case being governed by the same word that would have governed the gerund. When thus used it is called a *gerundive*. (§ 147; R. LXII.)

#### *Gerunds.*

#### *Gerundives.*

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Ars librum legendi,</i>     | 5. <i>Ars libri legendi,</i><br><i>The art of reading a book.</i>             |
| 2. <i>Utile vulnēra curando,</i>  | 6. <i>Utile vulneribus curandis</i><br><i>Useful for healing wounds.</i>      |
| 3. <i>Ad literas scribendum,</i>  | 7. <i>Ad literas scribendas</i> ,<br><i>For writing a letter.</i>             |
| 4. <i>De captivos commutando,</i> | 8. <i>De captīvis commutandis</i> ,<br><i>Respecting exchanging captives.</i> |

113. When the gerund is the subject of the verb *est*, and governs the dative, it implies necessity, and is variously translated into the English idiom, as the tense of the verb requires, (§ 147,) ; as,

#### *Latin Idiom.*

1. *Legendum est mihi,*  
Reading is to me; i. e.,
2. *Legendum erat (fuit) mihi.*  
Reading was to me;
3. *Legendum fuērat mihi,*  
Reading had been to me;
4. *Legendum erit mihi,*  
Reading will be to me;
5. *Dicit legendum esse mihi.*  
He says that reading is to me;
6. *Dicit legendum fuisse mihi,*  
He says that reading was to me;

#### *English Idiom.*

- I must read; I ought to read;  
I should read.
- I had to read; I ought to have  
read; I should have read.  
I had been obliged to read.
- I will have to read; It will be  
necessary for me to read.
- He says that I must read—  
ought to read—should read.
- He says that I had to read—  
ought to—or should—have  
read.

*Obs.* The dative is frequently omitted, and generally when it denotes persons or things, in a general or indefinite

sense. In such cases, *homīni*, *hominībus*, *nobis*, or the like, must be supplied ; as,

7. *Vivendum est recte (scil. homini)*. Living honestly, is viz : to men ; bus,) i. e., men ought to live honestly.
8. *Dicit vivendum esse recte, (scil. homini,)* He says that living honestly is, viz: to a man; i. e. a man ought to live honestly.

### *Supines.*

114. The Supines are rendered without variation, as in the paradigm, and under the rules, (§ 148,) ; as,

1. *Abiit de ambulatum*, He has gone to walk.
2. *Facile dictu*, Easy to tell, or to be told.

### *Passive Voice.*

115. The passive voice, in the indicative mood, is translated as in the paradigms. The subjunctive mood is subject to all the variety of construction and translation used in the active voice, Nos. 74–84, acting on the verb *to be*, which as an auxiliary with the perfect participle, makes up the passive form of the verb in English.

In the compound tenses, (§ 53, 3,) when two or more verbs in a sentence are in the same tense, and have the same nominative, or are in the same construction, the verb *sum* is commonly expressed with the last and understood to the rest, as in the following Ex. 1. But when the nominative is changed, the verb "to be" should be repeated as in Ex. 2.

1. *Nisus a Minōe victus et occisus* Nisus was conquered and killed est, by Minos.
2. *Tres naves captæ, decem demersæ, duo millia hostium capta, tredicim millia occisa sunt.* Three ships were taken, ten sunk; two thousand of the enemy were taken, thirteen thousand killed.

### *Passive Voice in a Middle Sense.*

116. The Latin passive voice is often used to represent its subject, not as acted upon by another, but as acting on itself, or for itself, or intransitively, by its own impulse ; and so corresponds in sense to the middle voice in Greek. Thus used, it is best translated by the active voice followed by the reflexive pronoun as an object, or by an intransitive

verb expressing the idea intended, (§ 41, Obs. 3.) The following are examples.

1. *Paludibus abditi sunt*, They concealed themselves in the marshes.
2. *Cum omnes in omni genere scelerum voluntetur*, Since all give themselves up to every kind of wickedness.
3. *Fertur in hostes*, Rushes against the enemy.
4. *Volutati super poma*, Rolling themselves over the apples.
5. *Cingitur armis*, Girds himself with his armor.
6. *Sternuntur tumulo*, Throw themselves on the grave.
7. *Gallus victus occultatur*, The cock, when conquered, hides himself.

117. The verb *sum* governing the genitive by R. XII., § 108, may generally be translated by the phrase "belongs to," "is the part," "is the property," &c. See explanation under Rule; as,

1. *Fest regis*, It belongs to the king.
2. *Pecus est Melibœi*, The flock belongs to Melibœus.
3. *Prudentia est senectutis*, Prudence is the characteristic of old age.

118. The verb *sum*, (also *desum*,) in the third person, governing the dative by § 112, Rule II., may generally be translated by the corresponding tenses of the verb "to have," with the Latin dative for its subject, and the Latin subject for its object; as,

	<i>Latin Idiom.</i>	<i>English Idiom.</i>
1.	<i>Liber est mihi</i> ,	A book is to me, I have a book.
2.	<i>Liber erat mihi</i> ,	A book was to me, I had a book.
3.	<i>Liber fuit mihi</i> ,	A book was (or has been) to me, I had, or have had a book.
4.	<i>Liber fuerat mihi</i> ,	A book had been to me, I had had a book.
5.	<i>Liber erit mihi</i> ,	A book will be to me, I will have a book.
6.	<i>Liber sunt mihi</i> ,	Books are to me, I have books.
7.	<i>Est mihi</i> ,	It is to me, I have it.
8.	<i>Liber deest mihi</i> ,	A book is not to me, I have not a book.

119. When a compound verb, rendered by the simple verb and a preposition, is followed by two cases, the simple verb with the immediate object (always in the accusative,) is usually translated first, and then the preposition with the remote object.

1. *Flumen copias transduxit*, He led his forces across the river.
2. *Circumdare mœnia op̄ pido*, To build walls around the city
3. *Caput dejectit saxo*, He threw the head down from the rock.

120. An adverb, adverbial phrase, or clause expressing some circumstance in translating, may often be arranged in different situations in a sentence, due regard being paid to the sense and harmony of the whole; thus, *Magna debēmus suscipēre dum vires suppētunt*, may be arranged variously for translating, as follows:

1. *Debēmus suscipēre magna, dum vires suppētunt*; or,
2. *Dum vires suppētunt, debēmus suscipēre magna*; or,
3. *Debēmus, dum vires suppētunt, suscipēre magna*.

121. The negative conjunction *ne*, is variously rendered *lest*, *lest that*, *that-not*, *not*; and after verbs signifying to *fear*, *forbid*, and the like, it is translated *that*, while *ut* in the same situation, means *that not*.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Ne quis eat,</i>                         | <i>Lest (or that not) any one may go.</i>                   |
| 2. <i>Orat ne se perdat,</i>                   | <i>She entreats that he would not destroy her.</i>          |
| 3. <i>Egi ne interesseem,</i>                  | <i>I managed that I should not be present.</i>              |
| 4. <i>Dum ne veniat,</i>                       | <i>Provided he do not come.</i>                             |
| 5. <i>Respondit ne cogitāta quidem latent.</i> | <i>He replied that not even the thoughts are concealed.</i> |
| 6. <i>Vereor ne cadas,</i>                     | <i>I am afraid that you may fall.</i>                       |
| 7. <i>Timui ut ventret,</i>                    | <i>I feared that he would not come.</i>                     |

*Note 1.* But when the fear expressed, refers to such things *as we wish*, *ne* means *that-not*; as, *Paves ne ducas illam*, You are afraid *that* you do *not* get her to wife.

*Ne*, after a command implying a negative, or prohibition, is often omitted; as, *cave titubēs*, take care *that* you do *not* stumble.

*Note 2.* *Ne quidem*, (always separate,) is an emphatic negative, and has the emphatic word between; as, *ne hoc quidem*, not even *this*; *ne tum quidem*, not even *then*.

122. When a verb is translated into English by the aid of an auxiliary, an adverb, or clause modifying it, will often have to be placed *between* the auxiliary and the verb, (Eng. Gr. § 74,); as,

1. *Dixit ne o b h o c alios con- temnāmus*, He said that we should not *on this account* despise others.

123. Some prepositions are variously translated according to the meaning of the words, or the case with which they are connected; thus,

1. *In* followed by an accusative, means *to, into, towards, for, against, &c.,* (§ 136, R. L.)
2. *In*, followed by the ablative, means *in, upon, among, in. in the case of,* (§ 136, R. LI.)
3. *Inter*, referring to *two*, means *between; to more than two, among.*
4. *Sub* means *under, at the foot of, close up to.*
5. *Præ* means *before, in comparison of;—sometimes, more than.*

124. When the following conjunctions, adjectives, and adverbial particles, are placed, one before each of two successive words or clauses, the first is commonly translated differently from the second, and usually in the following manner, (§ 149, Obs. 5.)

1. <i>Et</i>	— <i>et,</i>	Both	— and.
2. <i>Que</i>	— <i>que,</i>	Both	— and.
3. <i>Aut. vel,</i> {	<i>aut, vel,</i> {	Either	— or.
<i>sive,</i> {	<i>sive,</i> {		
4. <i>Nec</i>	— <i>nec.</i> {	Neither	— nor.
5. <i>Neque</i>	— <i>neque,</i> {		
6. <i>Sive, seu</i>	— <i>sive, seu,</i>	Whether	— or.
7. <i>Tum</i>	— <i>tum.</i>	{ Not only	— but also.
		{ Both	— and.
8. <i>Cum or quum</i>	— <i>tum,</i>	{ Not only	— but also.
		{ Both	— and.
9. <i>Jam</i>	— <i>jam,</i> {	Now	— then.
10. <i>Nunc</i>	— <i>nunc,</i> {	{ At one time	— at another.
		{ Not only	— but also.
11. <i>Simul</i>	— <i>simul,</i>	{ No sooner	— than.
		{ As soon as	— instantly.
12. <i>Modo, alias</i>	— <i>modo, alias,</i>	{ At one time	— at another
		Sometimes	— sometimes.

#### Corresponding Conjunctive Terms.

13. <i>Ne</i>	— <i>an,</i>	Whether	— or.
14. <i>Utrum</i>	— <i>an,</i>	Whether	— or.
15. <i>Ita, sic, tam, adeo</i>	— <i>ut,</i>	So	— that; so — as.
16. <i>Talis, tantus</i>	— <i>ut.</i>	Such, so great	— that.
17. <i>Is, ejusmōdi</i>	— <i>ut,</i>	Such, of such a kind	— that.
18. <i>Simul</i>	— <i>ac, or atque,</i>	As soon	— as.
19. <i>Tamdiu</i>	— <i>quamdiu,</i>	As long	— as.
20. <i>Ut</i>	— <i>sic,</i>	As	— so.

*Ne* is frequently omitted with the first word or clause, and must be supplied when *an* stands with the second; as,

21. *Rectè an perpēram,* (Whether) right or wrong.

*General Rules for Accentuation.*

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first or penult; as, *pă'-ter*, *mū'-sa*, *au'-rum*.
2. Words of more than two syllables, when the penult is long, have the accent on the penult; when the penult is short, they have the accent on the antepenult; as, *a-mī'-cus*, *dom'-ī-nus*.
3. When the enclitics, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, are added to a word the two words are considered as one, and it is accented accordingly; as, *pă'-ter*, *pă-ter'-que*; *dom'-ī-nus*, *dom-i-nus'-ve*.

*General Rules for the Quantity of Syllables.*

1. A vowel before another vowel, is short; as, *vīa*, *Dēus*.
2. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, is long by position; as, *arma*, *fallo*, *axis*.
3. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, (*l*, *r*,) is common, i. e. either long or short; as, *volūcris*, or *volūcris*.
4. A diphthong is always long; as, *aurum*, *Cæsar*.

*Note.* In this work when the quantity of the penult, in words of more than two syllables, is determined by any of these rules, it is not marked, otherwise it is marked.

*Explanation of References.*

The references at the foot of each page, to which a section mark (§) is prefixed, are to the sections and their subdivisions in the Grammar, and are intended chiefly to explain the construction.

In those references which have no section mark prefixed, the first number directs to the same number in the preceding Introduction, and the second, to the example under that number. Thus for example, in p. 53, § 38, 8; the number 38 refers to Introduction 38, (p. 22,) which shows how the relative in the beginning of a sentence is to be translated; and the number 8 refers to example 8, *A quo consilio*, &c., showing that the relative *quā* is here to be translated "this," and *Quā de causā*, "for this cause." These references are intended to explain particular phrases and idioms, and to give an example of the mode of translating them.

The references made by figures are to the notes on the text, commencing p. 207, where it will be observed that all the notes belonging to a page are contained in one paragraph, at the beginning of which is the number of the page to which the notes refer.

N. B. In the text the reference letter stands *after*, and the reference figure stands *before* the word or words to which they respectively belong.

## C. JULII CÆSARIS COMMENTARII

### DE BELLO GALLICO.

#### BOOK I.

##### GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. General description of Gaul—Chap. 1. II. The war with the Helvetii—Chap. 2-29. III. War with Ariovistus—Chap. 30-54.

1. **GALLIA** est omnis divisa in partes tres, <sup>1</sup>quarum <sup>a</sup> unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, <sup>2</sup>qui ipsorum lingua Celte, <sup>b</sup> nostrâ Galli, <sup>b</sup> appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, <sup>c</sup> institutis, <sup>c</sup> legibus <sup>d</sup> inter se <sup>d</sup> différunt. <sup>5</sup>Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum <sup>a</sup> omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, propterea quod a <sup>e</sup> cultu atque humanitate Provinciæ longissimè absunt, <sup>7</sup>minimeque ad eos mercatores sœpe commeant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos <sup>e</sup> animos pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germânis, <sup>f</sup> qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continentè bellum gerunt: quâ <sup>g</sup> de causâ Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute <sup>e</sup> præcédunt, quod ferè quotidiānis præliis <sup>h</sup> cum Germânis contendunt, cùm aut suis <sup>i</sup> finibus <sup>8</sup> eos prohibent, aut <sup>j</sup> ipsi in <sup>10</sup> eorum finibus bellum gerunt. <sup>11</sup>Eorum una pars, quam Gallos <sup>k</sup> obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, <sup>h</sup> Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; <sup>12</sup>vergit ad septentriones.

<sup>a</sup> § 107, R. X.

<sup>c</sup> § 147, R. LXII, &

<sup>b</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>b</sup> § 103, R. V.

<sup>112, 3.</sup>

<sup>i</sup> 31, 3.

<sup>c</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>f</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>k</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>d</sup> § 28, Obs. 5.

<sup>g</sup> 38, 8.

Belgæ <sup>1</sup> ab extrēmis Galliæ finib⁹ oriuntur; pertinēt ad inferiōrem partem flum⁹nis Rheni; <sup>2</sup> spectant in septentriōnes et orientēm solem. Aquitania a Garumna flum⁹ne ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceāni, quæ est <sup>3</sup> ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentriōnes.

2. Apud Helvetios longè nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetōrix. Is, Marco Messālā et Marco Pisōne <sup>4</sup> Consuli⁹bus, <sup>a</sup> regni cupiditatē <sup>b</sup> inductus, conjuratōnem nobilitatis fecit, et <sup>c</sup> civitati <sup>c</sup> persuāsit, ut de finib⁹ suis cum omnib⁹bus copiis exīrent: <sup>d</sup> perfacile <sup>e</sup> esse cūm virtūte omnib⁹bus præstarent, <sup>f</sup> totū Galliæ imperio <sup>g</sup> <sup>h</sup> potiri. Id hoc faciliūs eis <sup>m</sup> <sup>i</sup> persuāsit, quod undique loci <sup>j</sup> natūrā <sup>b</sup> Helvetii continentur: unā ex parte flum⁹ne Rheno, <sup>b</sup> latissimo <sup>b</sup> atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germānis dividit: altērā ex parte, monte <sup>b</sup> Jurā altissimo, <sup>h</sup> qui est inter Sequānos et Helvetios; tertiā, lacu Lemanno, <sup>b</sup> et flum⁹ne <sup>i</sup> Rhodāño, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus siēbat, <sup>k</sup> ut et minūs latē vagarentur, <sup>l</sup> et minūs facilē finitīmis <sup>m</sup> bellum inferre possent: <sup>l</sup> quā de causā homīnes bellandi <sup>n</sup> cupidi magno dolōre <sup>b</sup> affiebantur. <sup>o</sup> Pro multitudīne autem homīnum, et pro gloriā <sup>10</sup> belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habēre <sup>o</sup> arbitrabantur, <sup>11</sup> qui in longitudinem millia <sup>p</sup> passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudinem centum et octoginta patēbant.

3. <sup>12</sup> His rebus <sup>b</sup> adducti, et auctoritatē Orgetorīgis permoti, constituērunt <sup>q</sup> ea, quæ ad <sup>13</sup> profiscendum <sup>r</sup> pertinērent, <sup>s</sup> comparāre; <sup>t</sup> jumentōrum et <sup>14</sup> carrōrum quām maxīmum <sup>u</sup> numērum coēmēre; <sup>15</sup> sementes quām maxīmas <sup>u</sup> facere, ut in itinēre copia frumenti suppetēret; <sup>v</sup> cum proxī-

<sup>a</sup> 110, 3.

<sup>h</sup> 24.

<sup>p</sup> § 24, 5.

<sup>b</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 149, R.

<sup>q</sup> 54.

<sup>c</sup> 63.

<sup>k</sup> 51.

<sup>r</sup> § 147, Obs. 4.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>s</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>e</sup> § 98, Obs. 6.

<sup>m</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>t</sup> § 144, R. LVII.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>n</sup> § 147. Obs. 2.

<sup>u</sup> § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.

<sup>g</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>o</sup> 96, 1.

<sup>v</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

mīs civitatībus pacem et amicitiam confirmāre. Ad eas res conficiendas<sup>a</sup> biennūm sibi satis esse<sup>b</sup> duxērunt; <sup>c</sup> in tertium annum profectiōnem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas<sup>a</sup> Orgetōrix deligitur. Is sibi<sup>c</sup> legatiōnem ad civitātes suscēpit. In eo itinēre persuādet Castīco,<sup>d</sup> Cataman-talēdis filio,<sup>e</sup> Sequāno, cujus pater regnum in Sequānis mūltos annos<sup>f</sup> obtinuērat, et a senātu Popūli Romāni amīcus<sup>g</sup> appellātus erat, ut regnum in civitāte suā<sup>2</sup> occupāret,<sup>h</sup> quod pater antē habuērat; itemque Dumnorīgi<sup>d</sup> Æduo, fratri<sup>e</sup> Dī-vitiāci, qui eo tempōre<sup>i</sup> <sup>3</sup> principātum in civitāte obtinēbat,<sup>k</sup> ac maximē plebi<sup>l</sup> acceptus erat, ut idem<sup>m</sup> conarētur<sup>h</sup> persuādet, eique<sup>c</sup> filiam suam in matrimonium dat. <sup>4</sup> Perfa-cīle<sup>n</sup> factu<sup>o</sup> esse,<sup>b</sup> illis<sup>d</sup> probat, conāta<sup>m</sup> perficēre, propterea quōd ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: non esse dubium, quin<sup>p</sup> <sup>5</sup> totīus Galliæ plurīmum Helvetii possēnt: se<sup>q</sup> suis copiis<sup>r</sup> suōque exercitu illis<sup>c</sup> regna conciliatūrum, confirmat. Hac oratiōne adducti,<sup>6</sup> inter se fidem et jusju-randum dant, et, regno occupāto, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos<sup>7</sup> popūlos totīus Galliæ<sup>s</sup> sese<sup>q</sup> potīri posse<sup>8</sup> spe-rant.

4. <sup>9</sup> Ea res ut est Helvetiis<sup>t</sup> per<sup>10</sup> indicium enunciāta, morībus<sup>r</sup> suis Orgetorīgem ex<sup>11</sup> vincūlis causam dicere coē-gērunt: <sup>12</sup> damnātum pœnam<sup>u</sup> sequi oportēbat, ut igni cre-marētur.<sup>v</sup> Die<sup>i</sup> constitūtā causæ dictiōnis, Orgetōrix ad judicium omnem suam<sup>13</sup> familiam, <sup>14</sup> ad homīnum<sup>w</sup> millia decem, undīque coēgit; et omnes clientes, obæratosque suos, quorum magnum numērum habēbat, eōdem conduxit: per eos, ne causam dicēret,<sup>x</sup> se eripuit. Cūm civītas, ob eam

<sup>a</sup> 112, 7.

<sup>i</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>r</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>b</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>k</sup> § 44, II. 2.

<sup>s</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>c</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>l</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>t</sup> Exc. 2.

<sup>d</sup> 63.

<sup>m</sup> 19, 4.

<sup>u</sup> § 126, R. III

<sup>e</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>n</sup> § 98, Obs. 6.

<sup>v</sup> § 113, Exc. III.

<sup>f</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>o</sup> 114, 2.

<sup>w</sup> § 140, 1. 4th.

<sup>g</sup> § 103, R. V.

<sup>p</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>x</sup> § 24, 5.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>q</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>y</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

rem incitata, armis jus suum exsequi conaretur,<sup>a</sup> multitudo nemque hominum ex agris<sup>1</sup> magistratus cogerent,<sup>a</sup> Orgetorix mortuus est: neque abest suspicio, ut <sup>c</sup> Helvetii arbitrantur, <sup>2</sup> quin<sup>b</sup> ipse sibi <sup>d</sup> mortem consiv erit.

5. Post ejus mortem nihil minùs Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant.<sup>e</sup> Ubi jam se <sup>f</sup> ad eam rem paratos <sup>g</sup> esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero <sup>3</sup> ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt; frumentum omne, praeter quod <sup>h</sup> secum portatūri erant, comburunt; ut, domum <sup>i</sup> reditiōnis spe <sup>k</sup> sublatā, paratiōres ad omnia pericula subeunda <sup>l</sup> essent: <sup>m</sup> <sup>4</sup> trium mensium molita <sup>5</sup> cibaria sibi <sup>d</sup> quemque domo <sup>i</sup> efferre jubent. Persuadent Rauracis, <sup>d</sup> et Tulingis, et Latobrigis, finitimi, uti, eodem <sup>6</sup> usi consilio, <sup>n</sup> oppidis suis vicisque exustis, <sup>o</sup> unā cum iis proficiscantur: <sup>e</sup> <sup>7</sup> Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant, et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnârant, receptos <sup>o</sup> ad se, socios <sup>p</sup> sibi <sup>d</sup> adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus <sup>q</sup> domo exire possent: <sup>r</sup> unum <sup>r</sup> per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, <sup>s</sup> vix quā singuli <sup>t</sup> carri ducerentur; <sup>t</sup> mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile per pauci prohibere possent: <sup>u</sup> alterum per <sup>v</sup> Provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius <sup>10</sup> propterea quod Helvetiorum inter fines, et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nonnullis locis <sup>v</sup> <sup>11</sup> vado transitur. Extrēnum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvetiorum finibus, <sup>w</sup> Genēva. Ex eo oppido pons ad

<sup>a</sup> § 140, Obs. 4. &

<sup>§ 44, II. 2.</sup>

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 1.

<sup>d</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>f</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>g</sup> § 103, Obs. 2.

<sup>h</sup> 37, 2. <sup>ua</sup>

<sup>i</sup> § 130, 4.

<sup>k</sup> § 146, LX. & 109.

<sup>l</sup> 112, 3.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>n</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>o</sup> 104, 1, & 2.

<sup>p</sup> § 97, Exp.

<sup>q</sup> 37, 6.

<sup>r</sup> 19, Sup. iter.

<sup>s</sup> 26, 2.

<sup>t</sup> § 141, Obs. 7, &

<sup>u</sup> 139, 2.

<sup>v</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>w</sup> § 136, Obs. 5.

<sup>w</sup> § 111, R.

Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogib⁹ sese vel persuasūros,<sup>a</sup> (quòd nondum<sup>b</sup> bono animo<sup>b</sup> in Popūlum Romānum vide-rentur,<sup>c</sup>) existimābant; vel<sup>d</sup> vi coactūros,<sup>a</sup> ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur.<sup>d</sup> Omnībus rebus ad profectiōnem comparatis,<sup>e</sup> 2 diem dicunt, quā die<sup>f</sup> ad ripam Rhodāni omnes conveniant:<sup>g</sup> is dies erat<sup>h</sup> ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprīlis,<sup>4</sup> Lucio Pisōne, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus.<sup>h</sup>

7. Cæsari<sup>i</sup> cūm id nuntiātum esset,<sup>k</sup> eos per Provinciam nostram iter facere conāri, matūrat<sup>l</sup> ab urbe proficisci, et, quām maxīmis<sup>l</sup> potest itineribus, in<sup>m</sup> Galliam ulteriōrem contendit, et ad Genēvam pervenit: <sup>n</sup> Provinciæ<sup>m</sup> toti quām maximum<sup>l</sup> militum numērum impērat (erat omnīno in Galliā ulteriōre legio una); pontem, qui erat<sup>o</sup> ad Genēvam, jubet rescindi.<sup>p</sup> Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii<sup>q</sup> certiores facti sunt, legātos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis,<sup>o</sup> cuius legatiōnis Nameius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinēbant,<sup>r</sup> qui dicērent,<sup>s</sup> 10<sup>t</sup> “sibi<sup>q</sup> esse<sup>r</sup> in animo, sine ullo maleficio iter per Provinciam facere, propterea quòd aliud iter habērent<sup>c</sup> nullum: rogāre,<sup>s</sup> ut ejus<sup>11</sup> voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.”<sup>t</sup> Cæsar, quòd memoriā tenēbat, Lucium Cassium Consūlem occīsum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum, et<sup>12</sup> sub jugum missum, <sup>13</sup> concedendum<sup>u</sup> non putābat: neque homīnes inimīco anīmō,<sup>b</sup> datā facultāte per Provinciam itinēris faciundi,<sup>v</sup> temperatūros ab injuriā et maleficio existimābat. Tamen, ut spatiū intercedere posset,<sup>d</sup> dum milites, quos imperavērat, convenirent, legātis respondit, “diem se ad deliberandum sumtūrum; si quid vellent,<sup>x</sup> 14 ante diem Idus Aprīlis reverterentur.”<sup>y</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 100, 1.<sup>1</sup> § 126, R. III.<sup>r</sup> 51, 5.<sup>b</sup> § 106, R. VII.<sup>k</sup> 51, 2.<sup>s</sup> 94, 4.<sup>c</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.<sup>l</sup> § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.<sup>t</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.<sup>m</sup> § 123, R. & 5, 1.<sup>u</sup> 113, Obs. & 8.<sup>e</sup> 104, 1.<sup>n</sup> 90, 4.<sup>v</sup> 112, 1.<sup>f</sup> § 131, R. XL.<sup>o</sup> § 107, R. X. Exp.<sup>w</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.<sup>g</sup> § 141, R. II.<sup>p</sup> § 102, R. I.<sup>x</sup> § 140, 2.<sup>h</sup> 110, 2.<sup>q</sup> § 112, R. II.<sup>y</sup> 78, 3.

8. Interea eâ legiōne, quam secum habēbat, militibusque, qui ex Provinciâ convenērant, a lacu Lemanno,<sup>1</sup> qui in flu-  
men Rhodānum influit, <sup>2</sup> ad montem Juram, qui fines Se-  
quanōrum ab Helvetiis divīdit, <sup>3</sup> millia<sup>a</sup> passuum decem  
novem murum, in altitudinem pedum<sup>b</sup> sedēcim, fossamque  
perdūcit. Eo opere perfecto,<sup>c</sup> præsidia dispōnit, <sup>d</sup> castella  
commūnit, quo facilius, si <sup>e</sup> se invito transire conarentur,<sup>d</sup>  
prohibēre possit.<sup>e</sup> Ubi ea dies, quam constituērat cum le-  
gātis, venit, et legāti ad eum revertērunt, <sup>f</sup> negat, se<sup>f</sup> more<sup>g</sup>  
et exemplo<sup>g</sup> Popūli Romāni posse iter ulli<sup>h</sup> per Provinciam  
dare; et, si vim<sup>i</sup> facere conentur,<sup>d</sup> prohibitūrum<sup>k</sup> ostendit.  
Helvetii, eâ spe<sup>l</sup> dejecti, <sup>7</sup> navībus<sup>g</sup> junctis ratibusque<sup>g</sup> com-  
plurībus factis, alii vadis<sup>g</sup> Rhodāni, <sup>8</sup> quā minima altitudo  
fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, sæpius noctu, si <sup>9</sup> per-  
rumpēre possent,<sup>d</sup> conāti, opēris munitiōne<sup>g</sup> et militum con-  
cursu<sup>m</sup> et telis repulsi, hoc conātu<sup>n</sup> destitērunt.

9. Relinquebātur una per Sequānos via, quā<sup>g</sup> Sequānis<sup>o</sup>  
invītis, propter angustias ire non potērant. His<sup>h</sup> cùm suā<sup>p</sup>  
sponte persuadēre non possent,<sup>q</sup> legātos ad Dumnorīgem  
Æduum mittunt, ut eo<sup>10</sup> deprecatōre<sup>o</sup> a Sequānis impetrā-  
rent.<sup>r</sup> Dumnōrix<sup>11</sup> gratiā<sup>g</sup> et largitiōne apud. Sequānos  
plurīsum potērat, et Helvetiis<sup>g</sup> erat amīcus, quod ex eā civi-  
tāte Orgetorīgis filiam, <sup>12</sup> in matrimonium duxerat; et, cu-  
piditate<sup>g</sup> regni adductus, <sup>13</sup> novis rebus<sup>t</sup> studēbat, et quām  
plurimas<sup>u</sup> civitātes suo sibi<sup>v</sup> beneficio habēre obstrictas vo-  
lēbat. Itāque rem suscipit, et a Sequānis impētrat, ut per  
fines suos ire Helvetios patientur; obsidesque uti inter sese

<sup>a</sup> § 131, R. XLII.&<sup>§ 24, 5.</sup><sup>b</sup> § 106, R. VI.<sup>c</sup> 104, 1, & 109.<sup>d</sup> § 140, 2.<sup>e</sup> § 140, 1.<sup>f</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.<sup>g</sup> § 129, R.<sup>h</sup> § 123, R.<sup>i</sup> § 15, 12.<sup>k</sup> § 47, Note 1. and

100, 1, and 94, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 136, R. LII.<sup>m</sup> § 149, R.<sup>n</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)<sup>o</sup> 110, 5.<sup>p</sup> 30, 2.<sup>q</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.<sup>r</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.<sup>s</sup> § 111, R.<sup>t</sup> § 112, R. V.<sup>u</sup> § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.<sup>v</sup> § 126, R. III.

dent, perficit: <sup>1</sup> Sequāni,<sup>2</sup> ne itinēre Helvetios prohibeant; <sup>3</sup> Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuriā transeant.<sup>a</sup>

10. <sup>3</sup> Cæsāri renunciātur<sup>b</sup> Helvetiis<sup>c</sup> esse in anīmo, per agrum Sequanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santōnum fines facere, qui non longē a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quæ civītas est in Provinciā. Id si fiēret,<sup>d</sup> <sup>4</sup> intelligēbat magno cum Provinciæ pericūlo futūrum,<sup>e</sup> ut homīnes bellicōsos, Popūli Romāni inimīcos,<sup>f</sup> locis<sup>g</sup> patentib⁹ maximēque frumentariis finitīmos habēret.<sup>h</sup> Ob eas causas ei munitiōni,<sup>i</sup> quam fecerat, Titum Labiēnum legātum præfēcit: ipse in Italia in magnis itinerib⁹ contendit, duasque ibi legiōnes conscribit, et tres, quæ circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernis edūcit; et, quā<sup>j</sup> proxīmum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionib⁹ ire contendit. Ibi Centrōnes, et Graiocēli, et Caturīges, locis superiorib⁹ occupātis,<sup>k</sup> itinēre<sup>l</sup> exercitūm prohibēre conantur. Complurib⁹ his præliis pulsis,<sup>k</sup> ab Ocēlo,<sup>m</sup> quod est citeriōris Provinciæ extrēmum, in fines Vocontiōrum ulteriōris Provinciæ die septīmo<sup>n</sup> pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines: ab Allobrogib⁹ in Segusiānos exercitūm ducit. Hi sunt extra Provinciam trans Rhodānum primi.<sup>o</sup>

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanōrum suas copias transduxerant, et in Æduōrum fines pervenērant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ædui, cùm, se<sup>o</sup> suāque<sup>p</sup> ab iis defendēre non possent,<sup>q</sup> legātos ad Cæsārem mittunt<sup>r</sup> rogātūm auxilium: “ita se<sup>s</sup> omni tempōre<sup>m</sup> de Popūlo Romāno merītos esse, ut pāne in conspectu exercitūs nostri agri vastāri, libēri eōrum in servitūtem abdūci, oppida ex-

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>h</sup> 100, Obs. 14.

<sup>o</sup> 31.

<sup>b</sup> 51, 2.

<sup>i</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>p</sup> 19, (*negotia.*)

<sup>c</sup> § 112, R. II.

<sup>k</sup> 104, 2.

<sup>q</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)

<sup>r</sup> 114, 1.

<sup>e</sup> § 47, Note 1.

<sup>m</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>s</sup> § 145, R. LVIII. &

<sup>f</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>n</sup> 19, (*popūli.*)

94, 4.

<sup>g</sup> § 111, R.

pugnāri non debuerint.”<sup>a</sup> Eōdem tempore Ædui Ambarri,  
<sup>1</sup> necessarii<sup>b</sup> et consanguinei Æduorum, Cæsarem certiorem  
faciunt, sese,<sup>c</sup> depopulatis agris,<sup>d</sup> non facilè ab oppidis vim  
hostium prohibere: item Allobruges, qui trans Rhodanum  
vicos possessionesque habebant, fugâ se ad Cæsarem recipi-  
unt, et demonstrant, <sup>2</sup> sibi<sup>e</sup> præter agri solum nihil<sup>f</sup> esse  
reliqui.<sup>f</sup> Quibus<sup>g</sup> rebus<sup>h</sup> adductus Cæsar, non expectan-  
dum<sup>c</sup> sibi<sup>i</sup> statuit, dum, omnibus fortunis<sup>d</sup> sociorum con-  
sumtis, in Santenos Helvetii pervenirent.

12. <sup>3</sup> Flumen<sup>k</sup> est Arar, quod per fines Æduorum et Se-  
quanorum in Rhodanum influit, <sup>4</sup> incredibili lenitatem,<sup>h</sup> ita ut  
oculis,<sup>h</sup> <sup>5</sup> in utram partem fluat,<sup>l</sup> judicari non possit.<sup>a</sup> <sup>6</sup> Id  
Helvetii ratibus<sup>h</sup> ac lintribus<sup>h</sup> junctis transibant. Ubi per  
exploratores Cæsar certior<sup>m</sup> factus est, tres jam copiarum  
partes<sup>n</sup> Helvetios<sup>c</sup> id flumen<sup>n</sup> transduxisse,<sup>o</sup> quartam verò  
partem<sup>c</sup> citra flumen Ararim reliquam<sup>m</sup> esse; <sup>7</sup> de tertia vi-  
giliâ cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam par-  
tem pervenit, quæ nondum flumen<sup>p</sup> transierat. Eos<sup>q</sup> im-  
peditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam eorum partem  
concidit: reliqui fugae<sup>q</sup> sese mandarunt atque<sup>9</sup> in proximas  
sylvas abdidérunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus:<sup>k</sup>  
nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic  
pagus unus, cùm domo<sup>r</sup> exisset,<sup>s</sup> patrum nostrorum memoriâ,<sup>t</sup>  
Lucium Cassium Consulem interfecerat, et ejus exercitum  
sub jugum miserat. Ita, sive<sup>u</sup> casu,<sup>h</sup> sive consilio Deorum  
immortalium, quæ<sup>v</sup> pars civitatis Helvetiæ insignem calamiti-  
tatem Populo<sup>q</sup> Romano intulerauit, ea<sup>10</sup> princeps<sup>w</sup> pœnas  
persolvit. Quâ<sup>g</sup> in re Cæsar non solum publicas, sed etiam

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.<sup>i</sup> § 147, & 113.<sup>q</sup> § 123, R.<sup>b</sup> § 97, R.<sup>k</sup> § 103, R. V.<sup>r</sup> § 130, 4.<sup>c</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.<sup>l</sup> § 140, 5.<sup>s</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.<sup>d</sup> 109, 2.<sup>m</sup> § 103, Obs. 2.<sup>t</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)<sup>e</sup> § 112, R. II.<sup>n</sup> 119, 1.<sup>u</sup> 124, 6.<sup>f</sup> § 106, R. VI.<sup>o</sup> 98, 2.<sup>v</sup> 43, & 37, 2d. 4.<sup>g</sup> 38.<sup>p</sup> § 136, R. LII.<sup>w</sup> § 98, Obs. 10.<sup>h</sup> § 129, R.

privatas injurias ultus est, quod ejus socii Lucii Pisonis<sup>a</sup> avum, Lucium Pisonem legatum,<sup>a</sup> Tigurini eodem pælio,<sup>b</sup> quo<sup>b</sup> Cassium,<sup>1</sup> interfecerant.

13. Hoc pælio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut<sup>2</sup> consequi posset,<sup>c</sup> spontem in Arare faciendum<sup>d</sup> curat atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii, repente ejus adventu<sup>e</sup> commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus<sup>f</sup> viginti ægerrimè confecerant, ut flumen transirent,<sup>g</sup> uno illum die<sup>f</sup> fecisse intellegèrent,<sup>h</sup> legatos ad eum mittunt: cuius<sup>i</sup> legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello<sup>b</sup> Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuera. Is<sup>j</sup> cum Cæsare agit: "Si pacem Populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret,<sup>k</sup> in eam partem ituros<sup>l</sup> atque ibi futuros<sup>l</sup> Helvetios,<sup>m</sup> ubi eos Cæsar constituisset<sup>g</sup> atque esse<sup>n</sup> voluissest: <sup>o</sup> sin bello<sup>e</sup> persequi perseveraret,<sup>k</sup> reminisceretur<sup>o</sup> et<sup>o</sup> vetensis incommodi<sup>p</sup> Populi Romani et pristinæ virtutis<sup>p</sup> Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset,<sup>g</sup> cum ii, qui flumen transissent,<sup>g</sup> suis<sup>q</sup> auxilium ferre non possent,<sup>h</sup> ne ob eam rem aut suæ magno opere virtuti<sup>q</sup> tribuèrent<sup>o</sup> aut<sup>r</sup> ipsos despiceret: se<sup>m</sup> ita a patribus majoribus que suis didicisse, ut magis virtute,<sup>e</sup> quam dolo<sup>s</sup> aut insidiis, niterentur.<sup>t</sup> Quare ne committarent,<sup>o</sup> ut is locus, ubi constituerent,<sup>g</sup> ex calamitate Populi Romani et internectione exercitus nomen caperet,<sup>t</sup> aut<sup>r</sup> memoriam prodere."

14. His Cæsar ita respondit: "Eo sibi<sup>u</sup> minus<sup>m</sup> dubitationis<sup>v</sup> dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commorassent,<sup>g</sup> memoriâ tenèrent:<sup>w</sup> atque eo<sup>x</sup> gravius ferre, quo<sup>x</sup> minus<sup>z</sup> merito<sup>e</sup> Populi Romani accidissent; <sup>y</sup> qui<sup>y</sup> si alicujus

<sup>a</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>i</sup> 38.

<sup>r</sup> § 149, R.

<sup>b</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>s</sup> § 120, Obs. 1.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>l</sup> § 47, 4, Note 1.

<sup>t</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>d</sup> 108, 4.

<sup>m</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>u</sup> § 126, R III.

<sup>e</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>n</sup> 90.

<sup>v</sup> § 106, R. VIII.

<sup>f</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.

<sup>w</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>g</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>p</sup> § 108, R. XIV. & 7, 1. <sup>x</sup> 22, 4, or 44, 7.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>q</sup> § 123, R. & 19.

<sup>y</sup> 39.

injuriæ sibi<sup>a</sup> conscient fuisse,<sup>b</sup> non fuisse<sup>c</sup> difficile<sup>d</sup> cavere,  
 sed eo deceptum,<sup>e</sup> quod neque commissum a se intelligeret,<sup>f</sup> quare timeret;<sup>f</sup> neque sine causâ<sup>g</sup> timendum<sup>g</sup> putaret.  
 Quod si vetiris contumeliæ<sup>h</sup> oblivisci vellet;<sup>h</sup> num<sup>i</sup> etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo<sup>k</sup> invito iter per Provinciam per vim tentassent,<sup>f</sup> quod Æduos, quod Ambarrois, quod Allobrogas vexassent,<sup>f</sup> memoriam deponere posse? Quod suâ victoriâ tam insolenter gloriarentur,<sup>f</sup> quodque tam diu se impunè tulisse injurias admirarentur,<sup>f</sup> eodem<sup>l</sup> pertinere:<sup>c</sup> consuēsse enim Deos<sup>l</sup> immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatiōne rerum doleant,<sup>m</sup> quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint,<sup>n</sup> his<sup>o</sup> secundiōres interdum res et diuturniōrem imputatātem concedere.<sup>p</sup> Cùm ea ita sint,<sup>q</sup> tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi<sup>r</sup> dentur,<sup>b</sup> uti ea, quæ polliceantur,<sup>n</sup> factūros intelligat,<sup>s</sup> et si Æduis<sup>t</sup> de injuriis, quas ipsis<sup>o</sup> sociisque eorum intulerint,<sup>n</sup> item si Allobrogibus<sup>t</sup> satisfaciant,<sup>b</sup> sese<sup>l</sup> cum iis pacem esse factūrum.” Divico respondit: “Ita Helvetios a majoribus<sup>u</sup> suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuerint: <sup>m</sup> ejus rei Populum Romānum<sup>l</sup> esse<sup>o</sup> testem.” Hoc responso dato, discessit.

15. Postero die<sup>v</sup> castra ex eo loco movent: idem facit Cæsar; equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quatuor milliūm, quem ex omni Provinciâ et Æduis atque eorum socijs coactum<sup>w</sup> habebat, præmittit, qui videant,<sup>x</sup> quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui,<sup>z</sup> cupidiūs<sup>aa</sup> novissimum agmen

<sup>a</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>k</sup> 110, 5.

<sup>s</sup> § 140, 1, 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>t</sup> § 112, R. III.

<sup>c</sup> § 51, 5.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 1.

<sup>u</sup> § 120, Obs. 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 98, Obs. 6.

<sup>n</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>v</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>e</sup> § 47, 6.

<sup>o</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>w</sup> § 146, R. LIX.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>p</sup> § 144, R. LVII.

<sup>x</sup> § 141, R. II.

<sup>g</sup> 113, 8, (sibi.)

<sup>q</sup> § 140, Obs. 4, &

<sup>y</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>h</sup> § 108, R. XIV. &

74, 1.

<sup>z</sup> 39. 5.

7, 1.

<sup>r</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>aa</sup> 22, 3.

<sup>i</sup> 56, 3.

insecūti, aliēno loco cum equitātu Helvetiōrum prōlium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo prōlio sublāti Helvetii, quod quingentis<sup>a</sup> equitiōbus tantam multitudinem equitū propulerant, audaciū subsistēre, nonnunquam ex<sup>1</sup> novissimo agmīne prōlio<sup>a</sup> nostros<sup>b</sup> laccessēre, cōpērunt. Cæsar suos<sup>b</sup> a prōlio continēbat, ac<sup>2</sup> satis habēbat in præsentia hostem rapīnis,<sup>c</sup> pabulationib<sup>c</sup>, populationibusque, prohibēre. Ita dies<sup>d</sup> circiter quindēcim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et<sup>e</sup> nostrum primum<sup>e</sup> non amplius<sup>f</sup> quinis<sup>f</sup> aut senis millib<sup>g</sup> passuum interesset.

16. <sup>5</sup> Intērim quotidie Cæsar Æduos<sup>b</sup> frumentum,<sup>b</sup> quod essent<sup>i</sup> publicē polliciti, flagitare:<sup>k</sup> nam propter<sup>6</sup> frigōra, quōd Gallia<sup>7</sup> sub septentrionib<sup>7</sup>, ut antē dictum est, posita est, non modō frumenta in agris matūra non erant, sed ne pabūli quidem<sup>1</sup> satis magna copia suppetēbat: eo autem<sup>8</sup> frumento,<sup>m</sup> quod flumine<sup>a</sup> Arāre navībus<sup>a</sup> subvexērat, propterea uti minūs potērat, quōd iter ab Arāre Helvetii avertērant, a quibus discedēre nolēbat. Diem ex die duce<sup>k</sup> Ædui;<sup>9</sup> conferri,<sup>n</sup> cōportāri, adesse dicēre.<sup>k</sup> Ubi<sup>10</sup> se diutiū duci<sup>o</sup> intellexit, et diem instāre,<sup>o</sup> quo die<sup>p</sup> frumentum militib<sup>8</sup> metīri oportēret;<sup>q</sup> convocātis eōrum principib<sup>8</sup>, quorum magnam copiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiāco<sup>r</sup> et Lisco,<sup>11</sup> qui summo magistrātu<sup>s</sup> præērat (quem Vergobrētum appellant Ædui, qui creātur annuus,<sup>t</sup> et vitæ necisque in suos habet potestātem,) graviter eos accūsat, quōd, cūm neque emi,<sup>u</sup> neque ex agris sumi posset,<sup>v</sup> tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostib<sup>8</sup>, ab iis non sublevētur;<sup>w</sup> præsertim cūm magnā ex parte eōrum preci-

<sup>a</sup> § 129, R.<sup>i</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.<sup>q</sup> § 113, Exc. III.<sup>b</sup> 19, (militib<sup>8</sup>.)<sup>k</sup> § 144, Obs. 6.<sup>r</sup> § 97, R.<sup>c</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)<sup>l</sup> 121, Note 2.<sup>s</sup> § 112, R. I.<sup>d</sup> § 131, R. XLI.<sup>m</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.<sup>t</sup> § 98, Obs. 10.<sup>e</sup> 19, (agmen.)<sup>n</sup> § 144, R. LVII.<sup>u</sup> 87.<sup>f</sup> 24, 11, & 26, 1.<sup>o</sup> 96, 6.<sup>v</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.<sup>g</sup> § 120, R.<sup>p</sup> 37, Note 1, 6.<sup>w</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.<sup>h</sup> 121, R.

bus<sup>a</sup> adductus bellum suscepērit: <sup>b</sup> multo<sup>c</sup> etiam gravius, quod sit destitūtus, <sup>d</sup> queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus, oratiōne<sup>a</sup> Cæsāris adductus, quod<sup>e</sup> antea<sup>f</sup> tacuērat, propōnit: “Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem<sup>g</sup> plurīmum valeat; <sup>d</sup> qui<sup>h</sup> privāti plus possint, quam ipsi magistrātus. Hos seditiōsā atque imprōbā oratiōne<sup>a</sup> multitudinem deterrēre, ne frumentum conférant,<sup>f</sup> quod præstāre debeant.<sup>g</sup> Si jam principātum Galliæ obtinēre non possint,<sup>h</sup> Gallōrum, quām Romanōrum imperia perferre, satiūs esse; neque dubitāre debēre, quin, si Helvetios superavērint<sup>h</sup> Romāni, unā cum reliquā Galliā Æduis<sup>i</sup> libertātem sint ereptūri.<sup>k</sup> Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quæque in castris gerantur,<sup>l</sup> hostībus<sup>m</sup> enunciāri: hos a se coërcēri non posse. Quin etiam, quod<sup>4</sup> necessariò rem coactus Cæsāri<sup>i</sup> enunciārit,<sup>l</sup> intelligēre sese, quanto id cum pericūlo fecērit,<sup>n</sup> et ob eam causam, quām diu potuērit,<sup>l</sup> tacuisse.”

18. Cæsar hac oratiōne<sup>a</sup> Lisci Dumnorīgem, Divitiaci fratrem,<sup>o</sup> designāri sentiēbat: sed, quod<sup>6</sup> plurībus<sup>p</sup> præsentībus eas res jactāri nolēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quærerit ex<sup>7</sup> solo ea, quæ in conventu dixērat. Dicit liberiūs atque audaciūs. Eādem secrētō ab aliis quærerit; repērit esse vera. “Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audaciā,<sup>q</sup> magnā apud plebem propter liberalitātem gratiā,<sup>r</sup> cupidum rerum<sup>r</sup> novārum: complūres annos<sup>s</sup> portoria, reliquāque omnia Æduōrum vēctigalia, parvo pretio<sup>s</sup> redemta<sup>t</sup> habēre, propterea quod, illo licente,<sup>p</sup> contra licēri audeat<sup>t</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>c</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, Obs. 4, & 74.

<sup>e</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>f</sup> § 146, R. LX. & 9

<sup>g</sup> § 132, Obs. 6.

<sup>h</sup> § 45, 1, & § 140, 3.

<sup>i</sup> § 107, R. VII. & 6, 1

<sup>j</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>l</sup> § 107, R. IX.

<sup>l</sup> 37, 2.

<sup>m</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>n</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 1, 3d, & 77.

<sup>p</sup> § 140, 5, & 74, 2d.

<sup>o</sup> § 146, Obs. 1.

<sup>g</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

nemo. His rebus<sup>a</sup> et suam rem familiarem auxisse,<sup>b</sup> et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse:<sup>b</sup> magnum numerum equitatus suo sumtu<sup>c</sup> semper alere<sup>d</sup> et circum se habere:<sup>d</sup> neque solùm domi,<sup>e</sup> sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse: atque hujus potentiae causâ matrem in Biturigibus, homini<sup>f</sup> illic nobilissimo,<sup>g</sup> ac potentissimo, <sup>2</sup> collocasse:<sup>b</sup> ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere:<sup>d</sup> sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum<sup>h</sup> in alias civitates collocasse:<sup>b</sup> favere et <sup>3</sup> cupere Helvetiis<sup>i</sup> propter eam affinitatem: odisse etiam suo nomine<sup>a</sup> Cæsarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu<sup>a</sup> potentia ejus diminuta,<sup>k</sup> et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus.<sup>k</sup> <sup>4</sup>Si quid accidat<sup>j</sup> Romani,<sup>m</sup> summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi<sup>n</sup> venire; imperio<sup>o</sup> Populi Romani non modò de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat,<sup>k</sup> gratiam desperare.<sup>d</sup> Reperiēbat etiam <sup>5</sup> inquirendo<sup>p</sup> Cæsar, quod prælium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus<sup>q</sup> esset factum, initium ejus fugæ factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus<sup>r</sup> (nam <sup>s</sup> equitatu<sup>r</sup> quem auxilio<sup>t</sup> Cæsari<sup>s</sup> Ædu miserant, Dumnorix præcerat), “eorum fugâ reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.”

19. Quibus<sup>t</sup> rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspicione<sup>u</sup> certissimæ res accedèrent,<sup>u</sup> quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset,<sup>k</sup> quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset,<sup>k</sup> quod ea omnia non modò<sup>8</sup> injussu suo<sup>v</sup> et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset,<sup>k</sup> quod a magistratu Æduorum accusaretur: satis esse causæ<sup>w</sup> arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertéret,<sup>x</sup> aut civitatem animadvertere jubéret.<sup>x</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 129, R.<sup>i</sup> § 112, R. V.<sup>r</sup> § 112, R. I.<sup>b</sup> 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.<sup>k</sup> § 140, 6.<sup>s</sup> § 114, R.<sup>c</sup> § 133, R.<sup>l</sup> § 140, 2.<sup>t</sup> 38, 3.<sup>d</sup> 96, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.<sup>m</sup> § 112, R. IV.<sup>u</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.<sup>e</sup> § 130, 4.<sup>n</sup> 112, 5.<sup>v</sup> 29, 1.<sup>f</sup> § 123, R.<sup>o</sup> § 136, Obs. 5. (sub)<sup>w</sup> § 135, R. XLVI.<sup>g</sup> 24, 1.<sup>p</sup> § 147, Obs. 5.<sup>x</sup> § 140, 5.<sup>h</sup> § 148, Obs. 2.<sup>q</sup> § 131, R. XL.

His omnibus rebus <sup>a</sup> unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratribus summum in Populum Romam studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne <sup>b</sup> ejus suppicio <sup>c</sup> Divitiaci animum offendere, <sup>d</sup> verebatur. Itaque priusquam quicquam conaretur, <sup>e</sup> Divitiacum ad se vocari <sup>f</sup> jubet, et, quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem <sup>g</sup> suum, cui <sup>h</sup> summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul <sup>i</sup> commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnonige sint <sup>k</sup> dicta, et <sup>l</sup> ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit, <sup>i</sup> petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel <sup>k</sup> ipse de eo, <sup>l</sup> causâ cognitâ, statuat, <sup>l</sup> vel civitatem statuere jubeat.<sup>1</sup>

20. Divitiacus multis cum lacrymis, Cæsarem complexus, obsecrare coepit, <sup>5</sup> ne quid gravius <sup>m</sup> in fratrem statueret: scire se, illa esse vera, nec quenquam ex eo plus, quam se, doloris <sup>n</sup> capere, propterea quod, cum <sup>o</sup> ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, <sup>p</sup> ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus <sup>o</sup> opibus <sup>p</sup> ac nervis, non solum ad minuendam <sup>q</sup> gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore <sup>8</sup> fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid <sup>r</sup> ei <sup>s</sup> a Cæsare gravius <sup>m</sup> accidisset, cum <sup>o</sup> ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenoret, neminem existimatrum, <sup>t</sup> non suam voluntate factum; quam ex re futurum, <sup>u</sup> ut totius Galliae anima a se averterentur.” Hæc cum pluribus verbis flens a Cæsare peteret,<sup>v</sup> Cæsar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus

<sup>a</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>b</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>p</sup> § 121, R. XX. VI.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, Obs. 6.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>q</sup> 112, 7.

<sup>c</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>k</sup> 124, 3.

<sup>r</sup> § 112, R. IV.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 1, 3d

<sup>s</sup> § 140, 2, & 80, 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>m</sup> 22.

<sup>t</sup> 100, 2.

<sup>f</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>n</sup> § 106, R. VIII.

<sup>u</sup> 51.

<sup>g</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>o</sup> 38.

<sup>v</sup> 74, 1st, 3

rogat, finem orandi faciat: <sup>a</sup> tanti <sup>b</sup> ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicæ injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. <sup>c</sup> Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem <sup>1</sup> adhibet; quæ in eo reprehendat, <sup>d</sup> ostendit; quæ ipse intelligat, <sup>d</sup> quæ civitas queratur, <sup>d</sup> propōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspicōnes vitet; <sup>e</sup> præterita <sup>f</sup> se <sup>2</sup> Divitiaco <sup>g</sup> fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi <sup>g</sup> <sup>3</sup> custodes ponit, ut, quæ agat, <sup>d</sup> quibuscum loquatur, <sup>d</sup> scire possit. <sup>h</sup>

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte <sup>4</sup> consedisse <sup>1</sup> millia <sup>k</sup> passuum ab ipsius castris octo; qualis esset <sup>d</sup> natūra montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscērent, <sup>1</sup> misit. Renunciātum est, <sup>5</sup> facilem esse.<sup>m</sup> De tertiā <sup>6</sup> vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, <sup>7</sup> legātum pro <sup>8</sup> prætōre, cum duābus legionibus, <sup>9</sup> et iis ducib⁹, qui iter cognovērant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit, <sup>d</sup> ostendit. Ipse de quartā vigiliā eodem itinēre, quo hōstes iērānt, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militāris <sup>n</sup> peritissimus habebātur, et in exercitu Lucii Sullæ, et postea <sup>10</sup> in Marci Crassi fuērat, cum exploratoribus præmittitur.

22. <sup>11</sup> Primā luce, <sup>o</sup> cùm summus <sup>p</sup> mons a Tito Labiēno tenerētur, <sup>q</sup> <sup>12</sup> ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passib⁹ abesset, <sup>q</sup> neque, ut postea ex captīvis cōpērit, aut ipsius adventus, aut Labiēni, cognitus esset; <sup>q</sup> Considius, <sup>13</sup> equo <sup>r</sup> admisso, ad eum accurrit: dicit, montem, quem a Labiēno occupāri voluērit, ab hostib⁹ tenēri; <sup>s</sup> id se a Gallicis armis <sup>t</sup> atque insignib⁹ cognovisse.<sup>u</sup> Cæ-

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 3d, &

Obs. 5.

<sup>b</sup> § 106, R. VII. or

<sup>§</sup> 122, R. XXVIII.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 5, & 74, 9.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>f</sup> 19.

<sup>g</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1. 2d.

<sup>i</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>k</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>l</sup> § 141, R. II. Obs.

<sup>2</sup>, 4th.

<sup>m</sup> 96, 6.

<sup>n</sup> § 107, R. IX

<sup>o</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>p</sup> § 98, Obs. 9, & 17, 2.

<sup>q</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>r</sup> § 146, R. LX.

<sup>s</sup> 96, 6, & 94, 1, 2d.

<sup>t</sup> § 129, Obs. 2.

<sup>u</sup> 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.

sar suas copias in proximum collem subducit,<sup>a</sup> aciem instruit.<sup>a</sup> Labienus, ut erat ei<sup>b</sup> praeceptum<sup>c</sup> a Cæsare ne prælium committerebat,<sup>d</sup> nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium casta<sup>e</sup> visæ essent,<sup>f</sup> ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret,<sup>g</sup> monte occupato nostros expectabat prælioque abstinebat. <sup>h</sup> Multo denique die per exploratores Cæsar cognovit, et montem a suis teneri,<sup>i</sup> et Helvetios castra movisse, et Considium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset,<sup>f</sup> <sup>j</sup> pro viso sibi renunciâsse.<sup>i</sup> Eo die, <sup>k</sup> quo<sup>k</sup> consueraat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria, ab eorum castris castra ponit.

23. Postridie ejus diëi,<sup>l</sup> quod omnino biduum supererat, cum<sup>m</sup> exercitu frumentum metiri oportet,<sup>m</sup> et quod a Bibracte, oppido Æduorum longè maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius millibus<sup>n</sup> passuum octodécim aberat, <sup>o</sup> rei<sup>o</sup> frumentariæ prospiciendum<sup>p</sup> existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte<sup>q</sup> ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos Lucii Æmilii, <sup>r</sup> decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus<sup>b</sup> nunciatur. Helvetii, seu,<sup>r</sup> quod timore perterritos Romanos<sup>s</sup> discedere a se existimarent,<sup>t</sup> eo magis, quod pridie, superioribus locis occupatis,<sup>u</sup> prælium non commovissent;<sup>v</sup> sive eo, quod re<sup>w</sup> frumentariâ intercludi posse<sup>x</sup> confidèrent;<sup>y</sup> commutato<sup>z</sup> consilio atque itinere converso,<sup>u</sup> nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacescere cœperunt.

24. Postquam id<sup>z</sup> animum advertit, copias suas Cæsar in proximum collem subducit,<sup>a</sup> equitatumque,<sup>z</sup> qui<sup>z</sup> sustineret<sup>y</sup> hostium impetum, misit. Ipse intērim in colle medio<sup>w</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 44, I. 3.

<sup>i</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>q</sup> § 130, 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 126. R. III.

<sup>k</sup> 37, 2d, 4, & Note 1.

<sup>r</sup> 124, 6.

<sup>c</sup> 51.

<sup>l</sup> § 135, R. XLVI.

<sup>s</sup> § 140. Obs. 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 3d, & 121, 3.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, Obs. 4. &

<sup>t</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

<sup>e</sup> § 136, Obs. 5. (ad.)

<sup>§</sup> 113, Exc. III.

<sup>u</sup> 104, 1.

<sup>f</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>n</sup> § 120, R. & 6. 3.

<sup>v</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>o</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>w</sup> § 98, Obs. 9, & 17

<sup>h</sup> 96, 6.

<sup>p</sup> 113.

triplicem aciem instruxit legiōnum quatuor veterārum, ita, ut supra se in summo jugo duas legiōnes, quas in <sup>1</sup> Galliā citeriore proximē conscripsērat, et omnia auxilia collocaret; ac totum montem hominībus <sup>a</sup> complēri, <sup>b</sup> et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, <sup>b</sup> et <sup>c</sup> eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constitērant, munīri <sup>b</sup> jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secūti, impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt: ipsi, <sup>d</sup> confertissimā acie, <sup>c</sup> rejecto <sup>d</sup> nostro equitātu, phalange factā, <sup>d</sup> sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

25. Cæsar, primum <sup>e</sup> suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remōtis <sup>d</sup> equis, ut, æquāto omnium <sup>f</sup> pericūlo, spem fugæ tolleret, cohortātus suos, prælīum commīsīt. Milites, e loco superiore pilis missis, <sup>d</sup> facile hostium phalangem perfregērunt. Eā disiectā, <sup>e</sup> gladiis <sup>f</sup> destictis in eos impētum fecerunt. Gallis <sup>g</sup> magno ad pugnam erat <sup>h</sup> impedimento, <sup>g</sup> quod, pluribus eōrum <sup>g</sup> scutis <sup>e</sup> uno ictu pilōrum transfixis et colligātis, cūm ferrum se inflexisset, <sup>i</sup> neque evellēre, neque, sinistrā impedītā, <sup>e</sup> satis <sup>j</sup> commōdē pugnāre poterant; multi ut, diu jactāto brachio, præoptarent <sup>k</sup> scutum manu <sup>l</sup> emittēre, et <sup>m</sup> nudo corpore <sup>f</sup> pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus defessi, et <sup>n</sup> pedem referre, et quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eō se recipere cœperunt. Capto monte <sup>e</sup> et succendentibus nostris, <sup>e</sup> Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus <sup>f</sup> circiter quindēcim <sup>l</sup> agmen hostium claudēbant, et novissimis <sup>g</sup> præsidio erant, ex itinēre nostros latere <sup>m</sup> aperto aggressi, circumvenēre: et id conspicāti Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instāre et prælīum redintegrandū cœperunt. Romāni conversa signa <sup>o</sup> bipartitō intulērunt: prima, ac secunda acies, ut victis ac summōtis resistēret; <sup>p</sup> tertia, ut venientes excipēret.<sup>n</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 126, R. V.

<sup>f</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 1, 1st. (ita.)

<sup>b</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>g</sup> § 114, R. & 8, 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>c</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>h</sup> 51, 1.

<sup>m</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ab)

<sup>d</sup> 104, 1.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>e</sup> 109.

26. Ita <sup>a</sup>ancipiti prælio <sup>a</sup>diu atque acriter pugnatum est.<sup>b</sup> Diutius cùm nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent,<sup>c</sup> <sup>d</sup>altéri <sup>d</sup> se, ut cœperant, in montem receperunt; altéri <sup>d</sup> ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulérunt. Nam hoc toto prælio,<sup>e</sup> cùm ab <sup>f</sup>horâ septimâ ad vespérum pugnatum sit,<sup>c</sup> <sup>g</sup>aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. <sup>h</sup>Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros <sup>i</sup>Venientes tela conjiciēbant,<sup>g</sup> et nonnulli, inter carros rotasque, <sup>j</sup>mataras ac tragulas subjiciēbant <sup>g</sup>nostrosque vulnerabant.<sup>g</sup> Diu, cùm esset pugnatum, impedimentis <sup>h</sup>castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorix filia, atque unus e filiis <sup>i</sup>captus est. Ex eo prælio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuérunt, eaque totâ nocte <sup>e</sup>continentè iérunt: nullam partem <sup>j</sup>noctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingonum die quarto <sup>k</sup>pervenērunt, cùm, et <sup>l</sup>propter vulnera militum, et propter sepulturam occisorum,<sup>f</sup> nostri, triduum <sup>e</sup>morati, eos sequi non potuissent.<sup>c</sup> Cæsar ad Lingonas literas nunciosque misit, ne eos frumento, neve aliâ re juvarent: <sup>m</sup><sup>7</sup> qui si juvissent,<sup>n</sup> <sup>8</sup>se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi cœpit.

27. Helvetii omnium rerum inopiâ adducti, legatos de deditiōne ad eum miserunt. <sup>o</sup>Qui, <sup>o</sup>cùm eum in itinere convenissent,<sup>c</sup> seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos <sup>p</sup>in eo loco, quo tum essent,<sup>q</sup> suum adventum expectare <sup>r</sup>jussisset, paruerunt. Eò postquam Cæsar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent,<sup>s</sup> poposcit. Dum ea conqueriruntur, et conferun-

<sup>a</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>g</sup> § 44, II, 2.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 2:

<sup>b</sup> 65, 5.

<sup>h</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>o</sup> 39, 5.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>i</sup> § 107, Obs. 8.

<sup>p</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>d</sup> 27, Obs. 10.

<sup>k</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>q</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>e</sup> § 131, R. XLI. &

<sup>l</sup> 124, 1.

<sup>r</sup> 94, 3.

Exp.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>s</sup> § 141, R. I.

<sup>f</sup> 19, (milites.)

tur, nocte intermissâ, circiter hominum millia sex ejus pagi, qui Verbigenus<sup>a</sup> appellatur sive timore perterriti, ne, armis traditis, suppicio afficerentur,<sup>b</sup> sive spe salutis inducti, quod, in tantâ multitudine deditiōrum, suam fugam<sup>c</sup> aut<sup>d</sup> occultari,<sup>d</sup> aut<sup>e</sup> omnino ignorari posse existimarent,<sup>e</sup> primā<sup>f</sup> nocte ex castris Helvetiōrum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod<sup>g</sup> ubi Cæsar resciit, <sup>h</sup> quorum per fines ierant, his,<sup>h</sup> uti conquererent<sup>i</sup> et reducērent, si sibi purgati<sup>d</sup> esse vellent,<sup>k</sup> imperāvit: reductos<sup>l</sup> in hostium numero<sup>m</sup> habuit: reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditiōnem accēpit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti<sup>n</sup> jussit; et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, domi<sup>o</sup> nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent,<sup>p</sup> Allobrogibus<sup>h</sup> imperāvit, ut iis<sup>p</sup> frumenti copiam facerent:<sup>i</sup> ipsos<sup>c</sup> oppida vicosque, quos incendērant, restituere jussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne<sup>q</sup> fecit, quod noluit, eum locum,<sup>c</sup> unde Helvetii discesserant,<sup>r</sup> vacare;<sup>m</sup> ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germāni, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiōrum fines transirent,<sup>b</sup> et finitimi<sup>a</sup> Galliae provinciæ<sup>r</sup> Allobrogibusque essent. <sup>s</sup> Boios, potentibus Æduis,<sup>h</sup> quod egregia virtute<sup>s</sup> erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent,<sup>i</sup> concessit: quibus<sup>h</sup> illi agros dedērunt, quosque postea in parēm juris libertatisque conditiōnem, atque<sup>t</sup> ipsi erant, receperunt.

29. In castris Helvetiōrum<sup>o</sup> tabūlæ repertæ sunt,<sup>o</sup> litēris Græcis confectæ et ad Cæsarem relatæ, quibus<sup>u</sup> in tabūlis nominatim<sup>o</sup> ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset<sup>v</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 103, R. V.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1.

<sup>c</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>d</sup> 87, 6.

<sup>e</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>f</sup> 17, 1.

<sup>g</sup> 38, 4.

<sup>h</sup> 63.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>l</sup> 19, (eos.)

<sup>m</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>n</sup> § 130, 4.

<sup>o</sup> § 141, R. I.

<sup>p</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>q</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>r</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>s</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>t</sup> § 149, Obs. 6.

<sup>u</sup> 37. Note 1. 6.

<sup>v</sup> § 140, 5.

eōrum, qui arma ferre possent:<sup>a</sup> et item separātim puēri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum <sup>b</sup> omnium rerum summa erat. <sup>c</sup> capītum Helvetiōrum millia<sup>c</sup> ducenta et sexaginta tria, Tulingōrum millia triginta sex, Latobrigōrum quatuordēcim, Rauracōrum viginti tria, Boiōrum triginta duo: ex his, qui arma ferre possent,<sup>a</sup> ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium<sup>d</sup> fuērunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eōrum, qui domum rediērunt, <sup>e</sup> censu<sup>e</sup> habito, ut Cæsar imperavērat, repertus est numērus millium centum et decem.

30. Bello<sup>e</sup> Helvetiōrum confecto, totius fere Galliæ legāti, principes civitatum, ad Cæsarem<sup>f</sup> gratulātum<sup>f</sup> convenērunt: intelligēre sese,<sup>g</sup> tametsi, <sup>h</sup> pro veteribus Helvetiōrum injuriis Popūli Romāni, ab iis pœnas bello repetisset,<sup>b</sup> tamen eam rem<sup>g</sup> non minūs ex usu terræ Galliæ, quām Popūli Romāni accidisse: propterea quod eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helyetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliæ<sup>i</sup> bellum inferrent,<sup>k</sup> imperiōque potirentur,<sup>k</sup> locumque domicilio<sup>l</sup> ex magnâ copiâ diligērent,<sup>k</sup> quem ex omni Galliâ opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum jūdicāssent,<sup>a</sup> reliquaque civitātes stipendiarias habērent.” Petiērunt, “utī sibi<sup>m</sup> concilium totius Galliæ in diem certam indicēre, idque Cæsaris voluntāte facere, licēret:<sup>n</sup> sese<sup>g</sup> habere quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu ab eo petere vellent.<sup>o</sup> Eā re permissā, diem concilio<sup>l</sup> constituērunt, et jurejurando, <sup>p</sup> ne quis enunciāret,<sup>n</sup> nisi quibus<sup>q</sup> commūni consilio mandātum esset, inter se sanxērunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes civitatum, qui antē fuērant ad Cæsarem, revertērunt, petieruntque, utī sibi secrēto de suā<sup>r</sup> omniumque salūte cum eo agere licēret.<sup>n</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>g</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>m</sup> § 113, R.

<sup>b</sup> 38.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>c</sup> § 24, 5.

<sup>i</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>o</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>d</sup> 19.

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 1. 2d.

<sup>p</sup> 121.

<sup>e</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 114, R. &

<sup>q</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>f</sup> 114,

Obs. 4, (sibi.)

<sup>r</sup> 29, 1.

Èâ re impetrâtâ,<sup>a</sup> sese<sup>b</sup> omnes flentes Cæsâri<sup>c</sup> ad pedes pro-  
 jecérunt :<sup>i</sup> non minùs se<sup>d</sup> id contendere et laborare, ne ea,  
 quæ dixissent,<sup>e</sup> enunciarentur,<sup>f</sup> quâm uti ea, quæ vellent,<sup>g</sup>  
 impetrârent,<sup>f</sup> propterea quòd, si enunciâtum esset,<sup>g</sup> summum  
 in cruciâtum se venturos vidèrent.<sup>h</sup> Locütus est pro his  
 Divitiâcus Æduus :<sup>i</sup> “ Galliæ totius factiōnes<sup>d</sup> esse duas:  
<sup>j</sup> harum alterius principâtum tenere Æduos,<sup>d</sup> alterius Arver-  
 nos. <sup>k</sup> Hi cùm tantopere de potentâtu inter se multos annos  
 contendèrent,<sup>k</sup> factum esse<sup>l</sup> uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque  
 Germâni mercède arcesserentur.<sup>m</sup> <sup>n</sup> Horum primò circiter  
 millia<sup>d</sup> quindécim Rhenum<sup>n</sup> transisse: posteaquam agros,  
 et cultum, et<sup>o</sup> copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbâri ad-  
 amâssent,<sup>h</sup> transductos plures:<sup>d</sup> nunc esse in Galliâ ad cen-  
 tum et viginti millium numérûm: cum his Æduos<sup>d</sup> eorum-  
 que clientes semel atque itérum armis contendisse;<sup>o</sup> mag-  
 nam calamitâtem pulsos accepisse,<sup>o</sup> omnem nobilitatem, om-  
 nem senâtum, omnem equitatum amisisse.<sup>o</sup> Quibus<sup>p</sup> prœ-  
 liis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et suâ virtute, et Populi  
 Români hospitio atque amicitiâ, plurimum antè in Galliâ  
 potuissent,<sup>h</sup> coactos esse Sequânis obsides dare, nobilissimos  
 civitatis,<sup>q</sup> et jurejurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque  
 obsides repetituros,<sup>r</sup> neque auxilium a Populo Româno im-  
 ploraturos,<sup>r</sup> neque recusaturos,<sup>r</sup> quo minùs perpetuo sub  
 illorum ditiōne atque imperio essent.<sup>s</sup> <sup>t</sup> Unum se esse ex  
 omni civitate Æduorum, qui adduci<sup>t</sup> non potuerit,<sup>h</sup> ut jurâ-  
 ret,<sup>u</sup> aut liberos suos obsides daret.<sup>v</sup> Ob eam rem se<sup>d</sup> ex  
 civitate profugisse,<sup>w</sup> et Romam<sup>x</sup> ad senâtum venisse, aux-  
 ilium<sup>y</sup> postulatum, quòd solus neque jurejurando<sup>x</sup> neque

<sup>a</sup> 109.<sup>i</sup> 94, 4.<sup>r</sup> 100, 2.<sup>b</sup> 31, 1.<sup>k</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.<sup>s</sup> § 140, 3.<sup>c</sup> § 110, Obs. 1, & 2.<sup>l</sup> 51, 4.<sup>t</sup> 87.<sup>d</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.<sup>m</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.<sup>u</sup> § 140, 1, 3d<sup>e</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.<sup>n</sup> § 136, R. LII.<sup>v</sup> § 130, 2.<sup>f</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.<sup>o</sup> 98, 2.<sup>w</sup> 114, 1.<sup>g</sup> § 140, 2.<sup>p</sup> 38, 9.<sup>x</sup> § 129, R.<sup>h</sup> § 140, 6.<sup>q</sup> § 107, R.X. & Exp.

obsidibus<sup>a</sup> teneretur.<sup>b</sup> Sed pejus victoribus Sequānis,<sup>c</sup> quām  
Æduis<sup>c</sup> victis, accidisse:<sup>d</sup> propterea quòd Ariovistus, rex Ger-  
manōrum, in eōrum finībus consedisset,<sup>b</sup> tertiamque partem  
agri Sequāni, qui esset<sup>e</sup> optimus totius Galliæ, occupavisset,<sup>b</sup>  
et nunc de altērā parte tertiā Sequānos decedere jubēret;<sup>b</sup>  
propterea quòd, paucis mensib⁹<sup>f</sup> antē, Harūdum millia  
homīnum viginti quatuor ad eum venissent;<sup>b</sup> <sup>g</sup> quibus<sup>g</sup> lo-  
cūs ac sedes pararentur.<sup>e</sup> <sup>2</sup>Futūrum<sup>h</sup> esse paucis annis<sup>i</sup> utī  
omnes ex Galliæ finībus pellerentur,<sup>i</sup> atque omnes Germāni  
Rhenum transīrent:<sup>j</sup> <sup>3</sup>neque enim conferendum<sup>k</sup> esse Gal-  
līcum cum Germanōrum agro, neque hanc consuetudinē  
victūs cum illā comparandam.<sup>k</sup> Ariovistum autem, <sup>4</sup>ut se-  
mel Gallōrum copias prælio vicērit,<sup>e</sup> quod prælium<sup>l</sup> factum  
sit<sup>b</sup> ad Magetobriam, superbè et crudeliter imperāre, obsi-  
des nobilissimi cujusque libēros poscere,<sup>b</sup> et in eos omnia  
exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut  
ad voluntātem ejus facta sit:<sup>m</sup> homīnem esse barbārum,  
iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia<sup>n</sup> diutius  
sustinēri. <sup>6</sup>Nisi si quid in Cæsāre Populōque Romāno sit  
auxiliī,<sup>o</sup> omnībus Gallis<sup>p</sup> idem esse faciendum, quod Helve-  
tii fecerint,<sup>e</sup> <sup>7</sup>ut domo emigrent,<sup>i</sup> aliud domicilium, alias  
sedes, remōtas a Germānis, petant,<sup>i</sup> fortunamque, quæcum-  
que accidat,<sup>e</sup> experiantur.<sup>i</sup> <sup>“</sup>Hæc si enunciāta Ariovisto  
sint,<sup>m</sup> non dubitare, quin de omnībus obsidibus, qui apūd  
eum sint,<sup>e</sup> gravissimum supplicium sumat.<sup>q</sup> Cæsarem vel  
auctoritatē<sup>a</sup> suā<sup>r</sup> atque exercitūs, vel recenti victoriā, vel  
nomīne Popūli Romāni deterrēre posse, ne major multitūdo  
Germanōrum Rhenum transducātur,<sup>s</sup> Galliamque omnem ab  
Ariovisti injuriā posse defendere.”

<sup>a</sup> § 129, R.<sup>s</sup> § 126, R. III.<sup>n</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.<sup>b</sup> § 140, 6, & 74.<sup>h</sup> 51, 5.<sup>o</sup> § 106, R. VIII.<sup>c</sup> § 113, R. &<sup>i</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.<sup>p</sup> § 147, R. LXI.<sup>d</sup> 98, 2.<sup>k</sup> 108.<sup>q</sup> § 140, 3.<sup>e</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.<sup>l</sup> 37, Note 1, 6.<sup>r</sup> 29, 1.<sup>f</sup> § 131 R. XL.<sup>m</sup> § 140, 2, & 74, 1st.<sup>s</sup> § 140, 1.

32. Hāc oratiōne ab Divitiāco <sup>1</sup>habitā, omnes, qui adērant, magno fletu auxilium a Cāsāre petēre cōpērunt. Animadvertisit Cāsar, unos <sup>a</sup> ex omnībus Sequānos <sup>b</sup> nihil eārum rerum facēre, <sup>c</sup> quas cetēri facērent; <sup>d</sup> sed tristes, capite <sup>e</sup> demisso, terram intuēri. Ejus rei causa quāe esset, <sup>f</sup> mirātus, <sup>g</sup> ex ipsis quæsivit. Nihil Sequāni respondēre, <sup>h</sup> sed in eādem tristitiā taciti <sup>i</sup> permanēre. Cūm ab iis səpius quærēret, <sup>k</sup> neque ullam omnīno vocem <sup>2</sup> exprimēre posset, <sup>l</sup> idem Divitiācus Æduus respondit: <sup>m</sup> “Hoc esse miseriōrem gravioremque fortūnam Sequanōrum, <sup>n</sup> præ <sup>o</sup> reliquōrum, quòd soli ne in occulto quidem queri, neque auxilium implorāre audērent, <sup>d</sup> absentisque Ariovisti crudelitātem, velut si coram adesset<sup>p</sup> horrērent: <sup>d</sup> propterea quòd reliquis <sup>q</sup> tamen <sup>r</sup> fugæ facultas darētur; Sequānis <sup>s</sup> vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, <sup>t</sup> quorum oppida omnia in potestāte ejus essent, <sup>u</sup> omnes cruciātus essent perferendi.””

33. His rebus cognitīs, Cāsar Gallōrum anīmos verbis <sup>e</sup> confirmāvit, pollicitusque est, <sup>7</sup> sibi <sup>q</sup> eam rem curāe futūram: magnam se habēre spem, et beneficio <sup>e</sup> suo et auctoritatē adductum Ariovistum finem injuriis factūrum.<sup>r</sup> Hāc oratiōne habitā, concilium dimīsit; et <sup>s</sup> secundum ea multæ res eum hortabantur, quare sibi <sup>o</sup> eam rem <sup>b</sup> cogitandam <sup>p</sup> et suscipiendam putāret; <sup>f</sup> in primis quòd <sup>s</sup> Æduos, fratres consanguineosque səpenumero ab Senātu appellātos, in servitūte atque in ditiōne vidēbat Germanōrum tenēri, <sup>c</sup> eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequānos intelligēbat: quod <sup>t</sup> in tanto imperio Popūli Romāni turpissimum <sup>u</sup> sibi <sup>v</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 16, 4.

<sup>i</sup> § 98, Obs. 10.

<sup>p</sup> 108.

<sup>b</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>k</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>q</sup> § 114, R. & 8.

<sup>c</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 136, Obs. 6.

<sup>r</sup> 100, 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>s</sup> § 140, Obs. 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>n</sup> § 126, R. III. & 19.

<sup>t</sup> 37, Note 3.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>o</sup> § 126, R. XXXIII.

<sup>u</sup> § 103, Obs. 2.

<sup>g</sup> 106, 1.

& Obs. 3.

<sup>v</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 144, Obs. 6.

et reipublicæ esse arbitrabātur. Paulātim autem Germānos consuescere Rhenum transire, et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem venire, Popūlo Romāno periculōsum vidēbat: neque sibi<sup>a</sup> homīnes feros ac barbāros temperatūros<sup>b</sup> existimābat, quin, cùm omnem Galliam occupāssent,<sup>c</sup> ut ante Cimbri Teutonīque fecissent,<sup>d</sup> in Provinciam exīrent,<sup>e</sup> atque inde in Italiam contendērent;<sup>f</sup> præsertim cùm Sequānos a Provinciā nostrā Rhodānus dividēret.<sup>f</sup> Quibus<sup>g</sup> rebus<sup>z</sup> quām<sup>i</sup> maturimē<sup>1</sup> occurrentum putābat.<sup>h</sup> Ipse autem Ario-vistus tantos sibi spirītus, tantam arrogantiam sumsērat, ut ferendus non viderētur.<sup>k</sup>

34. Quamobrem<sup>2</sup> placuit ei, ut ad Ario-vistum legātos mittēret,<sup>l</sup> qui ab eo postulārent,<sup>m</sup> uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio dicēret:<sup>n</sup> velle sese de republīcā<sup>o</sup> et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agēre. Ei legatiōni<sup>o</sup> Ario-vistus respondit: <sup>4</sup> Si quid ipsi<sup>p</sup> a Cæsāre opus esset, sese ad eum ventūrum fuisse; <sup>q</sup> si quid ille se<sup>r</sup> velit, illum<sup>s</sup> ad se venire oportēre. Præterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliæ venire audēre, quas Cæsar possidēret; <sup>t</sup> neque exercitum<sup>6</sup> sine magno commeātu atque emolimento in unum locum contrahēre posse: sibi autem mirum vidēri,<sup>u</sup> quid in suā Galliā, quam bello vicisset,<sup>v</sup> aut Cæsari,<sup>w</sup> aut omnino Popūlo Romāno<sup>x</sup> negotii<sup>y</sup> esset.”

35. His responsis ad Cæsarem relātis, itērum ad eū Cæsar legātos cum his mandatis mittit: “Quoniam tanto suo<sup>y</sup> Populique Romāni beneficio affectus (cùm in consulātu suo rex atque amīcus a Senātu appellātus esset), hanc sibi

<sup>a</sup> 31, Note.	<sup>k</sup> § 140, 1, 1st. 70.	<sup>r</sup> § 136, Obs. 5. (a.)
<sup>b</sup> 100, 1.	<sup>l</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.	<sup>s</sup> § 113, Exc. III.
<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.	<sup>m</sup> § 141, R. II. Obs.	<sup>t</sup> § 140, 6.
<sup>d</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.	<sup>2</sup> , 4th.	<sup>u</sup> 70, & Obs.
<sup>e</sup> § 140, 3.	<sup>n</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.	<sup>v</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.
<sup>f</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.	<sup>o</sup> 63.	<sup>w</sup> § 112, R. II.
<sup>g</sup> 38.	<sup>p</sup> § 111.	<sup>x</sup> § 107, R. VIII.
<sup>h</sup> § 147, & 113, (sibi)	<sup>q</sup> 100, 5.	<sup>y</sup> 29, 1.
<sup>i</sup> § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.		<sup>z</sup> § 112, R. IV.

Populōque Romāno<sup>1</sup> gratiam referret,<sup>a</sup> ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur,<sup>b</sup> neque<sup>c</sup> de commūni re<sup>d</sup> dicendum sibi<sup>e</sup> et cognoscendum putaret;<sup>f</sup> hæc<sup>g</sup> esse, quæ ab eo postularet:<sup>f</sup> primùm, ne<sup>h</sup> quam homīnum multitudinem ampliùs trans Rhenum in Galliam transducēret:<sup>g</sup> deinde obsides, quos habēret<sup>f</sup> ab Æduis, reddēret,<sup>k</sup> Sequanisque permittēret,<sup>g</sup> ut, quos illi<sup>f</sup> habērent,<sup>j</sup> voluntāte ejus reddēre illis licēret;<sup>g</sup> neve Æduos<sup>5</sup> injuriā lacesſeret,<sup>g</sup> neve his sociisve eōrum bellum inferret:<sup>g</sup> si id ita fecisset,<sup>h</sup> sibi<sup>i</sup> Populōque Romāno perpetuam gratiam<sup>e</sup> atque amicitiam cum eo futūram:<sup>k</sup> si non impetrāret,<sup>h</sup> sese<sup>e</sup> (quoniam Marco Messälā, Marco Pisōne Consulibus, Senātus censuisset,<sup>n</sup> uti quicumque Galliam provinciam<sup>l</sup> obtinēret,<sup>m</sup> quod commōdo<sup>o</sup> reipublicæ facere posset,<sup>f</sup> Æduos ceterosque amīcos Popūli Romāni defendēret),<sup>g</sup> sese<sup>j</sup> Æduōrum injurias non neglectūrum.”<sup>k</sup>

36. Ad hæc Arioistus respondit: “Jus esse belli, ut, qui<sup>e</sup> vicissent,<sup>m</sup> iis,<sup>p</sup> quos vicissent,<sup>f</sup> quemadmōdum vellent,<sup>q</sup> imperārent:<sup>g</sup> item Popūlum Romānum<sup>e</sup> victis<sup>p</sup> non ad alterius præscriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperāre consuēsse.<sup>r</sup> Si ipse Popūlo Romāno non præscribēret,<sup>h</sup> quemadmōdum suo<sup>s</sup> jure uterētur;<sup>q</sup> non<sup>t</sup> oportēre sese a Popūlo Romāno in suo jure impedīri. Æduos<sup>e</sup> sibi<sup>t</sup> quoniam bellī fortūnam tentāssent<sup>a</sup> et armis congressi ac superāti essent,<sup>u</sup> stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Cæsārem<sup>e</sup> injuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriōra faceret.<sup>u</sup> Æduis<sup>v</sup> se obsides redditūrum non esse, neque iis,<sup>y</sup> neque eōrum sociis<sup>x</sup> injuriā bellum illatūrum, si in eo manērent,<sup>h</sup> quod convenisset,<sup>f</sup> stipendiumque quotannis pendērent: si

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 6.<sup>b</sup> § 140, 2.<sup>p</sup> § 112, R. V.<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1.<sup>i</sup> § 112, R. II.<sup>q</sup> § 140, 5.<sup>c</sup> § 93, 1.<sup>k</sup> § 100, 2.<sup>r</sup> 98, 6.<sup>d</sup> § 147, & 113, 5.<sup>l</sup> § 97, R.<sup>s</sup> 31, Note.<sup>e</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.<sup>m</sup> § 141, R. I.<sup>t</sup> § 111, R.<sup>f</sup> § 141, R. VI.<sup>n</sup> § 129, R.<sup>u</sup> § 141, R. III.<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.<sup>o</sup> 37, 3<sup>v</sup> § 123, R.

id non fecissent,<sup>1</sup> longè iis<sup>a</sup> fraternal nomen Populi Romani abfutūrum. <sup>2</sup>Quod<sup>b</sup> sibi Cæsar denunciāret, se Æduōrum injurias non neglectūrum; neminem<sup>c</sup> secum sine suā<sup>d</sup> pernicie contendisse.<sup>e</sup> Cùm vellet,<sup>f</sup> congrederētur;<sup>g</sup> intellectūrum, quid invicti Germāni, exercitatissimi in armis, qui<sup>h</sup> inter annos quatuordēcim tectum non subīssent,<sup>i</sup> <sup>4</sup> virtute possent.”<sup>j</sup>

37. Hæc eodem tempore Cæsari<sup>k</sup> mandata referebantur, et legati ab Æduis et a Treviris veniēbant: <sup>l</sup> Ædui<sup>l</sup> quesum,<sup>m</sup> quòd Harūdes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent,<sup>n</sup> fines eorum popularentur,<sup>o</sup> sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Arioosti redimere potuisse: <sup>o</sup> Treviri<sup>l</sup> autem, pagos centum Suevōrum ad ripas Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur;<sup>o</sup> iis<sup>a</sup> præesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres: Quibus<sup>n</sup> rebus Cæsar vehementer commotus, maturandum<sup>c</sup> sibi<sup>o</sup> existimāvit, <sup>7</sup> ne, si nova manus Suevōrum cum veteribus copiis Arioosti sese conjunxisset,<sup>p</sup> minus facilē resisti posset.<sup>q</sup> Itaque<sup>s</sup> re frumentariā, quām<sup>r</sup> celerrimē potuit, comparatā,<sup>s</sup> magnis itineribus ad Arioustum contendit.

38. Cùm<sup>9</sup> tridui viam<sup>v</sup> processisset,<sup>f</sup> nunciātum est ei,<sup>k</sup> Arioustum<sup>c</sup> cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum<sup>t</sup> Vesonitiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanōrum,<sup>10</sup> contendere,<sup>u</sup> triduīque viam<sup>v</sup> a suis finib<sup>w</sup> processisse.<sup>e</sup> Id ne accidēret,<sup>q</sup> magno opere sibi<sup>o</sup> præcavendum<sup>c</sup> Cæsar existimābat: namque omnium rerum, quæ ad bellum usui<sup>w</sup> erant,<sup>11</sup> summa erat in eo oppido facultas; idque naturā loci sic muniebātur, ut magnam<sup>12</sup> ad ducendum bellum daret<sup>x</sup> fac-

- 
- |                               |                             |                                  |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <sup>a</sup> § 112, R. I.     | <sup>i</sup> § 140, 5.      | <sup>r</sup> § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.  |
| <sup>b</sup> 38, Note. 11.    | <sup>k</sup> § 126, R. III. | <sup>s</sup> § 104, 1.           |
| <sup>c</sup> § 145, R. LVIII. | <sup>l</sup> § 101, Obs. 4. | <sup>t</sup> 112, 7.             |
| <sup>d</sup> 31, Note.        | <sup>m</sup> § 148. 1.      | <sup>u</sup> 96, 2.              |
| <sup>e</sup> 98, 2.           | <sup>n</sup> 38.            | <sup>v</sup> § 132, R. XLII.     |
| <sup>f</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.   | <sup>o</sup> 113.           | <sup>w</sup> § 114, R. & Obs. 4. |
| <sup>g</sup> § 140, 6.        | <sup>p</sup> § 140, 2.      | <sup>x</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.      |
| <sup>h</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.   | <sup>q</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.  |                                  |

ultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis <sup>1</sup> ut circino circumductum, pene totum oppidum cingit: reliquum spatium, quod est <sup>2</sup> non amplius pedum <sup>a</sup> sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons <sup>3</sup> continet magnam altitudinem, <sup>b</sup> ita ut radices ejus montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingent. <sup>c</sup> Hunc <sup>d</sup> murus circumdat arcem <sup>d</sup> efficit et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Cæsar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, <sup>e</sup> occupatoque oppido, ibi praesidium collocat. <sup>e</sup>

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontiōnem, rei frumentariæ commeatusque causâ, moratur, <sup>b</sup> ex percusstatiōne nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine <sup>b</sup> corporum Germānos, incredibili virtute <sup>b</sup> atque exercitatiōne in armis esse prædicabant, <sup>f</sup> s̄pēnumero sese, <sup>g</sup> cum eis congressos, <sup>h</sup> ne <sup>i</sup> vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum ferre potuisse, <sup>b</sup> tantus subito timor omnem exercitūm occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. <sup>c</sup> Hic <sup>i</sup> primū ortus est a <sup>j</sup> Tribūnis militūm, præfectis reliquisque, qui, ex urbe amiciiæ causâ Cæsarem secuti, non magnum in re militari usum habebant: <sup>k</sup> quorum <sup>k</sup> alius, <sup>l</sup> aliā <sup>m</sup> causâ illatā, quam <sup>s</sup> sibi <sup>n</sup> ad proficiscendum necessariam esse dicerent, <sup>o</sup> petebant, ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret: <sup>p</sup> nonnulli, pudore adducti, ut timoris suspcionem vitarent, <sup>q</sup> remanebant. Hi neque <sup>q</sup> vultum fingere, neque interdum lacrymas tenere poterant: abditū in tabernaculis, aut suum <sup>r</sup> fatum querebantur, <sup>f</sup> aut eum familiaribus suis <sup>r</sup> commune periculum miserabantur. <sup>f</sup> Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. <sup>f</sup> Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, <sup>s</sup> qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites <sup>s</sup> centurionesque, quiue equitatu præerant, pertur-

<sup>a</sup> § 106, R. VI. Obs. <sup>g</sup> § 145, R. LVIII. <sup>n</sup> § 111, R.

3. (*spatio.*) <sup>h</sup> 98, 2. <sup>o</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>b</sup> § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1. <sup>i</sup> 19, (*timor.*) <sup>p</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 1st. <sup>k</sup> § 107, R. X. <sup>q</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>d</sup> § 116, Obs. 1. <sup>l</sup> § 102, Obs. 5. <sup>r</sup> 30, 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 44, I, 3. <sup>m</sup> 25, 1, and <sup>s</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>f</sup> § 44, II, 1. <sup>§</sup> 98, Obs. 11.

babantur. <sup>a</sup> Qui <sup>a</sup> se ex his minūs timēdos existimāri <sup>b</sup> volēbant, non se hostem verēri, <sup>c</sup> sed angustias itinēris et magnitudinem silvārum, quæ intercederent <sup>d</sup> inter ipsos atque Arioivistum, aut rem frumentariam, <sup>e</sup> ut <sup>e</sup> satis commōdē supportāri posset, timēre <sup>c</sup> dicēbant. Nonnulli etiam Cæsari renunciābant, cùm castra movēri ac signa ferri jussisset, <sup>f</sup> non fore <sup>g</sup> dicto audientes milites, nec propter timōrem signa latūros.

40. Hæc cùm animadvertisset, <sup>g</sup> convocāto <sup>g</sup> consilio, omniumque ordīnum ad id consilium adhibītis <sup>g</sup> centurionībus, vehementer eos incusāvit; “ primū, quōd, aut quam in partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur, <sup>h</sup> sibi <sup>i</sup> quārendum aut cogitandum putārent. <sup>d</sup> Arioivistum, se <sup>k</sup> consule, cupidissimè Popūli Romāni amicitiam appetisse; <sup>l</sup> cur hunc tam temēre quisquam ab officio discessūrum judicāret? <sup>d</sup> <sup>5</sup> Sibi <sup>m</sup> quidem persuadēri, cognitis suis <sup>6</sup> postulātis atque aequitāte conditiōnum perspectā, eum neque suam, <sup>n</sup> neque Popūli Romāni gratiam repudiatūrum. Quōd si, furōre atque amētiā impulsus, bellum intulisset, <sup>o</sup> quid tandem vererentur? <sup>d</sup> aut cur de <sup>7</sup> suā virtūte, aut de ipsius diligentia, desperārent? <sup>d</sup> <sup>8</sup> Factum ejus hostis pericūlum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cùm, Cimbris et Teutōnis a Caio Mario pulsis, non minōrem laudem exercītus, quām ipse imperātor, meritus videbātur; <sup>p</sup> factum etiam nuper in Italīa <sup>9</sup> servīli tumultu, quos <sup>q</sup> tamen aliquid <sup>r</sup> usus ac disciplīna, quam a nobis accepissent, sublevārent. <sup>d</sup> Ex quo judicāri posset, <sup>d</sup> quantum habēret <sup>h</sup> in se boni constantia; propterea quōd, quos <sup>s</sup> aliquamdiu inermos sine causā timuissent, hos postea armātos

<sup>a</sup> 37, (ii.)

<sup>g</sup> 104, 1.

<sup>n</sup> § 29, 1.

<sup>b</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>c</sup> 96, 1.

<sup>i</sup> 113.

<sup>p</sup> § 141, Obs. 5. 1st.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>k</sup> 110, 2.

<sup>q</sup> § 99, Obs. 2.

<sup>e</sup> 121, 7, and

<sup>l</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>r</sup> § 116, Obs. 3.

§ 140, Obs. 6.

<sup>m</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>s</sup> 43.

<sup>f</sup> 80, 1.

ac victōres superāssent. Denique hos<sup>a</sup> esse eosdem, quibuscum sæpenumero Helvetii congressi, non solūm in <sup>1</sup>suis, sed etiam in illōrum finib⁹, plerumque superārint,<sup>b</sup> qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitu<sup>c</sup> non potuērint. Si <sup>2</sup>quos adversum prœlium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret,<sup>d</sup> hos, si quærerērent,<sup>d</sup> reperīre posse, diuturnitāte belli defatigātis Gallis,<sup>e</sup> Arioivistum,<sup>a</sup> cùm multos menses<sup>f</sup> castris se ac paludib⁹ tenuisset, <sup>3</sup>neque sui potestātem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugnā et dispersos subitō adortum, magis <sup>4</sup>ratiōne<sup>g</sup> et consilio, quām virtūte,<sup>g</sup> viciſſe. Cui<sup>h</sup> ratiōni<sup>i</sup> contra homines barbāros atque imperītos locus fuisseſſet, hāc, ne ipsum<sup>a</sup> quidem sperāre, nostros exercitus<sup>a</sup> capi posſe. <sup>5</sup>Qui<sup>k</sup> suum<sup>l</sup> timōrem in rei frumentariæ simulatiōnem angustiasque itinērum conferrent,<sup>b</sup> facere arroganter, cùm aut de officio imperatōris desperāre, aut præscribēre viderentur.<sup>m</sup> Hæc sibi<sup>n</sup> esse curā; <sup>n</sup>frumentum Sequānos,<sup>a</sup> Leucos, Lingōnas subministrāre; <sup>o</sup>jamque esse in agris frumenta matūra: de itinēre ipsos<sup>a</sup> brevi tempore judicatūros.<sup>p</sup> <sup>6</sup>Quod<sup>q</sup> non fore dicto audientes milites,<sup>a</sup> neque<sup>y</sup> signa latūri dicantur,<sup>b</sup> nihil<sup>r</sup> se eā re commovēri: <sup>7</sup>scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuērit,<sup>b</sup> aut, malē re<sup>e</sup> gestā, fortūnam defuisse; aut, aliquo facinōre<sup>e</sup> comperto, avaritiam esse conjunctam. Suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitātem Helvetiōrum bello, esse perspectam.<sup>s</sup> <sup>8</sup>Itāque se,<sup>a</sup> quod in longiōrem diem collatūrus esset,<sup>t</sup> repræsentatūrum,<sup>p</sup> et proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā castra motūrum, ut quām primūm intelligēre posset,<sup>u</sup> utrūm<sup>v</sup> apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor valēret.<sup>w</sup> Quòd si præterea nemo sequātur,<sup>x</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.<sup>b</sup> § 140, 6.<sup>c</sup> § 111, R.<sup>d</sup> § 140, 2.<sup>e</sup> 109, 2.<sup>f</sup> § 131, R. XLI.<sup>g</sup> § 129, R.<sup>h</sup> 38.<sup>i</sup> § 110, R. XV.<sup>k</sup> 37, (eos.)<sup>l</sup> 30, 2.<sup>m</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.<sup>n</sup> § 114, R.<sup>o</sup> 94, 3. & 96, Exc. II.<sup>p</sup> 100, 2.<sup>q</sup> 38, Note. 11.<sup>r</sup> § 116, Obs. 3.<sup>s</sup> 98, 6.<sup>t</sup> § 79, 8.<sup>u</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.<sup>v</sup> 124, 14.<sup>w</sup> § 140, 5.<sup>x</sup> § 140, 2, & 77 5.<sup>y</sup> § 39, 1.

tamen se cum solâ decimâ legiône itûrum, de quâ non dubitaret;<sup>a</sup> sibique eam <sup>1</sup> prætoriam cohortem <sup>b</sup> futûram.” Huic legiôni<sup>c</sup> Cæsar et indulsérat præcipuè, et propter virtutem <sup>2</sup> confidébat maxîmè.

41. Hâc oratiône habîtâ, mirum in modum conversæ<sup>d</sup> sunt omnium mentes, summâque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi<sup>e</sup> innâta<sup>d</sup> est, <sup>3</sup> princepsque<sup>f</sup> decima legio, per tribûnos<sup>g</sup> milîtum, ei gratias egit, quòd de se optîmum judicium fecisset; <sup>f</sup> seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmâvit. Deinde reliquæ legiônes, per tribûnos<sup>g</sup> milîtum et primôrum ordînum centuriônes, <sup>4</sup> egérunt, uti Cæsari<sup>h</sup> satisfacèrent: <sup>i</sup> se neque unquam dubitâsse,<sup>k</sup> neque timuisse, neque de summâ belli suum <sup>1</sup> judicium, sed imperatoris<sup>m</sup> esse, existimavisse.<sup>k</sup> Eorum<sup>5</sup> satisfactiône accep-tâ, et itinère<sup>6</sup> exquisîto per Divitiacum,<sup>g</sup> quòd ex aliis ei<sup>n</sup> maxîmam fidem habêbat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta circuïtu locis apertis exercitum duceret,<sup>i</sup> de quartâ vigiliâ, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septîmo die, cùm iter non intermittêret,<sup>o</sup> ab exploratoriis<sup>g</sup> certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris<sup>p</sup> millibus<sup>q</sup> passuum quatuor et viginti abesse.

42. Cognito Cæsaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: <sup>r</sup> quod<sup>r</sup> antea de colloquio postulâsset,<sup>s</sup> id per se fieri licere, quoniam proprius accessisset: <sup>u</sup> seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit conditiōnem Cæsar: jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cùm id, quod antea pétenti denegâsset,<sup>t</sup> ulti polliceretur;<sup>o</sup> magnamque in spem veniēbat, pro suis<sup>1</sup> tantis Populique Români in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis<sup>1</sup> postulatis,<sup>s</sup> fore,<sup>u</sup> uti pertinaciâ de-

<sup>a</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>h</sup> § 112, R. III.

<sup>p</sup> 19; (*copiis.*)

<sup>b</sup> § 114, Obs. 2.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>q</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>c</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>k</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>r</sup> 43.

<sup>d</sup> § 44, III, Note.

<sup>l</sup> 29, 1.

<sup>s</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>e</sup> 112, 5.

<sup>m</sup> § 108, R. XII.

<sup>t</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>f</sup> § 98, Obs. 10.

<sup>n</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>u</sup> § 145, Obs. 6, &

<sup>g</sup> § 126, Obs. 2.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

100, 14.

sist̄eret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. Int̄erim, cùm s̄æpe ultro citrōque legāti inter eos mitterentur,<sup>a</sup> Ariovistus postulāvit, <sup>1</sup>ne quem pedītem ad colloquium Cæsar adducēret:<sup>b</sup> verēri<sup>c</sup>, ne<sup>d</sup> per insidias ab eo circumveniētur: uterque cum equitātu venīret:<sup>b</sup> aliā ratiōne se non esse ventūrum. Cæsar, quòd neque colloquium<sup>e</sup> interpositā causā<sup>f</sup> tolli<sup>f</sup> volēbat, neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitatui<sup>g</sup> committēre audēbat, <sup>3</sup>commodissimum<sup>h</sup> esse statuit, <sup>4</sup>omnībus equis<sup>i</sup> Gallis equitib⁹<sup>k</sup> detractis, eò legionarios milites legiōnis decimæ, cui quām maximē confidēbat, imponēre,<sup>l</sup> ut præsidium quām amicissimum, <sup>5</sup>si quid opus facto esset, habēret.<sup>m</sup> Quod<sup>n</sup> cùm fiēret,<sup>a</sup> non irridicūlē quidam ex militib⁹<sup>o</sup> decimæ legiōnis dixit: “plus, quām pollicitus esset,<sup>p</sup> Cæsarem ei facere; pollicitum, se in cohortis prætoriæ loco decimam legiōnem habitūrum, <sup>6</sup>nunc ad equum rescribere.”

43. Planities erat magna, et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus æquo ferè spatio<sup>q</sup> ab castris utrisque abērat. Eò, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venērunt. Legiōnem Cæsar, quam equis<sup>r</sup> devexērat, passib⁹<sup>s</sup> ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo<sup>t</sup> constitērunt. Ariovistus, <sup>7</sup>ex equis ut colloquerentur<sup>b</sup> et, præter se, denos<sup>u</sup> ut ad colloquium adducērent,<sup>b</sup> postulāvit. <sup>8</sup>Ubi eò ventum est,<sup>t</sup> Cæsar, initio oratiōnis, sua Senatusque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, “quòd rex appellatus esset a Senātu, quòd munēra amplissima missa: quam<sup>v</sup> rem et paucis<sup>w</sup> contigisse,<sup>y</sup> et pro magnis hominum officiis consuēsse tribui” docēbat: “illum, cùm neque aditum,

<sup>a</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>b</sup> § 98, Obs. 6.

<sup>p</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>1</sup> 109.

<sup>q</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>c</sup> 94, 4.

<sup>k</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>r</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, Obs. 6, &

<sup>l</sup> § 144. R. LVII. Note.

<sup>s</sup> § 24, 11, & 26, I.

121, 6.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>t</sup> 67, Note. 5.

<sup>o</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>n</sup> 38.

<sup>u</sup> 19, & § 112, R. IV.

<sup>r</sup> 96, Exc. II. 11.

<sup>o</sup> § 107, Obs. 8.

<sup>v</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>g</sup> § 123, R.

neque causam postulandi justam habēret, beneficio ac liberalitāte suā ac Senātus ea præmia consecūtum.” Docēbat etiam, “quām vetères, quāmque justæ causæ<sup>1</sup> necessitudinis ipsis<sup>a</sup> cum Æduis intercederent,<sup>b</sup> quæ Senātūs consulta, quoties, quāmque honorifīca in eos facta essent:<sup>b</sup> ut omni tempore totius Galliæ principātum Ædui tenuissent,<sup>c</sup> priùs etiam quām nostram amicitiam appetissent:<sup>d</sup> Popūli Romāni hanc<sup>e</sup> esse consuetudinem, ut socios<sup>f</sup> atque amīcos non modò<sup>2</sup> sui nihil deperdere,<sup>f</sup> sed gratiā, dignitāte, honōre<sup>3</sup> auctiōres velit<sup>g</sup> esse: quod vero ad amicitiam Popūli Romāni attulissent, id iis<sup>h</sup> eripi, quis pati posset?<sup>i</sup>”<sup>g</sup> Postulāvit deinde eādem, quæ legātis in mandātis dedērat, “ne aut Æduis, aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret;<sup>c</sup> obsides redēret: si nullam partem Germanōrum domum<sup>i</sup> remittēre posset,<sup>k</sup> at ne<sup>4</sup> quos ampliū Rhenum transire paterētur.”<sup>c</sup>

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Cæsāris pauca respondit; de suis virtutib⁹ multa prædicāvit: “Transisse<sup>1</sup> Rhenum<sup>m</sup> sese, non suā sponte, sed<sup>5</sup> rogātum<sup>n</sup> et arcessītum<sup>n</sup> a Gallis; non sine magnā spe, magnisque præmiis, domum propinquosque reliquisse;<sup>l</sup> sedes habēre<sup>o</sup> in Galliā, ab ipsis concessas;<sup>n</sup> obsides ipsōrum voluntātē datos; stipendium capere<sup>o</sup> jure belli, quod victōres victis<sup>p</sup> imponēre consuērint; non sese<sup>e</sup> Gallis, sed Gallos<sup>e</sup> sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliæ civitātes ad se oppugnandum venisse,<sup>l</sup> ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno prælio fusas ac superātas esse; si itērum experīri velint,<sup>k</sup> itērum parātum sese decertāre; si pace<sup>q</sup> uti velint, iniquum esse, de stipendio recusāre, quod suā voluntātē ad id tempus pependērint.

<sup>a</sup> § 112, R. IV.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>m</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>h</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>n</sup> 101, 4.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>i</sup> § 130, 4.

<sup>o</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 4,

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>p</sup> § 123, R. & 19.

<sup>e</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>l</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>q</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>f</sup> 90.

Amicitiam Populi Romani sibi<sup>a</sup> ornamento<sup>a</sup> et præsidio, non detimento, esse oportere, idque se eâ spe petisse. Si per Populum Românū stipendium remittatur,<sup>b</sup> et deditiū subtrahantur,<sup>b</sup> non minùs libenter sese recusatūrum Populi Romani amicitiam, quām appetiērit.<sup>c</sup> <sup>1</sup> Quòd multitudinē Germanōrum in Galliā transdūcat,<sup>d</sup> id se sui muniendi,<sup>e</sup> non Galliæ impugnandæ<sup>e</sup> causâ facere; ejus rei testimonium<sup>f</sup> esse,<sup>g</sup> quòd, nisi rogātus, non venērit,<sup>c</sup> et quòd bellum non intulērit,<sup>c</sup> <sup>2</sup> sed defendērit.<sup>c</sup> Se priūs in Galliā venisse, quām Populum Românū.<sup>h</sup> Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum Populi Romani Galliæ provinciæ fines<sup>w</sup> egressum. <sup>3</sup> Quid sibi vellet?<sup>c</sup> Cur in suas possessiōnes venīret?<sup>c</sup> Provinciam suam<sup>i</sup> hanc esse Galliā, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi<sup>j</sup> concēdi noui oportēret, si in nostros fines impētum faceret,<sup>b</sup> sic item nos esse iniquos,<sup>k</sup> qui in suo jure se interpellarēmus.<sup>k</sup> <sup>6</sup> Quòd<sup>l</sup> fratres<sup>m</sup> a Senātu Æduos appellātos dicēret,<sup>c</sup> non se tam barbārum,<sup>m</sup> neque tam imperitūm<sup>m</sup> esse rerum,<sup>n</sup> ut non sciret,<sup>o</sup> neque bello Allobriogum proxīmo Æduos Romānis<sup>p</sup> auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Ædui secum et cum Sequānis habuisserint,<sup>q</sup> auxilio<sup>r</sup> Populi Romani usos esse. Debēre se suspicāri, simulātā Cæsārem amiciā, quòd exercitum in Galliā habeat,<sup>c</sup> sui opprimendi<sup>e</sup> causâ habēre. Qui<sup>s</sup> nisi decēdat<sup>b</sup> atque exercitum dedūcat<sup>b</sup> ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amīco, sed pro hoste habitūrum: quòd si eum interfecērit,<sup>b</sup> multis<sup>t</sup> sese nobilībus<sup>t</sup> principibusque Populi Romāni gratum esse factūrum; id se ab ipsis per eōrum nuntios compertum<sup>u</sup> habēre, quōrum omnium gratiam atque ami-

<sup>a</sup> § 114, R.<sup>b</sup> § 120, Obs. 2, 1st.<sup>p</sup> § 123, R.<sup>b</sup> § 140, 2.<sup>l</sup> § 113, R.<sup>q</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.<sup>c</sup> § 140, 6.<sup>k</sup> § 141, R. III.<sup>r</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.<sup>d</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.<sup>l</sup> 38, 11, Note.<sup>s</sup> 39.<sup>e</sup> 112, 5.<sup>m</sup> § 103, Obs. 2.<sup>t</sup> § 111, R.<sup>f</sup> § 103, R. V.<sup>n</sup> § 107, R. IX.<sup>u</sup> § 146, Obs. 1<sup>g</sup> 51.<sup>o</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.<sup>w</sup> Sup. *trans.*

citiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset,<sup>a</sup> ac lib<sup>e</sup>ram possessiōnem Galliæ sibi<sup>b</sup> tradidisset, magno se illum præmio remuneratūrum, et, quæcumque<sup>c</sup> bella geri vellet,<sup>d</sup> sine ullo ejus labōre et pericūlo confectūrum."

45. Multa ab Cæsare<sup>1</sup> in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset,<sup>e</sup> et "neque suam,<sup>f</sup> neque Popūli Romāni consuetudinem<sup>g</sup> pati, uti optīmē meritos socios deserēret:<sup>h</sup> neque se judicāre, Galliam potiūs esse<sup>i</sup> Arioquisti,<sup>j</sup> quam Popūli Romāni.<sup>k</sup> Bello superātos esse Arvernos et Rutēnos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus<sup>k</sup> Popūlus Romānus ignovisset,<sup>l</sup> neque in provinciam redegisset;<sup>m</sup> neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum<sup>n</sup> quodque tempus<sup>o</sup> spectāri oportēret,<sup>p</sup> Popūli Romāni justissimum<sup>m</sup> esse in Galliā imperium: si judicium<sup>q</sup> Senātūs observāri oportēret,<sup>r</sup> lib<sup>e</sup>ram<sup>m</sup> debēre esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legib<sup>s</sup> uti<sup>t</sup> voluissset."<sup>u</sup>

46. Dum hæc in colloquio geruntur, Cæsari<sup>o</sup> nunciātum est, equites<sup>g</sup> Arioquisti<sup>s</sup> propriūs tumūlum accedēre,<sup>p</sup> et ad nos-tros adequitāre,<sup>p</sup> lapides telāque in nostros conjicēre. Cæsar loquendi finem facit<sup>u</sup> seque ad suos recipit,<sup>q</sup> suisque<sup>k</sup> impe-rāvit, ne quod omnīno telum in hostes rejicērent.<sup>h</sup> Nam, etsi sine ullo pericūlo legiōnis delectæ cum equitātu prœ-lium<sup>g</sup> fore vidēbat, tamen committendum<sup>r</sup> non putābat, ut, pulsis hostiis, dici posset,<sup>s</sup> eos<sup>g</sup> ab se<sup>t</sup> per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteāquam in<sup>7</sup> vulgus milītum elātum est,<sup>8</sup> quā arrogantiā in colloquio Arioquistus usus omni Galliā Romānis interdixisset,<sup>e</sup> impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent<sup>e</sup> eaque res colloquium ut diremisset:<sup>e</sup> multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitu<sup>9</sup> injectum est.

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>g</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>n</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>b</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>o</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>c</sup> § 99, Obs. 7.

<sup>i</sup> § 108, R. XII.

<sup>p</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>k</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>q</sup> § 44, I. 3.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>l</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>r</sup> 113, and <sup>r</sup>.

<sup>f</sup> 29, 1.

<sup>m</sup> § 103, Obs. 2.

<sup>s</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

47. Biduo post Arioistus ad Cæsarem legatos mittit,<sup>a</sup> velle<sup>b</sup> se de his rebus, quæ inter eos agi cœptæ,<sup>c</sup> neque perfectæ essent,<sup>c</sup> agere cum eo: uti aut itērum colloquio diem constituēret;<sup>d</sup> aut, si id minūs vellet,<sup>e</sup> ex suis aliquem ad se mittēret.<sup>d</sup> Colloquendi Cæsari<sup>f</sup> causa visa non est; et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diēi<sup>g</sup> Germāni retinēri non potērānt,<sup>h</sup> quin<sup>i</sup> in nostros<sup>j</sup> tela conjicērent. Legātum ex suis<sup>i</sup> sese magno cum periculo ad eum missūrum, et hominibus feris objectūrum, existimābat. Commodissimum visum est, Caium Valerium Procillum, Caii Valerii Cabūri filium,<sup>i</sup> summā virtute<sup>k</sup> et humanitate adolescentem<sup>l</sup> (cujus pater a Caio Valerio Flacco civitāte<sup>m</sup> donātus erat), et propter fidem et propter linguæ Gallicæ scientiam, quā multā jam Arioistus longinquā consuetudine<sup>n</sup> utebātur, et quod in eo<sup>o</sup> pec-  
candi Germānis<sup>p</sup> causa non esset,<sup>p</sup> ad eum mittēre, et Mar-  
cum Mettium, qui hospitio Arioisti usus erat. His<sup>q</sup> man-  
dāvit, ut, quæ dicēret<sup>r</sup> Arioistus, cognoscērent<sup>d</sup> et ad se referrent.<sup>d</sup> Quos<sup>s</sup> cùm apud se in castris Arioistus con-  
spexisset,<sup>t</sup> exercitu suo præsente, conclamāvit: “Quid ad se venīrent?<sup>c</sup> An<sup>u</sup> speculandi causā?” Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catēnas conjēcit.

48. Eōdem die castra promōvit, et millibus<sup>v</sup> passuum sex a Cæsaris castris sub monte consēdit. Postridie ejus diēi<sup>g</sup> præter castra Cæsaris suas copias transduxit, et millibus<sup>v</sup> passuum duōbus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio,<sup>w</sup> uti frumento combeatūque, qui ex Sequānis et Æduis supportarēt,<sup>x</sup> Cæsarem intercluderet.<sup>e</sup> Ex eo die dies continuos

<sup>a</sup> 94, 1, 2d, & 4.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 3, & 78, 7,

<sup>p</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>b</sup> 96, 2.

Note.

<sup>q</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>i</sup> 19.

<sup>r</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>k</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>s</sup> 38.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>t</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>f</sup> 70.

<sup>m</sup> § 126, R. V.

<sup>u</sup> 56, 3d.

<sup>g</sup> § 135, R. XLVI.

<sup>n</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>v</sup> § 142, R. XLII.

<sup>o</sup> § 112, R. II.

quinque Cæsar pro castris suas copias produxit, et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet<sup>a</sup> Ariovistus prælio contendere ei<sup>b</sup> potestas non deesset.<sup>c</sup> Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus<sup>d</sup> exercitum castris continuit; equestri prælio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc<sup>e</sup> erat pugnæ, quo se Germāni exercuerant. Equitum millia erant sex: totidem numero<sup>f</sup> pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi; <sup>g</sup> quos ex omni copiâ singuli singulos, suæ salutis causâ, delegerant. Cum his in præliis versabantur, ad hos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat duarius,<sup>h</sup> concurrebant: si qui,<sup>i</sup> graviore vulnere accepto, equo decidérat, circuinsistebant: <sup>j</sup> si quod erat longius prodeundum,<sup>k</sup> aut celerius recipiendum,<sup>k</sup> tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut, jubis<sup>l</sup> equorum sublevati, <sup>m</sup> cursum adæquarent.<sup>m</sup>

49. Ubi eum<sup>n</sup> castris se tenere Cæsar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur,<sup>c</sup> ultra eum locum,<sup>o</sup> quo in loco<sup>p</sup> Germāni consedērant, circiter passus<sup>p</sup> sexcentos ab eis, castris<sup>q</sup> idoneum locum delégit, aciēque triplici instructâ, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse,<sup>r</sup> tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus<sup>p</sup> sexcentos, ut dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum nûmero sexdecim millia expedita cum omni equitatâ Ariovistus misit, <sup>s</sup> quæ<sup>t</sup> copiae nostros perterrerent<sup>t</sup> et munitiōne prohiberent. Nihilo secius Cæsar, ut antè constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare,<sup>r</sup> tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiōnes reliquit et partem auxiliorum: quatuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>h</sup> 22.

<sup>o</sup> 37, 7, Note. 1.

<sup>b</sup> § 112, R. II.

<sup>i</sup> § 35.

<sup>p</sup> § 136, R. XLVIII.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>k</sup> 113, 2.

<sup>q</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>l</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>r</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>e</sup> § 103, R. V.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>s</sup> 40, 4.

<sup>f</sup> § 128, R. XXXIV. <sup>n</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>t</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>g</sup> 26.

50. Proximo die,<sup>a</sup> <sup>1</sup> instituto<sup>b</sup> suo, Cæsar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit; paulumque <sup>2</sup>a majoribus progressus, aciem instruxit, hostibusque<sup>c</sup> pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire<sup>d</sup> intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Arioistus partem suarum copiarum, quæ castra minora oppugnaret,<sup>e</sup> misit: acriter utrinque usque ad vespereum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Arioistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus,<sup>f</sup> in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quæreret<sup>g</sup> Cæsar, quam ob rem Arioistus prælio non decertaret,<sup>h</sup> hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānos ea consuetudo esset,<sup>i</sup> ut matres familiæ eorum <sup>3</sup> sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent,<sup>k</sup> utrum prælium committi <sup>4</sup> ex usu esset,<sup>h</sup> nec ne: eas ita dicere, <sup>5</sup>“ Non esse<sup>l</sup> fas, Germānos superare, si ante novam lunam prælio contendissent.”<sup>m</sup>

51. Postridie ejus diēi Cæsar præsidio<sup>n</sup> utrisque castris, quod<sup>o</sup> satis esse visum est, reliquit; <sup>6</sup>omnes alarios in conspectu hostium <sup>7</sup> pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valēbat, ut<sup>8</sup> ad speciem alariis uteretur.<sup>p</sup> Ipse, triplici instructâ acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessariò Germāni suas copias castris eduxerunt, <sup>9</sup>generatimque constituērunt paribusque intervallis Harudes, Marcomānos, Triboccos, Vangiōnes, Nemētes, Sedusios, Suēvos, omnemque aciem suam <sup>q</sup> <sup>10</sup> rhedis<sup>b</sup> et carris circumdedērunt, ne qua spes in fugâ relinqueretur.<sup>p</sup> <sup>11</sup>Eò mulieres impossuerunt, quæ in prælium proficiscentes milites passis criniibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servirūtem Romānis tradērent.<sup>r</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>b</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 123, R. & 63, 5.

<sup>d</sup> § 96, 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>f</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>l</sup> 51.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>n</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>o</sup> 37, 2 (*id.*)

<sup>p</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>q</sup> § 30, 2.

<sup>r</sup> § 140, 1, 3d, &

121, 2.

52. Cæsar <sup>a</sup> singūlis<sup>a</sup> legionibus<sup>b</sup> singūlos legātos et quās-tōrem præfēcit, ut̄ eos testes suāe quisque virtutis habēret.<sup>c</sup> Ipse a dextro cornu, quòd eam partem <sup>d</sup> minimè firmam hos-tium esse anīmum advertērat, prœlium commīsit. Ita nos-tri acr̄iter in hostes, signo dato, impētum fecērunt, itāque hostes repente celeriterque procurrērunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi<sup>d</sup> non darētur.<sup>e</sup> Rejectis pilis,<sup>e</sup> comīnus gladiis pugnātum est: at Germāni, celeriter ex consuetu-dine suā <sup>f</sup> phalange<sup>f</sup> factā, impētus gladiōrum excepērunt. Reperti sunt complūres<sup>f</sup> nostri milites, qui in phalangas in silērent,<sup>g</sup> et scuta manībus revellērent,<sup>g</sup> et desūper vulnerā-rent.<sup>g</sup> Cùm hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitn-dīne<sup>h</sup> suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cùm animad-vertisset<sup>c</sup> Publius Crassus adolescens, qui equitātu<sup>k</sup> præ-terat, quòd <sup>l</sup> expeditior erat, quām hi qui inter aciem versa-bantur, tertiam aciem laborantib⁹ nostris<sup>l</sup> subsidio<sup>l</sup> misit.

53. Ita prœlium restitūtum est, atque omnes hostes terga vertērunt,<sup>b</sup> neque priūs fugēre destitērunt, quām ad flumen Rhēnūn millia<sup>m</sup> passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenērint.<sup>n</sup> Ibi perpauci aut, virībus<sup>n</sup> confisi, transnatāre contendērunt, aut, lintrībus inventis, sibi<sup>b</sup> salūtem reperē-runt. <sup>o</sup> In his fuit Arioistus, qui, navicūlam diligātam ad ripam nactus,<sup>p</sup> eā profūgit: reliquos omnes consecūti equi-tes nostri interfecērunt. Duæ fuērunt Arioisti uxōres, una<sup>q</sup> Sueva natiōne, quam ab domo secum eduxērat; altēra Nor-īca, regis Vociōnis soror,<sup>q</sup> quam in Galliā <sup>r</sup> duxērat, a fratre missam: utræque in eā fugā periērunt. <sup>s</sup> Duæ filiæ<sup>r</sup> harum, altēra<sup>r</sup> occīsa, altēra<sup>r</sup> capta est. Caius Valerius Procillus,

<sup>a</sup> 26.<sup>f</sup> 17.<sup>m</sup> § 136, R. XLVIII<sup>b</sup> § 123, R.<sup>g</sup> § 141, Obs. 1.<sup>n</sup> § 140, 4.<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.<sup>h</sup> § 129, R.<sup>o</sup> § 112, R. V.<sup>d</sup> 112, 1.<sup>i</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.<sup>p</sup> 105, 1.<sup>e</sup> 109, &<sup>k</sup> § 112, R. I.<sup>q</sup> § 97, R.<sup>§</sup> 146, R. LX.<sup>l</sup> § 114, R.<sup>r</sup> § 97, Obs. 5.

cum a custodibus in fugâ trinis catenis<sup>a</sup> vinctus traheretur,<sup>b</sup>  
<sup>1</sup> in ipsum Cæsarem, hostes equitatu<sup>a</sup> persequentem, incidit.  
 Quæ<sup>c</sup> quidem res Cæsari<sup>d</sup> non minorem, quam ipsa victoria,<sup>e</sup> voluptatem attulit; quod hominem honestissimum provinciæ Galliæ, suum familiarem<sup>f</sup> et hospitem, eruptum e manibus hostium, sibi<sup>g</sup> restitutum vidébat, neque ejus calamitate<sup>a</sup> de tantâ voluptate et gratulatiōne quicquam fortuna deminuerat. Is, se præsente,<sup>h</sup> de se ter sortibus<sup>a</sup> consultum<sup>i</sup> dicēbat, utrum<sup>k</sup> igni statim necaretur,<sup>l</sup> an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium<sup>2</sup> beneficio<sup>a</sup> se esse<sup>m</sup> incolūmem. Item Marcus Mettius repertus, et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hoc prælio trans Rhenum nunciato, Suevi, qui ad ripas Rheni venérant, domum<sup>n</sup> reverti cœpérunt: quos Ubii, qui<sup>o</sup> proximi<sup>o</sup> Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti, magnum ex his numērum occidērunt. Cæsar, unā æstāte<sup>p</sup> duobus maxinis bellis confectis, maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequānos exercitum deduxit: hibernis<sup>d</sup> Labiēnum præposuit: ipse<sup>4</sup> in citeriore<sup>m</sup> Galliam<sup>s</sup> ad conventus agendos<sup>q</sup> profectus est.

<sup>a</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>s</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>m</sup> 96. 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>h</sup> 110, 5.

<sup>n</sup> § 130, 4.

<sup>c</sup> 38, 2.

<sup>i</sup> § 47, 6, & 98, 2.

<sup>o</sup> § 136, Obs. 5. (ad.)

<sup>d</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>k</sup> § 124, 14.

<sup>p</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>e</sup> § 120, Obs. 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>q</sup> 112, 7.

<sup>f</sup> § 97, R.

## BOOK II.

### GENERAL ARGUMENT.

- I. Confederacy of the Belgæ. Cæsar's war with them—Chap. 1–14.  
II. War with the Nervii—Chap. 15–28. III. War with the Aduatuci—Chap. 29–33. IV. Expedition of Publius Crassus into Armorica—Chap. 34. V. Transactions subsequent to the reduction of the Belgæ—Chap. 35.

1. <sup>1</sup>CUM esset Cæsar in citeriore Galliâ in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, <sup>2</sup>crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, literisque item Labiensi certior fiēbat, omnes Belgas, quam <sup>a</sup> tertiam esse Galliæ partem <sup>3</sup>dixerāmus, contra Popūlum Romānum conjurare,<sup>b</sup> obsidesque inter se dare:<sup>b</sup> <sup>4</sup>conjurandi has esse causas: primū, quod vererentur, <sup>d</sup>ne,<sup>c</sup> omni pacatâ Galliâ, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur: <sup>e</sup>deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis solicitarentur, <sup>d</sup> <sup>5</sup>partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Galliâ versari noluérant, ita Populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Galliâ molestè ferēbant; <sup>6</sup>partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis <sup>7</sup>imperiis<sup>f</sup> studēbant: <sup>8</sup>ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Galliâ a potentioribus<sup>g</sup> atque his <sup>9</sup>qui ad <sup>h</sup> conducedos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minùs facile <sup>10</sup>eam rem in imperio nostro conséqui poterant.

2. Iis nuntiis literisque commotus, Cæsar duas legiōnes in citeriore Galliâ novas conscripsit, et, <sup>11</sup>inītā æstātē, in interiorem Galliam qui deducēret,<sup>i</sup> Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cùm primū pabuli copia esse incipēret, ad exercitum venit: <sup>12</sup>dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis<sup>k</sup> erant, uti ea, quæ apud eos gerantur,<sup>d</sup> <sup>13</sup>cognoscant,<sup>l</sup> seque de his rebus certiorem faciant.<sup>l</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 99, Obs. 4.

<sup>e</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>b</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>f</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>k</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 6.

<sup>g</sup> 19, (*hominibus.*)

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>d</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>h</sup> 112, 7.

Hi constanter omnes nunciauerunt, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit,<sup>a</sup> quin ad eos proficisceretur.<sup>a</sup> Re frumentariâ prouisâ, castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgârum pervenit.

3. Eò cum de improviso <sup>b</sup> celeriusque omnium opinione <sup>b</sup> venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis <sup>c</sup> sunt, ad eum legatos, Iccium et Antebrogium, primos civitatis, <sup>d</sup> miserunt, qui dicerent, <sup>e</sup> se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem Populi Romani permittere: <sup>f</sup> neque <sup>g</sup> se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse, neque contra Populum Românum omnino conjurasse: paratosque esse et obsides dare, et imperata facere, et oppidis recipere, et frumento ceterisque rebus juvare: reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse: Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his conjunxisse; tantumque esse eorum omnium <sup>4</sup> surorem, ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem jure <sup>i</sup> et eisdem legibus utantur, <sup>k</sup> unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, <sup>k</sup> deterrere potuerint, <sup>l</sup> quin cum his consentirent.<sup>m</sup>

4. Cum ab <sup>5</sup> his quereret, quae civitates, <sup>6</sup> quantaque in armis essent, <sup>n</sup> et quid in bello possent, sic reperiēbat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germânis: Rhenumque antiquitus transductos, propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolerent, expulisse; solosque esse, qui, patrum nostrorum memoriâ, omni Galliâ vexata, Teutones Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingradi prohibuerint.<sup>o</sup> Quâ ex re fieri, uti eârum rerum memoriâ magnam sibi auctoritatem, magnosque spiritus in re militari sumarent.<sup>p</sup> De numero eorum <sup>7</sup> omnia se habere explorata, <sup>q</sup> Remi dicabant;

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>g</sup> 124, 5.

78, 7, Note.

<sup>b</sup> § 120, R.

<sup>h</sup> 19, (*negotia.*)

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>c</sup> § 107, Obs. 8.

<sup>i</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>o</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>d</sup> § 107, R. X. Exp.

<sup>k</sup> § 141, R. IV.

<sup>p</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>e</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>q</sup> § 146, Obs. 1

<sup>f</sup> § 145, Obs. 3.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 3, &

propterea quod propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communione Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit,<sup>a</sup> cognoverint.<sup>b</sup> Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute,<sup>c</sup> et auctoritate,<sup>c</sup> et hominum numero,<sup>c</sup> valere: hos posse confidere armata millia centum: pollicitos ex eo numero electa millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi<sup>d</sup> postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos, latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostram etiam memoriā<sup>1</sup> Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum<sup>e</sup> magnae partis harum regionum, tum<sup>e</sup> etiam Brittaniæ, imperium obtinuerit:<sup>b</sup> nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc, propter justitiam prudentiamque,<sup>2</sup> totius belli summam omnium voluntate deferriri: oppida habere numero<sup>c</sup> duodecim, polliceri millia armata quinquaginta: totidem<sup>f</sup> Nervios, qui maximè feri inter ipsos habentur<sup>b</sup><sup>3</sup> longissimeque absint:<sup>b</sup> quindecim millia Atrebates: Ambianos decem millia: Morinos viginti quinque millia: Menapios novem millia: Calatos decem millia: Vellacasses et Veromanduos totidem: Aduatucos viginti novem millia, Condrusos, Eburones, Cæræsos, Pæmânos, qui<sup>4</sup> uno nomine Germâni appellantur,<sup>g</sup> arbitrari ad quadraginta millia.

5. Cæsar, Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosecutus, omnem senatum<sup>h</sup> ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsides<sup>i</sup> ad se adduci jussit. Quæ<sup>k</sup> omnia ab his<sup>l</sup> diligenter<sup>6</sup> ad diem facta sunt. Ipse, Divitiacum Æduum<sup>7</sup> magno opere cohortatus, docet, quanto opere rei publicæ communisque salutis intersit,<sup>a</sup> manus hostium distineri,<sup>m</sup> ne<sup>8</sup> cum tantâ multitudine uno tempore conligendum sit.<sup>n</sup> Id fieri posse, si suas copias Ædui in fines Bellovacorum intro-

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>f</sup> 19, (*milites.*)

<sup>k</sup> 38.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>g</sup> § 141, Obs. 5, 2d.

<sup>l</sup> § 126, Obs. 2.

<sup>c</sup> § 128, R. XXXIV.

<sup>h</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>m</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>d</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>e</sup> 124, 8.

duxerint,<sup>a</sup> et eorum agros populari cœperint.<sup>a</sup> His mandatis, eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias, in unum locum coactas, ad se venire<sup>b</sup> vidit, neque jam longè abesse ab his, quos misérat, exploratoribus,<sup>c</sup> et ab Remis cognovit, flumen<sup>d</sup> Axonam, quod est in extrémis Remorum finibus, exercitum<sup>d</sup> transducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. <sup>1</sup>Quæ<sup>e</sup> res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniēbat, et post eum quæ<sup>f</sup> essent tuta ab hostiis reddēbat, et, commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum portari posset,<sup>g</sup> efficiēbat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi præsidium ponit, et in alterâ parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex<sup>2</sup> cohortibus reliquit: castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo,<sup>h</sup> fossaque<sup>i</sup> duodeviginti pedum,<sup>j</sup> munire jubet.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum, nomine<sup>k</sup> Bibrax, aberat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu<sup>h</sup> Belgæ oppugnare cœperunt. *Ægræ* eo die<sup>l</sup> sustentatum est.<sup>m</sup> <sup>4</sup>Gallorum eadem atque<sup>n</sup> Belgarum oppugnatio est hæc. Ubi, circumjectâ multitudine hominum totis mœnibus<sup>o</sup> undique lapides in murum jaci cœpti sunt, murusque defensoribus<sup>p</sup> nudatus est, testudine factâ portas<sup>q</sup> succedunt murumque subruunt. <sup>5</sup>Quod tum facile siēbat. Nam, cùm tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conhicarent,<sup>r</sup> in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli.<sup>r</sup> Cùm finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius, Remus, sunimā nobilitate<sup>i</sup> et gratiâ inter suos, qui tum oppido<sup>7</sup> præerat, unus ex his qui legati de pace ad Cæsarem venérant, nuncios ad eum mittit,<sup>s</sup> nisi subsidium sibi<sup>t</sup> submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

7. Eò<sup>8</sup> de mediâ nocte Cæsar, iisdem ducibus usus qui nuncii ab Iccio venérant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios, et

<sup>a</sup> 79.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>n</sup> § 149, Obs. 6.

<sup>b</sup> 89, 3.

<sup>h</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>o</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>c</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

<sup>i</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>p</sup> § 126, R. V.

<sup>d</sup> 119, 1.

<sup>k</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>q</sup> § 112, Obs. 4.

<sup>e</sup> 38, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>r</sup> § 112, R. II.

<sup>f</sup> § 99, Obs. 1 4th, (*locæ*)<sup>m</sup> 66.

<sup>s</sup> 94, 4.

funditores Baleares, subsidio<sup>a</sup> oppidaniis mittit: quorum adventu et Remis,<sup>b</sup> cum spe defensiōnis, studium propugnandi accessit, et hostib<sup>c</sup> eādem de causā spes potiundi<sup>d</sup> oppidi discessit. Itaque, paulisper apud oppidum morati,<sup>e</sup> agrōsque Remōrum depopulati,<sup>e</sup> omnibus viciis ædificiisque,<sup>f</sup> quos<sup>f</sup> adīre poterant, incēnsis, ad castra Cæsaris omnibus copiis contendērunt,<sup>g</sup> et ab<sup>g</sup> millibus<sup>h</sup> passuum minūs duōbus castra posuērunt; quæ castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabātur, amplius millibus<sup>h</sup> passuum octo in latitudinem patēbant.

8. Cæsar primò, et propter multitudinēm hostium, et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtutis,<sup>i</sup> prælio supersedēre statuit; quotidie tamen equestrībus præliis, quid hostis virtute posset, et quid nostri audērent,<sup>j</sup> solicitationibus perclitabātur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiōres intellexit, loco<sup>i</sup> pro castris, ad aciem instruendam natūrā opportūno atque idoneo (quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planicie editus, tantum<sup>k</sup> adversus in latitudinēm patēbat, quantum loci<sup>l</sup> acies instructa occupare poterat, atque<sup>m</sup> ex utrāque parte latēris dejectus habebat,<sup>n</sup> et, frontem leniter fastigatus, paulatim ad planitem redībat), ab utrōque latēre ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum<sup>m</sup> quadringtonitorum; et<sup>o</sup> ad extrēmas fossas castella constituit, ibique<sup>p</sup> tormenta collocavit, ne, cūm aciem instruxisset, hostes,<sup>q</sup> quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes<sup>r</sup> suos circumvenire possent.<sup>s</sup> Hoc facto, duabus legionibus,<sup>t</sup> quas proximē conscripts̄at, in castris relictis, ut,<sup>u</sup> si quā opus esset, subsidio<sup>a</sup> duci possent,<sup>v</sup> reliquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

<sup>a</sup> § 114, R. & Obs. 1.<sup>§</sup> 136, R. LII.<sup>w</sup> § 128, Exc.<sup>b</sup> § 112, R. IV.<sup>g</sup> § 132, Obs. 5.<sup>n</sup> § 106, R. VII.<sup>c</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)<sup>h</sup> § 120, R. & 6, 3.<sup>o</sup> 17, 2.<sup>d</sup> 112, 5.<sup>i</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in)<sup>p</sup> 101, 1.<sup>e</sup> 105, 1.<sup>k</sup> 44, 5.<sup>q</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.<sup>f</sup> § 99, Obs. 6, &<sup>l</sup> § 106, R. VIII.<sup>r</sup> 109, 2.

9. <sup>1</sup> Palus erat non magna inter nostrum <sup>a</sup> atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes <sup>2</sup> expectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos <sup>c</sup> aggredierentur, <sup>b</sup> parati in armis erant. Intērim prælio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur.<sup>d</sup> Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, <sup>e</sup> secundiōre equitum prælio nostris, <sup>f</sup> Cæsar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axōnam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra casta <sup>4</sup> demonstratum est. Ibi vadis <sup>f</sup> repertis, partem suārum copiārum transducere conāti sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, <sup>g</sup> castellum, cui <sup>h</sup> præerat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscindērent; <sup>i</sup> si minūs potuissent, <sup>g</sup> agros Remōrum populararentur, qui magno nobis <sup>k</sup> usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatūque nostros prohiberent.

10. Cæsar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum, et levis armatūræ <sup>l</sup> Numidas, funditores <sup>m</sup> sagittariosque, pontem transducit, atque ad eos contendit. Acrier in eo loco pugnatum est.<sup>d</sup> Hostes <sup>6</sup> impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occidērunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos, audacissimè transire conantes, multitudine telorum repulērunt; primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecērunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando <sup>n</sup> oppido, et de flumine transeundo, <sup>n</sup> spem se fefellisse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progrēdi pugnandi causā vidērunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere cœpit, concilio convocato <sup>f</sup> constituērunt, optimum esse, domum <sup>o</sup> suam quemque reverti, ut, <sup>7</sup> quorum in fines primū Romani exercitum introduxissent, <sup>p</sup> ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, <sup>q</sup> et potius in suis, quam in alienis finibus, decertarent, <sup>q</sup> et domesticis copiis <sup>r</sup> rei frumentariæ uterentur.<sup>q</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 29, 1.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>n</sup> 112, 8.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>h</sup> § 112, R. I.

<sup>o</sup> § 130, 4.

<sup>c</sup> 19, (eos.)

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>p</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>d</sup> 65.

<sup>k</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>q</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>e</sup> § 111, & 19.

<sup>l</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>r</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>f</sup> 109.

<sup>m</sup> 119, 1.

Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis,<sup>1</sup> hæc quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Æduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare<sup>a</sup> cognoverant. <sup>2</sup> His<sup>b</sup>, persuadéri, ut diutius morarentur,<sup>c</sup> neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

11. Eâ re constitutâ, secundâ vigiliâ<sup>d</sup> magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris<sup>e</sup> egressi, <sup>3</sup> nullo certo ordine neque imperio, <sup>4</sup> cùm sibi<sup>f</sup> quisque primum itinëris locum peteret, et domum<sup>g</sup> pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis fugæ prosectori videretur.<sup>c</sup> Hâc re<sup>h</sup> statim, Cæsar, per speculatores cognitâ, <sup>i</sup> insidias veritus, quod, quâ de causâ discederent, nondum perspexerat; exercitum equitatumque castris<sup>e</sup> continuit. Primâ luce,<sup>d</sup> confirmatâ re<sup>h</sup> ab exploratoriis, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur,<sup>k</sup> præmisit. His<sup>f</sup> Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeum Cottam legatos præfecit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsæqui jussit. Hi, novissimos adorti, et multa millia<sup>l</sup> passuum prosecuti, magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, <sup>6</sup> cùm ab extrêmo agmine, ad quos<sup>m</sup> ventum erat,<sup>n</sup> consisterent,<sup>o</sup> fortiterque impetum nostrorum milium sustinerent; <sup>o</sup> prioresque (quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ullâ necessitate neque imperio continerentur), exaudito clamore,<sup>h</sup> perturbatis ordinibus,<sup>h</sup> omnes in fugâ sibi præsidium ponerent.<sup>o</sup> Ita sine ulla periculo, <sup>7</sup> tantam<sup>q</sup> eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diëi spatium: sub occasumque solis destitérunt, seque in castrâ, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

12. Postridie ejus diëi Cæsar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fugâ reciperent,<sup>r</sup> in fines Suessiōnum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit, et, magno itinere<sup>h</sup> confecto, ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppug-

<sup>a</sup> § 96, 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 126, 4.

<sup>c</sup> § 67, 5, Note.

<sup>d</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>h</sup> 109.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>p</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>f</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>k</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>q</sup> 44, 3.

<sup>g</sup> § 136, Obs. 5.

<sup>l</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>r</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>t</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>m</sup> § 99, Exc. 1.

nāre conātus, quodd<sup>a</sup> vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiēbat propter latitudinem fossæ murique altitudinem, paucis defendantibus, expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis,<sup>2</sup> vineas agere, quæque ad oppugnandum usui<sup>a</sup> erant, comparare cœpit. Intērim omnis ex fugâ Suessiōnum multitūdo in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineis<sup>b</sup> ad oppidum actis,<sup>3</sup> aggere jacto,<sup>4</sup> turribusque constitutis, magnitudine<sup>c</sup> opērum, quæ neque vidērant antè Galli neque audiērant, et celeritāte Romanōrum permoti, legatos ad Cæsarem de deditiōne mittunt, et,<sup>5</sup> potentibus Remis<sup>b</sup> ut conservarentur,<sup>d</sup> impētrant.

13. Cæsar, obsidēbus<sup>b</sup> acceptis, primis<sup>e</sup> civitatis atque ipsius<sup>f</sup> Galbæ regis duōbus filiis, armisque<sup>b</sup> omnibus ex oppido trāditis, in deditiōne Suessiōnes accēpit, exercitumque in Bellovacos duxit. Qui<sup>g</sup> cùm se suāque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent,<sup>h</sup> atque ab eo oppido Cæsār cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes<sup>i</sup> majores natu, ex oppido egressi, manus ad Cæsarem tendere, et voce significare cœpērunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestātem venīre,<sup>j</sup> neque contra Popūlum Romānum armis contendere. Item, cùm ad oppidum accessisset,<sup>h</sup> castaque ibi ponēret, puéri mulieresque ex muro<sup>k</sup> passis manibus,<sup>b</sup> suo more,<sup>c</sup> pacem ab Romānis<sup>k</sup> petiērunt.

14. Pro his Divitiācus (nam post discessum Belgārum, dimissis Æduōrum copiis,<sup>b</sup> ad eum revertērat)<sup>l</sup> facit verba : Bellovacos<sup>l</sup> omni tempore in<sup>m</sup> fide atque amicitiā civitatis Æduæ fuisse :<sup>m</sup> impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicērent,<sup>n</sup> Æduos, a Cæsāre in servitūtem redactos, omnes indignitātes contumeliasque perferre,<sup>i</sup> et ab Æduis defecisse<sup>m</sup> et Popūlo Romāno bellum intulisse.<sup>m</sup> Qui<sup>o</sup> hujus consilii

<sup>a</sup> § 114, Obs. 4. (ei.) <sup>f</sup> 32.

<sup>k</sup> § 124, Obs. 2.

<sup>b</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>g</sup> 39, 6.

<sup>l</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>c</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, Obs. 4. &

<sup>m</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 31.

<sup>74</sup>, 8.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>e</sup> § 97, R. & 19.

<sup>i</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>o</sup> 37, 1st. (eos.)

principes fuissent, quod intelligerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent,<sup>a</sup> in Britanniam profugisse.<sup>b</sup> Petere<sup>c</sup> non solum Bellovacos,<sup>d</sup> sed etiam pro his Aeduos,<sup>e</sup> ut suam clementiam ac mansuetudinem in eos utatur.<sup>f</sup> Quod<sup>g</sup> si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificatrum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidereint,<sup>f</sup> sustentare consuerint."<sup>g</sup>

15. Cæsar, honoris<sup>b</sup> Divitiaci<sup>b</sup> atque Aeduorum causam, sese eos in fidem receptum,<sup>i</sup> et conservatum, dixit: sed, quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate,<sup>k</sup> atque hominum multitudine<sup>k</sup> præstabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. His traditis, omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se<sup>l</sup> suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant: quorum de natura moribusque Cæsar cum<sup>m</sup> quereret, sic reperiēbat: "Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus:<sup>n</sup> nihil pati vini, reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium, inferri,<sup>n</sup> quod his rebus<sup>o</sup> relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent:<sup>p</sup> esse homines feros, magnaeque virtutis;<sup>p</sup> increpitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas, qui se Populo Romano dedidissent,<sup>q</sup> patriamque virtutem projecissent:<sup>q</sup> confirmare, sese neque legatos missuros,<sup>r</sup> neque ullam<sup>s</sup> conditionem pacis accepturos."<sup>t</sup>

16. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captiuis, Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia<sup>r</sup> passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse,<sup>b</sup> adventumque ibi Romanorum<sup>t</sup> expectare, una cum Atrebatis et Veromanduis, finitimus suis (nam his<sup>s</sup> utrisque persuaserant, ut eandem belli fortunam experirentur):<sup>u</sup> expectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias, at-

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>g</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>n</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>b</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 106, Obs. 2.

<sup>o</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>i</sup> 100, 2.

<sup>p</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>k</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>q</sup> § 141, R. III.

<sup>e</sup> 37, Note. 3, & 38.

<sup>l</sup> 31, 5, Note.

<sup>r</sup> § 132, R.

<sup>f</sup> § 45, III. 2.

<sup>m</sup> § 112, R. II.

<sup>s</sup> 63, 3.

que esse in itinere: <sup>1</sup> mulieres, qui que <sup>a</sup> per etatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, <sup>b</sup> in eum locum conjectisse, quod propter paludes exercitui <sup>c</sup> aditus non esset.

17. His reous cognitis, exploratores centurionesque præmittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. <sup>d</sup> Cumque ex detitiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures, Cæsarem secuti, unam iter facerent; <sup>e</sup> quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, <sup>2</sup> eorum diem <sup>g</sup> consuetudine <sup>f</sup> itineris <sup>e</sup> nostri exercitū perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt, atque iis <sup>h</sup> demonstrarunt, inter singulas <sup>i</sup> legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, <sup>3</sup> neque esse quicquam negotii, <sup>k</sup> cum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquæque legiones magnum spatium <sup>m</sup> abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: <sup>n</sup> quâ pulsâ, <sup>f</sup> impedimentisque direptis, <sup>f</sup> futurum, ut reliquæ contrâ consistere non auderent. <sup>o</sup> Adjuvabat <sup>p</sup> etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitùs, cum equitatu <sup>q</sup> nihil <sup>r</sup> possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus <sup>s</sup> ei rei student, sed, quicquid <sup>t</sup> possunt, pedestribus <sup>6</sup> valent copiis), quod facilius finitimorum equitatum, si prædandi causâ ad eos venisset, <sup>t</sup> impeditarent, <sup>u</sup> tenoris arboribus <sup>f</sup> incisis atque inflexis, <sup>8</sup> crebris in latitudinem ramis <sup>t</sup> et rubis sentibusque interjectis effecabant, ut instar <sup>v</sup> muri haec sepes munimenta præbèrent; quod non modò <sup>w</sup> intrari, sed ne perspicere quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impeditaretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii aestinavérunt.

18. <sup>9</sup> Loci natura erat haec, quem <sup>x</sup> locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis, ab summo æqualiter declivis, ad flumen Sabim, quod suprà nominavimus, vergébat. Ab eo flumine pari

<sup>a</sup> 37, 1st.

<sup>i</sup> 26, 5.

<sup>r</sup> § 116, Obs. 3.

<sup>b</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>k</sup> § 106. R. VIII.

<sup>s</sup> 37, 8, Note. 2. & r.

<sup>c</sup> § 112, R. II.

<sup>l</sup> 80, 3.

<sup>t</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 141, Obs. 2. 4th.

<sup>m</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>u</sup> § 140, 1.

<sup>e</sup> § 44, II.

<sup>n</sup> § 144, R. LVI.

<sup>v</sup> § 136, Obs. 5. (ad)

<sup>f</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>w</sup> § 134, Obs. 5.

<sup>g</sup> § 106, Obs. 2.

<sup>p</sup> 51.

<sup>x</sup> 37, 6, Note. 1

<sup>h</sup> 63.

<sup>q</sup> § 129, R.

acclivitatem collis nascebatur, adversus huic<sup>a</sup> et contrarius, passus<sup>b</sup> circiter ducentos<sup>1</sup> infimam apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non faciliter introrsus perspici posset.<sup>c</sup> Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto<sup>d</sup> sese continebant: in aperto loco,<sup>e</sup> secundum flumen, paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.<sup>e</sup>

19. Cæsar, equitatui præmisso, subsequetur omnibus copiis:<sup>f</sup> sed ratio ordoque agminis<sup>g</sup> aliter se habebat, ac<sup>h</sup> Belgæ ad Nervios detulerant. Nam, quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine suâ Cæsar sex legiōnes<sup>i</sup> expeditas ducēbat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocārat: inde duæ legiōnes, quæ proximè conscriptæ erant, totum agmen claudēbant, præsidiisque<sup>j</sup> impedimentis<sup>k</sup> erant. Equites nostri, cùm funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi, cum hostium equitatui prælium commisérunt. Cùm se illi<sup>l</sup> identidem in silvas ad suos reciperent,<sup>m</sup> ac rursus ex silvâ in nos-  
tros impetum facerent,<sup>n</sup> neque<sup>k</sup> nostri longius, quam<sup>o</sup> quem<sup>p</sup> ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinabant, cedentes insé-  
qui auderent:<sup>q</sup> intērim legiōnes sex, quæ primæ<sup>r</sup> venérant, opere dimenso, castra munire cœperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his, qui in silvis abditi latabant, visa sunt (<sup>s</sup> quod tempus inter eos committendi prælia convenierat), ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituérant, atque ipsi sese confirmavérant, subito omnibus copiis<sup>f</sup> provolavérunt impetumque in nostras equites fecerunt. His faciliter pulsis ac proturbatis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut pæne uno tempore et ad silvas, et in flu-  
mine, et jam<sup>t</sup> in manib[us] nostris hostes viderentur.<sup>c</sup> Eadem autem celeritate<sup>u</sup> ad verso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos,<sup>v</sup> qui in opere occupati erant, contendérunt.

<sup>a</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>f</sup> § 132, Obs. 5, (cum)

<sup>k</sup> § 93, 1, (and not.)

<sup>b</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>g</sup> § 149, Obs. 6

<sup>l</sup> 37, 2d, 5, Note. 1.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 1st, (ita.)

<sup>h</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>m</sup> 98, Obs. 10.

<sup>d</sup> § 90, 6.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, Obs. 4, &

<sup>n</sup> § 149, R. & Exp.

<sup>e</sup> § 132, Obs. 3.

74, 3.

20. Cæsari<sup>a</sup> omnia uno tempore erant agenda: <sup>b</sup> <sup>1</sup> vexillum proponendum, <sup>b</sup> quod erat insigne, cùm ad arma concurri oportéret: signum tubâ dandum: <sup>b</sup> ab opere revocandi <sup>b</sup> milites: <sup>2</sup> qui paulo longius<sup>c</sup> aggéreris petendi causâ processerant, arcessendi: <sup>b</sup> acies instruenda, <sup>b</sup> milites cohortandi, <sup>b</sup> signum dandum: <sup>b</sup> quarum<sup>d</sup> rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas, et <sup>3</sup> successus et incursus hostium impediébat. His difficultatibus<sup>e</sup> duæ res<sup>f</sup> erant subsidio, <sup>f</sup> scientia atque usus militum, quòd, superioribus præliis exercitati, quid fieri oportéret,<sup>g</sup> non minùs commodè ipsi sibi<sup>h</sup> præscribère, quàm ab aliis docéri poterant; et quòd ab opere<sup>i</sup> singulisque legionibus<sup>e</sup> singulos<sup>j</sup> legatos Cæsar discedere, nisi munītis castris, vetuērat. Hi, propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, <sup>6</sup> nihil jam Cæsaris imperium spectabant, sed <sup>7</sup> per se, quæ<sup>k</sup> videbantur, administrabant.

21. Cæsar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, <sup>9</sup> quam<sup>k</sup> in partem fors obtulit, decurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam devénit. Milites non longiore oratione<sup>l</sup> cohortatus, quàm uti suæ pristinæ virtutis memoriam retinērent,<sup>m</sup> neu<sup>n</sup> <sup>10</sup> perturbarentur<sup>m</sup> animo, hostiumque impétum fortiter sustinērent; <sup>m</sup> quòd non longius hostes abérant, quàm quòd telum adjici posset, <sup>o</sup> prælii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causâ profectus, pugnantibus<sup>p</sup> occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit<sup>11</sup> exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum anīmus, ut non modò ad insignia accommodanda,<sup>q</sup> sed etiam ad galeas induendas<sup>q</sup> scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuērit.<sup>r</sup> Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devénit, quæque prima signa conspexit, ad hæc constiit, ne, in quærendo suos, pugnandi tempus dimittéret.<sup>s</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 126, Obs 3.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>n</sup> § 93, 1, (*and not,*)

<sup>b</sup> 108, 2.

<sup>h</sup> 63.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>c</sup> § 120, Obs. 5.

<sup>i</sup> 26, 5.

<sup>p</sup> § 112, R. IV. & 19.

<sup>d</sup> 38.

<sup>k</sup> 37, 2d, 5. Note. 1.

<sup>q</sup> 112, 7.

<sup>e</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*) <sup>l</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>r</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>f</sup> § 114, Obs. 4. *nostris.* <sup>m</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>s</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

22. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natūra,<sup>1</sup> dejectusque collis, et <sup>2</sup> necessitas temporis, quām ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cùm diversis locis<sup>a</sup> legiōnes, aliæ aliâ in parte,<sup>b</sup> hostibus resistērent, sepibusque<sup>c</sup> densissimis, ut antè demonstravimus, interjectis<sup>d</sup> prospectus impedirētur: neque<sup>e</sup> certa subsidia collocāri, neque quid in quāque parte opus esset providēri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrāri poterant. Itaque,<sup>f</sup> in tantâ rerum iniquitâte, fortunæ quòque eventus varii sequebantur.

23. Legiōnis nonæ, et decimæ milites, ut<sup>g</sup> in sinistrâ parte acie constitērant, pilis emissis,<sup>f</sup> cursu ac lassitudine<sup>c</sup> exanimatos, vulneribusque confectos, Atrebātes (<sup>7</sup> nam his ea pars obvenērat), celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulērunt; et, transire conantes insecuti gladiis,<sup>c</sup> magnam pârtem eorum impedītam interfecērunt. Ipsi transire flumen<sup>g</sup> non dubitavērunt; et, in locum iniquum progressi, rursus regresos ac resistentes hostes, redintegrato prælio,<sup>h</sup> in fugam dedērunt. Item aliâ in parte<sup>i</sup> diversæ duæ legiōnes, undecima et octāva, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis<sup>j</sup> flumini ripis præliaabantur. <sup>10</sup> At tum, totis ferè a fronte, et ab sinistrâ parte, nudatis castris,<sup>h</sup> cùm in dextro cornu legio duodecima, et non magno ab eâ intervallo septima constitisset,<sup>d</sup> omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine,<sup>c</sup> duce Boduognāto,<sup>k</sup> qui summam imperii tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt: quorum pars aperio latere legiōnes circumvenīre, pars<sup>l</sup> sumnum<sup>l</sup> castrorum locum petere, cœpit.

24. Eodem tempore equites nostri,<sup>12</sup> levisque armaturæ<sup>m</sup> pedites, qui cum iis unâ fuērant,<sup>13</sup> quos<sup>n</sup> primo hostium impetu<sup>c</sup> pulsos dixeram, cùm se in castra recipērent,<sup>d</sup> <sup>14</sup>adver-

<sup>a</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)      <sup>f</sup> 104, 1.

<sup>1</sup> 17, 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 98, Obs. 11, & 25.      <sup>g</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>m</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>c</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>h</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>n</sup> § 145, Obs. 2, &

<sup>d</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>i</sup> 32, 6.

<sup>o</sup> 91, 4.

<sup>e</sup> 124, 5.

<sup>k</sup> 110, 1.

sis hostibus occurribant, ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant: et <sup>a</sup> calones, qui ab <sup>b</sup> decumana portâ, ac summo jugo collis, nostros <sup>a</sup> victores flumen transisse <sup>b</sup> conspexerant, prædandi causâ egressi, cum respexit et hostes in nostris castris <sup>c</sup> versari <sup>c</sup> vidissent, <sup>d</sup> præcipites <sup>d</sup> fugæ sese mandabant. Similiter eorum, qui cum impedimentis veniebant, clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliquique aliam <sup>e</sup> in partem perterriti ferebantur.<sup>f</sup> Quibus <sup>g</sup> omnibus rebus permoti equites Treviri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causâ ab civitate missi ad Cæsarem venerant, cum multitudine <sup>b</sup> hostium castra <sup>a</sup> nostra compleri, <sup>c</sup> legiones <sup>a</sup> premi <sup>c</sup> et pene circumventas tenéri, calones, <sup>a</sup> equites, funditores, Numidas, <sup>h</sup> diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugere <sup>c</sup> vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contendebant: Romanos <sup>a</sup> pulsos <sup>b</sup> superatosque, castris <sup>k</sup> impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos, <sup>b</sup> civitati renunciaverunt.

25. Cæsar, ab decimæ legiōnis cohortatiōne ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos <sup>a</sup> <sup>g</sup> urgēri, <sup>c</sup> signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimæ legiōnis confertos milites <sup>a</sup> sibi <sup>m</sup> ipsos <sup>i</sup> ad pugnam esse impedimento; <sup>m</sup> quartæ cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signiferoque imperfecto, signo amissio, reliquarum cohortium omnibus ferè centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his <sup>7</sup> primopilo, Publio Sextio Baculo, <sup>n</sup> fortissimo viro, <sup>n</sup> multis gravibusque vulneribus <sup>8</sup> confecto, ut jam se sustinere non posset; <sup>o</sup> reliquos <sup>a</sup> esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis desertos <sup>p</sup> prælio <sup>q</sup> excedere ac tela vitare; hostes <sup>a</sup> neque <sup>9</sup> a fronte ex inferiore loco <sup>10</sup> subeuntes intermittere, <sup>c</sup> et ab utroque latere instare; <sup>c</sup> et rem <sup>a</sup> esse <sup>c</sup> in angusto vidiit, neque ullum esse <sup>c</sup> subsidium, quod submitti posset: <sup>s</sup> scuto ab novissimis uni militi <sup>r</sup> de-

<sup>a</sup> § 145. R. LVIII.

<sup>g</sup> 38. § 129, R

<sup>n</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>b</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 126. R. V.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 1, 1st. (*ita.*)

<sup>c</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>p</sup> 101, 4.

<sup>d</sup> § 98, Obs. 10

<sup>k</sup> § 121, R. XXVI

<sup>q</sup> § 136. R. LII

<sup>e</sup> § 98, Obs. 11, & 25.

<sup>l</sup> 33, 1.

<sup>r</sup> § 126, R. III. & 5, 1

<sup>f</sup> 116, 3

<sup>m</sup> § 114, R

<sup>s</sup> § 141, R. I

tracto (quòd ipse eò sine scuto venèrat), in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominātim appellātis,<sup>a</sup> reliquos cohortātus milites,<sup>b</sup> signa inferre et manipūlos laxāre<sup>c</sup> jus- sit, quòd faciliùs gladiis<sup>d</sup> uti possent.<sup>e</sup> Cujus adventu spe illātā militib⁹, ac redintegrāto anīmo, cùm<sup>f</sup> pro se quisque,<sup>g</sup> in conspectu imperatōris, et<sup>h</sup> jam in extrēmis suis rebus, opēram navāre cupērent,<sup>i</sup> paulum hostium impētus tardātus est.

26. Cæsar cùm sept̄imam legiōnem,<sup>b</sup> quæ juxta constitērat, item urgēri<sup>i</sup> ab hōste vidisset, tribūnos<sup>k</sup> militūm monuit, ut paulātim sese<sup>l</sup> legiōnes conjungērent, et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cùm alius<sup>f</sup> alii subsidiūm ferrent,<sup>g</sup> neque timērent<sup>h</sup> ne<sup>l</sup> aversi ab hōste circumvenirentur, audaciūs resistēre ac fortiūs pugnāre cœpērunt. Intērim milites legiōnum duārum, quæ in novissimo agmīne præsidio<sup>m</sup> impedimentis fuērant, prælio nunciāto, cursu incitāto, in summo colle ab hostib⁹ conspiciebantur. Et Titus Labiēnus, castris<sup>c</sup> hostium potītus, et ex loco superiore, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur,<sup>n</sup> conspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidio<sup>m</sup> nostris misit. Qui,<sup>o</sup> cùm ex equitū et calōnum fugā, quo in loco res esset,<sup>p</sup> quantōque in pericūlo et castra, et legiōnes, et imperatōr<sup>q</sup> versarētur,<sup>r</sup> cognovissent,<sup>s</sup> nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliqui fecērunt.

27. Horūm adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est, ut nostri, etiam qui vulnerib⁹ confecti procubuisserent,<sup>t</sup> scutis<sup>r</sup> innixi, prælium redintegrārent;<sup>s</sup> tum calōnes, perterritos hostes conspicāti, etiam inermes armatis<sup>r</sup> occurrērent; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte delērent,<sup>t</sup> omnibus in locis pugnæ se legionariis militib⁹ præferrent. At hostes, etiam in extrēmā spe salūtis, tantam virtūtem<sup>u</sup> præstī-

<sup>a</sup> 104, 1.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>o</sup> 39, 2.

<sup>b</sup> 90, 4, (*eos.*)

<sup>h</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>p</sup> § 102, Obs. 1.

<sup>c</sup> § 120, R. XXVI. &

<sup>i</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>q</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

7, 5.

<sup>k</sup> 63, 3.

<sup>r</sup> § 112, R. IV.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, Obs. 6.

<sup>s</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>e</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>m</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>t</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>f</sup> § 98. Ex. 4 (*illi.*)

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 5.

erunt, ut, cùm primi eōrum cēcidissent, proxīmi jacentībus insistērent, atque ex eōrum corporībus pugnārent: his dejectis, et coacervātis cadaverībus, <sup>1</sup> qui<sup>a</sup> superessent, <sup>b</sup> utl ex tumulo, tela in nostros conjicērent, <sup>c</sup> et pila intercepta remittērent: <sup>c</sup> ut non nequicquām tantæ virtūtis<sup>d</sup> homīnes judicāri debēret<sup>e</sup> ausos esse<sup>f</sup> transire latissimum flumen,<sup>g</sup> ascendēre altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum:<sup>g</sup> quæ facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo<sup>h</sup> redegērat.

28. Hoc praelio facto,<sup>h</sup> et<sup>i</sup> prope ad<sup>j</sup> interneciōnem gente ac nomīne Nerviōrum redacto,<sup>h</sup> majōres natu, quos<sup>i</sup> unā cum puēris mulieribusque in<sup>k</sup> æstuaria ac palūdes collectos<sup>l</sup> dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nunciātā,<sup>h</sup> cùm victorībus<sup>m</sup> nihil<sup>n</sup> impeditum,<sup>l</sup> victis nihil<sup>n</sup> tutum<sup>l</sup> arbitrarentur, omnīum, qui superērant, consensu legātos ad Cæsārem misērunt seque ei dedidērunt; et, in commemorandā<sup>m</sup> civitatis calamitāte, ex sexcentis ad tres senatōres, ex homīnum millib⁹ sexaginta vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent,<sup>n</sup> sese redactos esse<sup>f</sup> dixērunt. <sup>7</sup> Quos Cæsar, ut in misēros ac supplīces usus<sup>o</sup> misericordiā viderētur,<sup>e</sup> diligentissimē conservāvit, suisque finībus atque oppīdis uti jussit, et finitīmis<sup>p</sup> imperāvit, ut ab injuriā et maleficio se suosque prohibērent.<sup>q</sup>

29. Aduatūci, de quibus suprà scripsimus, cùm omnībus copiis auxilio<sup>r</sup> Nerviis venīrent, hāc pugnā<sup>h</sup> nunciātā, ex itinēre domum revertērunt; cunctis oppīdis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppīdum, egregiè natūrā munītum, contulērunt. Quod<sup>s</sup> cùm ex omnībus in circuītu partībus<sup>s</sup> altissimas rupes despectusque habēret, unā ex parte lenīter acclīvis adītus, in latitudīnem<sup>t</sup> non ampliū ducentorum pedum, relinquebātur: quem<sup>s</sup> locum duplīci altissimo muro muniērunt; tum magni pondēris<sup>d</sup> saxa et præacūtas trabes

<sup>a</sup> 37, (ii.)

<sup>g</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>n</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, Obs. 8.

<sup>h</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>o</sup> § 145, Obs. 3.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>i</sup> § 145, Obs. 2.

<sup>p</sup> 63, 3.

<sup>d</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>k</sup> § 145, R. LVIII. (*esse*) <sup>q</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>l</sup> § 103, R.

<sup>r</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>f</sup> 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.

<sup>m</sup> 112, 8.

<sup>s</sup> 38, 1, (*oppīdum.*)

in muro collocârant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prog-nati; qui, cùm iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, <sup>1</sup> iis impedimentis, <sup>a</sup> quæ secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiæ <sup>a</sup> ex suis ac præsidio <sup>a</sup> sex millia hominum reliquerunt. Hi, post eorum obitum, multos annos <sup>b</sup> a finitimi exagitati, <sup>2</sup> cùm alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defendarent, consensu eorum omnium pace factâ, hunc sibi <sup>a</sup> domicilio <sup>a</sup> locum delegèrent.

30. Ac primo adventu <sup>c</sup> exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excusiōnes faciebant, parvulisque præliis <sup>d</sup> cum nostris contendebant: postea, vallo <sup>3</sup> pedum <sup>e</sup> duodēcim, in circuītū quindēcim millium, <sup>e</sup> crebrisque castellis <sup>d</sup> circumcommuniū, oppido <sup>f</sup> sese continēbant. Ubi, <sup>4</sup> vineis actis, <sup>g</sup> aggere exstructo, turrim <sup>h</sup> procul constitui vidērunt, primū <sup>m</sup> irridere <sup>i</sup> ex muro, atque increpitare <sup>j</sup> vocibus, <sup>d</sup> <sup>5</sup> quò tanta machinatio ab <sup>k</sup> tanto spatio institueretur <sup>l</sup>? quibusnam manibus, <sup>d</sup> aut quibus viribus, præsertim homines tantulæ statūræ <sup>e</sup> (nam plerumque hominibus Gallis, <sup>a</sup> <sup>6</sup> præ magnitudine corpórum suorum, brevitas nostra contemtui est), tanti oneris <sup>e</sup> turrim <sup>h</sup> in muros sese collocare confidèrent? <sup>l</sup>

31. Ubi verò <sup>7</sup> moveri, et appropinquare mœnibus <sup>m</sup> vidērunt, novâ atque inusitatâ specie <sup>d</sup> commoti, legatos ad Cæsarem de pace miserunt, qui, <sup>8</sup> ad hunc modum locuti: "Non se existimare <sup>n</sup> Romanos sine ope divinâ bellum gerere, <sup>n</sup> qui <sup>9</sup> tantæ altitudinis <sup>e</sup> machinatōnes tantâ celeritate promovere, <sup>10</sup> et ex propinquitate pugnare, possent: se <sup>o</sup> suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere," dixerunt. <sup>11</sup> "Unum petere <sup>p</sup> ac deprecari: si fortè, pro suâ clementiâ ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, <sup>p</sup> statuisset, Aduatūcos

<sup>a</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>f</sup> § 136, Obs. 5.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>b</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>g</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>m</sup> § 112, R. IV.

<sup>c</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>h</sup> § 15, 3.

<sup>n</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 144, Obs. 6.

<sup>o</sup> 31.

<sup>e</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>k</sup> § 132, Obs. 5.

<sup>p</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: <sup>a</sup> sibi omnes ferè finitimos <sup>b</sup> esse inimicos, <sup>c</sup> ac suæ virtuti <sup>d</sup> invidere; a quibus se defendere, traditis armis, <sup>e</sup> non possent. <sup>f</sup> <sup>1</sup> Sibi <sup>d</sup> præstare, si in eum casum deducerentur, <sup>g</sup> quamvis fortunam a Populo Romano pati, quam ab his <sup>h</sup> per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuissent.”<sup>i</sup>

32. Ad hæc Cæsar respondit: “Se magis consuetudine<sup>i</sup> suâ, quam merito<sup>j</sup> eorum, civitatem conservatūrum, <sup>k</sup> si prius, quam murum aries attigisset,<sup>l</sup> se dedidissent: <sup>l</sup> sed deditiōnis nullam esse conditiōnem, <sup>b</sup> nisi armis traditis: se<sup>b</sup> id, quod <sup>3</sup>in Nerviis fecisset, <sup>m</sup> factūrum, <sup>k</sup> finitimisque imperatūrum, <sup>k</sup> ne quam deditiis <sup>n</sup> Populi Romani injuriā inferrent.”<sup>a</sup> Re nunciātā ad suos, “quæ imperarentur, facere”<sup>o</sup> dixerunt. Armōrum magnā multitudine<sup>e</sup> de muro in fossam, quæ erat ante oppidum, jactā, sic ut propè summam <sup>4</sup> muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armōrum adæquārent; et tamen circiter parte<sup>e</sup> tertiarā, ut postea perspectum est, celatā atque in oppido retentā, portis<sup>e</sup> patefactis, eo die pace<sup>p</sup> sunt usi.

33. <sup>b</sup> Sub vespērum Cæsar portas claudi<sup>q</sup> militesque ex oppido exire<sup>q</sup> jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus injuriā accipērent<sup>r</sup>. Illi, antè initio, ut intellectum est, consilio, <sup>e</sup> quod, deditiōne<sup>e</sup> factā, nostros præsidia deductūros, <sup>k</sup> aut denique indiligiens servatūros, <sup>k</sup> credidērant, partim cum his, quæ retinuerant et celavérant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminiis intextis, quæ subito (ut temporis exiguitas postulabat), pellibus<sup>s</sup> induxerant, <sup>t</sup> tertiarā vigiliā, <sup>t</sup> quā minime arduus ad nostras munitiōnes ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis<sup>u</sup> repente ex oppido eruptiōnem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut antè Cæsar imperārat, <sup>v</sup> ignibus<sup>t</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>b</sup> § 126, Obs. 2.

<sup>p</sup> § 121, R. XXVI

<sup>b</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>i</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>q</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>c</sup> § 103, Obs. 2.

<sup>k</sup> 100, 2.

<sup>r</sup> § 140, 1, 2d, &

<sup>d</sup> § 112, R. IV.

<sup>l</sup> 80, 1, & 2.

<sup>121</sup>, 3.

<sup>e</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>s</sup> § 125, R.

<sup>f</sup> § 141, Obs. 7,

<sup>n</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>t</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>o</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>u</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, cum.

significatiōne factā, ex proxīmis cōstellis eō concursum est,<sup>a</sup> pugnatūmque<sup>b</sup> ab hostībus <sup>c</sup>ita acrīter, ut<sup>b</sup> a viris fortībus, in extrēmā spe salūtis, inīquo loco, contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacērent,<sup>c</sup> pugnāri debuit,<sup>d</sup> cūm in unā virtūte omnī spes salūtis consistēret.<sup>e</sup> Occīsis<sup>f</sup> ad homīnum millībus<sup>f</sup> quatuor, reliqui in oppīdum rejecti sunt. Postri-die ejus diēi, refractis portis,<sup>f</sup> cūm jam defendēret<sup>e</sup> nemo, atque intromissis militībus nostris, <sup>g</sup>sectiōnem ejus oppīdi universam Cæsar vendīdit. Ab his, qui emērant,<sup>h</sup> capītum numērus ad eum relātus est millium quinquaginta trium.

34. Eōdem tempōre<sup>g</sup> a Publio Crasso, quem cum legiōne unā misērat ad Venētos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolītas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedōnes, quae sunt maritīmæ civitātes <sup>h</sup>Oceanumque attingunt, <sup>i</sup>certior factus est, omnes eas civitātes in ditiōnem potestatēmque Popūli Romāni esse redactas.<sup>h</sup>

35. His rebus<sup>f</sup> gestis, omni Galliā<sup>f</sup> pacātā, tanta hujus belli ad barbāros opinio perlāta est, ut<sup>i</sup> ab his nationībus, quae trans Rhenum incolērent,<sup>i</sup> mitterentur<sup>k</sup> legāti ad Cæsārem, quae se<sup>l</sup> obsīdes datūras,<sup>m</sup> imperāta factūras, policerentur:<sup>l</sup> quas<sup>n</sup> legatiōnes Cæsar, quōd in Italiam Illyricumque properābat, inītā proxīmā æstātē<sup>o</sup> ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnūtes, Andes, Turonesque, quae<sup>p</sup> civitātes propinquāe his locis<sup>q</sup> erant, ubi bellūm gessērat, legionībus<sup>f</sup> in hiberna deductis, in Italiam profectus est, ob easque res, ex litēris Cæsāris, <sup>r</sup>dies<sup>r</sup> quindēcim supplicatio decretā est, quod<sup>s</sup> ante id tempus accidit nulli.<sup>t</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 67, 1.

<sup>g</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>o</sup> § 146, Obs. 9.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, Obs. 1.

<sup>h</sup> 98, 6.

<sup>p</sup> 37, 4, & Note. 1.

<sup>c</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>q</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 113, Obs. 1, &

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>r</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

88, 7.

<sup>l</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>s</sup> 37, Note. 3, 9.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>m</sup> 100, 2.

<sup>t</sup> § 112, R. IV. & 19.

<sup>f</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>n</sup> 38.

## BOOK III.

### GENERAL ARGUMENT.

- I. War with the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni—Chap. 1–6.  
 II. War with the Veneti—Chap. 7–16. III. War with the Unelli—  
 Chap. 17–19. IV. Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania—Chap.  
 20–27. V. Expedition of Cæsar against the Morini and Menapii—  
 Chap. 28–29.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Cæsar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā, et parte equitātus, in Nantuātes, Verāgros, Sedunosque misit, qui ab finībus Allobrōgum, et lacu Lemanno, et flumīne Rhodāno, ad summas<sup>a</sup> Alpes per-tinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quòd iter<sup>b</sup> per Alpes, <sup>1</sup>quo, magno cum pericūlo <sup>2</sup>magnisque cum portoriis, mercatōres ire consuērant, patefiēri<sup>c</sup> volēbat. Huic<sup>d</sup> permīsit, si opus esse arbitrarētur, utl in eis locis legiōnem hiemandi causā collocāret.<sup>e</sup> Galba, secundis aliquot prōliis<sup>f</sup> factis, castellisque complurībus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undīque legātis,<sup>g</sup> obsidibusque datis, et pace factā, constituit, cohortes duas in Nantuatībus collocāre, et ipse<sup>h</sup> cum reliquis ejus legiōnis cohortībus in vico Veragrōrum, qui appellātur Octodūrus,<sup>i</sup> hiemāre: qui<sup>j</sup> vicus, posītus in valle, non magnā adjectā planicie, altissimis montībus undīque continētur. Cūm<sup>k</sup>hic in duas partes flumīne divideretur, altēram<sup>l</sup> partem ejus vici Gallis<sup>k</sup> concessit, altēram<sup>l</sup> vacuam ab illis relictam, cohortībus ad hiemandum attribuit. <sup>4</sup>Eum locum vallo fossāque munīvit.

2. Cūm dies hibernōrum complūres transissent, frumentumque eō comportāri<sup>c</sup> jussisset, subītō per exploratōres certior factus est, ex eā parte vici, quam Gallis concessērat, omnes<sup>b</sup> noctu discessisse,<sup>m</sup> montesque, qui impendērent, a

<sup>a</sup> 17, 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>1</sup> § 38, 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 145. R. LVIII.

<sup>f</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>k</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>c</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>g</sup> 32,3,(constituit.)

<sup>l</sup> 27, 10, Obs.

<sup>d</sup> 63.

<sup>h</sup> § 103, R.

<sup>m</sup> 98, 2.

maximâ multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrōrum tenēri.<sup>a</sup> Id aliquot de causis accidērat, ut subitō Galli belli renovandi<sup>b</sup> legionisque opprimendae<sup>c</sup> consilium capērent: primū, quod legiōnem,<sup>d</sup> neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duābus, et compluribus<sup>e</sup> singillātim, qui commeātus petendi causā missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem despiciēbant: tum etiam, quod, propter iniquitātem loci, cūm ipsi ex montībus in vallem<sup>f</sup> decurrerent,<sup>g</sup> et tela conjicērent,<sup>h</sup> ne primum quidem posse impētum sustinēre<sup>i</sup> existimābant. Accedēbat, quod suos ab se liberos<sup>j</sup> abstractos<sup>k</sup> obsidum nomine dolēbant: et Romānos<sup>l</sup> non solum itinērum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis, culmina Alpium occupare conāri, et ea loca finitīmæ provinciæ adjungere,<sup>m</sup> sibi<sup>n</sup> persuāsum habēbant.

3, His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cūm neque opus hibernōrum, munitionesque plenē essent perfectæ,<sup>o</sup> neque de frumento reliquōque commeātu satis esset provīsum,<sup>p</sup> quod, deditiōne factā, obsidibusque acceptis,<sup>q</sup> nihil de bello timendum existimavērat, consilio celeriter convocāto, sententias exquirēre cœpit. Quo<sup>r</sup> in consilio, cūm tantum repentīni periculi præter opiniōnem accidisset, ac jam omnia ferē superīora loca multitudine<sup>s</sup> armatōrum complēta conspicerentur,<sup>t</sup> neque subsidio<sup>u</sup> venīri, neque commeātus supportāri interclūsis itineribus<sup>v</sup> possent, prope jam desperātā salūte,<sup>w</sup> nonnullæ hujusmōdi sententiæ dicebantur, ut, impedimentis<sup>x</sup> relictis, eruptiōne factā, iisdem itineribus,<sup>y</sup> quibus<sup>z</sup> eō pervenissent, ad salūtem contendērent.<sup>aa</sup> Majōri tamen parti placuit, hoc<sup>bb</sup> reservāto ad extrēmum<sup>cc</sup> consilio, intērim rei eventum experīri et<sup>dd</sup> castra defendēre.

<sup>a</sup> 96, 2.<sup>g</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.<sup>o</sup> § 136, Obs. 5. *cum.*<sup>b</sup> 112, 5.<sup>h</sup> 98, 2.<sup>p</sup> 109, 2.<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.<sup>i</sup> § 126, R. III.<sup>q</sup> § 129, R.<sup>d</sup> 19, (*militib.*)<sup>k</sup> 65.<sup>r</sup> § 113, R.<sup>e</sup> § 140, Obs. 3, &<sup>l</sup> 38.<sup>s</sup> 19, (*casum.*)<sup>f</sup> § 45, II. 1.<sup>m</sup> § 126, R. V.<sup>t</sup> § 149, R.<sup>g</sup> 97, 7.<sup>n</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

4. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus,<sup>a</sup> quas constituisserent,<sup>b</sup> collocandis<sup>c</sup> atque administrandis<sup>c</sup> tempus darētur,<sup>d</sup> hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere,<sup>e</sup> lapides<sup>f</sup> gæsāque in vallum conjicere:<sup>e</sup> nostri primo<sup>g</sup> integris virībus fortiter repugnāre,<sup>e</sup> neque ullum<sup>h</sup> frustra telum ex loco superiore mittēre<sup>e</sup>: ut<sup>i</sup> quæque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus<sup>j</sup> premi videbātur, eò occurrere,<sup>e</sup> et auxilium ferre:<sup>e</sup> sed hōc superari,<sup>e</sup> quod diuturnitāte pugnæ hostes defessi prælio<sup>k</sup> excedēbant, alii integris virībus succedēbant: quarum rerum a nostris propter<sup>l</sup> paucitatem fieri nihil poterat; ac<sup>m</sup> non modò<sup>i</sup> defesso<sup>k</sup> ex pugnā excedendi, sed ne saucio<sup>k</sup> quidem ejus loci, ubi constitērat, relinquendi,<sup>l</sup> ac sui recipiendi,<sup>l</sup> facultas dabātur.

5. Cūm jam amplius horis<sup>m</sup> sex continenter pugnarētur, ac non solū vires, sed etiam tela, nostris<sup>n</sup> desicarent,<sup>o</sup> atque hostes acrius instarent, languidioribusque nostris<sup>p</sup> vallum scindēre, et fossas complēre, cœpissent,<sup>o</sup> resque esset<sup>o</sup> jam ad extrēnum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio<sup>q</sup> quem<sup>q</sup> Nervīco prælio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusēnus, tribūnus milītum, vir et consilii<sup>r</sup> magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrit, atque unam esse spem salūtis docent, si eruptiōne factā, extrēnum auxilium experirentur. Itaque,<sup>10</sup> convocātis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermittērent<sup>s</sup> prælium, ac tantummōdo tela missa excipērent,<sup>t</sup> seque ex labore reficērent; post, dato signo, ex castris erumpērent,<sup>s</sup> atque omnem spem salūtis in virtute ponērent.<sup>t</sup>

6. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac, subiōtō<sup>11</sup> omnibus portis eruptiōne factā, neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui<sup>u</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 114, R, (sibi.)

<sup>g</sup> § 126, R. V.

<sup>n</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>b</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>h</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>c</sup> 112, 6.

<sup>i</sup> § 134, Obs. 5.

<sup>p</sup> 19, & 110.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 1st, (ita.)

<sup>k</sup> 19, & § 126, R. III.

<sup>q</sup> 91, 4.

<sup>e</sup> § 144, Obs. 6.

<sup>l</sup> 112, 5.

<sup>r</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, Obs. 1.

<sup>m</sup> § 120, R.

<sup>s</sup> § 140, Obs. 5.

colligendi, hostibus<sup>a</sup> facultātem relinquunt. Ita commutātā fortūnā,<sup>b</sup> eos, qui in spem potiundōrum<sup>c</sup> castrōrum venērant, īndīque circumventos interficiunt, et, <sup>1</sup> ex homīnum millībus ampliūs<sup>d</sup> triginta, quem<sup>e</sup> numērum barbarōrum ad castra venisse constābat,<sup>2</sup> plus<sup>d</sup> tertīā parte interfectā, reliquos perterrītos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superiorībus consistēre patiuntur. Sic, omnībus hostium copiis<sup>b</sup> fusis, armisque exūtis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo<sup>f</sup> prōlio facto, quōd sāpiūs fortūnam tentāre Galba nolēbat, atque<sup>4</sup> alio<sup>g</sup> sese in hiberna consilio venisse<sup>h</sup> meminērat, aliis<sup>i</sup> occurrisse<sup>h</sup> rebus vidērat, maxīmē frumenti commeatūsque inopīa permōtus, postero die<sup>i</sup> omnībus ejus vici aēdificiis<sup>b</sup> incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit; ac, nullo hoste prohibente, aut iter demorante, incolūmem legiōnem in Nantuātes, inde in Allobrōgas, perduxit, ibīque hiemāvit.

8. His rebus<sup>b</sup> gestis, cūm<sup>5</sup> omnībus de causis Cæsar pacātam Galliam existimāret, superātis Belgis,<sup>b</sup> expulsis Germānis, victis in Alpībus Sedūnis, atque ita, initā hiēme,<sup>b</sup> in Illyricum profectus esset, quōd eas quoque natiōnes<sup>k</sup> adīre, et regiōnes cognoscēre, volēbat, subītum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ejus belli hæc fuit causa. Publius Crassus adolescens cum legiōne septimā proxīmus<sup>6</sup> mare<sup>l</sup> Oceānum in Andībus hiemārat. Is, quōd in his locis inopia frumenti erat,<sup>7</sup> præfectos tribunosque militū complūres in finitīmas civitātes, frumenti commeatūsque petendi<sup>c</sup> causā, dimīsit: quo in numēro erat Titus Terrasidius, missus in Esubios; Marcus Trebius Gallus in Curiosolītas; Quintus Velanius, cum Tito Silio, in Venētos.

8. Hujus est civitatis longē amplissīma auctoritas omnis oræ<sup>m</sup> maritīmæ regiōnum eārum; quōd et naves habent Ve-

<sup>a</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>e</sup> 37, 2d, & Note. 1.

<sup>i</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>b</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>f</sup> 38, 3.

<sup>k</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>c</sup> 112, 5.

<sup>g</sup> § 98, Obs. 12.

<sup>l</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)

<sup>d</sup> § 120, Obs. 3,

<sup>h</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>m</sup> § 107, R. X. Exp.

nēti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigāre consuērunt, et <sup>a</sup> scientiā <sup>a</sup> atque usu nauticārum rerum reliquos <sup>b</sup> antecēdunt, et, <sup>2</sup> in magno impētu maris atque aperto, paucis portūbus interjectis, quos tenent <sup>3</sup> ipsi, <sup>c</sup> omnes ferē, qui <sup>4</sup> eo mari uti consuērant, habent <sup>5</sup> vectigāles. Ab iis fit initium retinendi <sup>d</sup> Silii atque Velanii, quōd per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperatūros <sup>e</sup> existimābant. Horūn auctoritāte finitimi adducti (<sup>6</sup> ut sunt Gallōrum subīta <sup>f</sup> et repentina consilia), eādem de causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinēnt, et, celeriter missis legātis, <sup>g</sup> per suos principes inter se conjūrant, nihil nisi commūni consilio actūros, <sup>e</sup> eundemque <sup>7</sup> omnīs fortūnāe exītum esse latūros; <sup>e</sup> reliquasque civitātes solicitant, ut in eā libertāte, quam a majorib⁹ accepērant, permanēre, quām <sup>h</sup> Romanōrum servitūtem perferre, mallent. Omni orā <sup>i</sup> maritimā celeriter ad suam <sup>k</sup> sententia in perductā, commūnem legatiōnem ad Publīum Crassū mittunt, “ si velit <sup>j</sup> suos recipēre, obsides sibi remittat.”

9. Quibus de rebus Cæsar ab Crasso certior factus, quōd ipse <sup>e</sup> abērat longiūs, <sup>9</sup> naves intērim longas ædificāri <sup>i</sup> in flumine Ligéri, quod influit in Oceānum, <sup>10</sup> remīges ex Provinciā institui, <sup>1</sup> nautas gubernatoresque comparāri <sup>i</sup> jubet. His rebus <sup>g</sup> celeriter administrātis, ipse, <sup>c</sup> cūm primū per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitūm contendit. Venēti, reliquāque item civitātes, cognito Cæsāris adventu, <sup>g</sup> simul quōd, quantum in se <sup>m</sup> facīnus admisissent, <sup>n</sup> intelligēbant (legātos, quod <sup>o</sup> nomen apud omnes natiōnes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisse, retentos ab se et in vincūla conjectos), <sup>11</sup> pro magnitudinē periculi bellum parāre, et maximē ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, providēre instituunt; <sup>12</sup> hoc majōre spe, quōd multūm natūrā <sup>p</sup> loci confidēbant. <sup>13</sup> Pedestria

<sup>a</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>g</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>m</sup> § 28, Foot note, †

<sup>b</sup> § 116, Obs. 4.

<sup>h</sup> § 149, Obs. 1.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>c</sup> 32, 3.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 1, 3d, &

<sup>o</sup> 37, 2d, 4, &

<sup>d</sup> 112, 5.

<sup>§</sup> 137, Obs. 1.

Note. 1.

<sup>e</sup> 100, 2.

<sup>k</sup> 30, 2.

<sup>p</sup> § 121, Obs. 2.

<sup>f</sup> § 103, Obs. 2.

<sup>l</sup> 90, 1.

esse itinēra concīsa<sup>a</sup> aestuariis, <sup>1</sup> navigatiōnem<sup>d</sup> impeditam<sup>a</sup> propter inſcientiam locōrum paucitatemque portuum sciēbant: <sup>2</sup> neque<sup>b</sup> nostros exercītus<sup>d</sup> propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morāri posse, confidēbant: ac jam, ut omnia contra <sup>3</sup> opiniōnem accidērent, <sup>c</sup> tamen se<sup>d</sup> plurīmum navībus posse: <sup>e</sup> Romānos<sup>d</sup> neque ullam facultātem habēre<sup>e</sup> navium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūri essent,<sup>f</sup> vada, portus, insūlas novisse: <sup>g</sup> ac <sup>4</sup> longē aliam esse<sup>i</sup> navigatiōnem in conclūso mari, atque<sup>h</sup> in vastissīmo atque apertissīmo Oceāno, perspiciēbant. His inītis consiliis, oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Cāsārem primū bellum gestūrum<sup>k</sup> constābat, quām<sup>l</sup> plurīmas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannētes, Ambiliātos, Morīnos, Diablantes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britanniā, quæ contra eas regiōnes posita est, arcessunt.

10. <sup>5</sup> Erant hæ difficultātes belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus; sed multa<sup>m</sup> Cāsārem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: <sup>6</sup> injuriæ<sup>n</sup> retentōrum<sup>o</sup> equitum Romanōrum; <sup>7</sup> rebellio facta post deditiōnem; defectio<sup>p</sup> datis obsidib⁹; tot civitātum conjuratio<sup>q</sup>; in primis, <sup>8</sup> ne, hāc parte neglectā, reliquæ natiōnes <sup>9</sup> idem<sup>r</sup> sibi licēre arbitrarentur. Itāque cùm intelligeret, omnes fere Gallos<sup>d</sup> <sup>10</sup> novis rebus<sup>s</sup> studēre, et, ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitāri, <sup>e</sup> omnes autem homīnes <sup>11</sup> natūrā libertati<sup>t</sup> studēre, et <sup>12</sup> conditiōnem servitūtis odisse; priusquam plures civitātēs conspirārent, <sup>r</sup> partendum<sup>d</sup> sibi<sup>s</sup> ac latiūs distribuendum exercitūm putāvit.

11. Itāque Titum Labiēnum legātum in Trevīros, qui proximi Rheno flumīni sunt, cum equitātu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat;

<sup>a</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>g</sup> § 84, 3.

<sup>n</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>b</sup> § 93, 1, (*and—not.*)

<sup>h</sup> § 149, Obs. 6.

<sup>o</sup> § 146, Obs. 2.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>i</sup> 96, Exc. I. 9.

<sup>p</sup> § 113, Obs. 4. *facere*

<sup>d</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>k</sup> 100, 2.

<sup>q</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>e</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.

<sup>r</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 5, & § 79. 8.

<sup>m</sup> 19, (*negotia.*)

<sup>s</sup> § 147, R. & 113. 5

Germanosque, qui <sup>a</sup> auxilio <sup>a</sup> a Belgis arcessiti <sup>b</sup> dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat.<sup>c</sup> Publum Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodēcim, et magno numero equitatus, in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur,<sup>d</sup> ac tantæ nationes conjungantur.<sup>d</sup> Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolitas, Lexoviosque mittit, <sup>e</sup> qui <sup>e</sup> eam manum distinendam <sup>f</sup> curet. Decimum Brutum adolescentem classi, Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santōnis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jussérat, præficit, et, cùm primū possit,<sup>g</sup> in Venētos proficisci jubet. Ipse eò pedestribus copiis contendit.

12. Erant ejusmodi ferè <sup>3</sup> situs oppidorum, ut, posita <sup>4</sup> in extrēmis lingulis promontoriisque, neque pedibus <sup>1</sup> aditum habērent,<sup>h</sup> <sup>5</sup> cùm ex alto se æstus incitavisset,<sup>g</sup> quod bis accedit semper horarum viginti quatuor spatio, neque navibus,<sup>i</sup> quod, rursus <sup>6</sup> minuente æstu, <sup>7</sup> naves in vadis afflictarentur.<sup>k</sup> Ita <sup>8</sup> utrāque re <sup>1</sup> oppidorum oppugnatio impediabatur; ac, si quando magnitudine <sup>1</sup> opēris fortè superati, extruso mari <sup>9</sup> aggere <sup>1</sup> ac molibus, atque his ferme oppidi mœniibus <sup>m</sup> adæquatātis, suis fortūnis <sup>n</sup> desperare cœperant, magno numero navium <sup>10</sup> appulso, cuius rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia, seque in proxima oppida recipiebant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus <sup>1</sup> loci defendebant. Hæc eo facilius magnam partem <sup>o</sup> æstatis faciebant, quod nostræ naves tempestatibus <sup>1</sup> detinebantur; summique erat vasto atque aperto mari,<sup>11</sup> inagnis æstibus,<sup>1</sup> rarī ac prope nullis portibus,<sup>1</sup> difficultas navigandi.

13. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum <sup>12</sup> factæ armataeque erant. Carinæ <sup>13</sup> aliquanto planiores, quam <sup>p</sup> nos-

<sup>a</sup> § 114, R. & Obs. 4. <sup>f</sup> 108, 4.

<sup>m</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>b</sup> 92, 2.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>n</sup> § 136, Obs. 5.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>o</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>i</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>p</sup> § 149, R. Sup. *ca-*

<sup>e</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th, and 40.

<sup>k</sup> § 139, 2, & 76, 2.

<sup>rīnæ</sup>

<sup>l</sup> § 129, R.

trārum navium, quo faciliūs vada ac decessum æstus<sup>1</sup> excipere possent: <sup>a</sup> proræ admōdum erectæ, atque item puppes, ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatæ: naves totæ factæ ex robore,<sup>b</sup> <sup>2</sup> ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam: <sup>c</sup> transtra <sup>3</sup> pedalibus in latitudinem trābus <sup>b</sup> confixa clavis ferreis, <sup>4</sup> digiti pollicis crassitudine: <sup>d</sup> anchöræ, pro funibus, ferreis catēnis revinctæ: <sup>5</sup> pelles pro velis, alutæque tenuiter confectæ, sive <sup>e</sup> propter lini inopiam atque ejus usūs inscientiam, sive eo,<sup>f</sup> quod est magis verisimile, quòd tantas tempestates<sup>g</sup> Oceāni tantosque impētus ventōrum sustinēri,<sup>h</sup> ac tanta onēra<sup>g</sup> navium <sup>6</sup> regi<sup>h</sup> velis non satis commōdè, arbitrabantur. <sup>7</sup> Cum his navībus nostræ classi<sup>i</sup> ejusmōdi congressus erat, ut unā celeritāte<sup>k</sup> et pulsu remōrum præstāret,<sup>8</sup> reliqua, pro loci natūrā, pro vi tempestātum, illis<sup>l</sup> essent aptiōra et accommodatiōra: <sup>9</sup> neque enim his<sup>m</sup> nostræ rostro<sup>n</sup> nocēre poterant; tanta in eis erat firmitūdo: neque propter altitudinem facilē telum adjiciebātur; et eādem de causā minūs commōdè <sup>10</sup> copūlis<sup>n</sup> continebantur. Accedēbat, ut, cùm <sup>11</sup> sævīre ventus cœpisset et se vento dedissent, et<sup>o</sup> tempestātem ferrent faciliūs, et<sup>o</sup> in vadis consistērent<sup>p</sup> tutiūs, et, ab æstu derelictæ, nihil<sup>q</sup> saxa et cautes timērent: quarum rerum omnium nostris navībus<sup>r</sup> <sup>12</sup> casus erant extimescendi.

14. Complurībus expugnātis oppīdis, Cæsar, ubi intellexit, frustra tantum labōrem<sup>s</sup> sumi, neque hostium fugam<sup>t</sup> captis oppīdis reprīmi, <sup>13</sup> neque his nocēri posse,<sup>s</sup> statuit exspectandum classem. Quæ ubi convēnit, ac primū ab hostībus visa est, circiter ducentæ et viginti naves eōrum <sup>14</sup> paratissimæ, atque omni genere<sup>u</sup> armōrum ornatissimæ, profectæ ex portu, nostris<sup>v</sup> adversæ constitērunt: neque satis

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1.<sup>g</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.<sup>n</sup> § 129, R.<sup>b</sup> § 128, Obs. 2.<sup>h</sup> 94, 3.<sup>o</sup> 124, 1.<sup>c</sup> 112, 7.<sup>i</sup> § 112, R. II.<sup>p</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.<sup>d</sup> § 106, R. VII. & 6, 1.<sup>q</sup> § 128, R.<sup>q</sup> § 122, Obs. 6.<sup>e</sup> 124, 3.<sup>r</sup> § 111, R.<sup>r</sup> § 126, Obs. 3.<sup>f</sup> § 129, R.<sup>s</sup> § 112, R. V.<sup>s</sup> § 113, R. & Obs. 1.

<sup>1</sup>Bruto,<sup>a</sup> qui classi<sup>b</sup> præērat, vel tribūnis<sup>a</sup> milītum centuriōbusque, quibus<sup>c</sup> singūlæ naves erant attribūtæ, constābat, quid agērent,<sup>d</sup> aut <sup>2</sup>quam ratiōnem pugnæ, insistērent.<sup>d</sup> Rostro<sup>e</sup> enim nocēri non posse<sup>f</sup> cognovērant; turribus autem excitātis, tamen has altitūdo puppium ex barbāris navībus superābat; <sup>3</sup>ut neque ex inferiōre loco satis commōdè tela adjici possent,<sup>g</sup> et missa ab Gallis<sup>4</sup> graviūs accidērent. Una erat magno usui<sup>h</sup> res præparāta a nostris, <sup>5</sup>falces<sup>i</sup> præacūtæ, insertæ affixæque longuriis,<sup>c</sup> non absimili<sup>k</sup> formā<sup>l</sup> muralium falcium.<sup>m</sup> His<sup>e</sup> cùm funes, qui antennas ad malos destinābant,<sup>7</sup>comprehensi adductīque erant, navigio remis<sup>e</sup> incitāto prærumpebantur. Quibus<sup>n</sup> abscissis, antennæ necessariò concidēbant, ut, cùm omnis Gallīcīs navībus<sup>o</sup> spes in velis armamentisque consistēret, his eruptis, omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperētur.<sup>g</sup> Reliquum erat certāmen posūtum in virtūte, quā nostri milītes facilē superābant, atque eo magis, quòd in conspectu Cæsāris atque omnis exercitūs res geregātur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum<sup>s</sup> latēre posset:<sup>g</sup> omnes enim colles ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

15. Dejectis, ut diximus, antennas, <sup>9</sup>cùm<sup>p</sup> singūlas<sup>q</sup> binæ ac ternæ naves circumstetērant, milītes summā vi<sup>e</sup> <sup>10</sup>transcendēre in hostium naves contendēbant. Quod<sup>r</sup> postquam barbāri fiéri animadvertērunt, expugnātis complurībus navībus, cùm ei rei<sup>c</sup> nullum reperirētur auxilium, fugā<sup>e</sup> salūtem petēre contendērunt: ac, jam conversis in eam partem navībus, <sup>11</sup>quò ventus ferēbat, tanta subītō malacia ac tranquillitas, extītit, ut se ex loco movēre non possent. Quæ quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maximē fuit opportūna: nam singūlas<sup>q</sup> nostri consecutāti expugnavērunt, ut perpaucæ

<sup>a</sup> § 113, R.<sup>s</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.<sup>m</sup> § 111, Obs. 2.<sup>b</sup> § 112, R. I.<sup>h</sup> § 114, R. & Obs. 4.<sup>n</sup> 38, 5.<sup>c</sup> § 126, R. III.<sup>i</sup> § 97, R.<sup>o</sup> § 110, Obs. 1, R.<sup>d</sup> § 140, 5.<sup>k</sup> 16, 2.<sup>p</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.<sup>e</sup> § 129, R.<sup>l</sup> § 106, R. VII. or<sup>q</sup> 26.<sup>f</sup> § 113, Obs. 1.<sup>§</sup> 128, R.<sup>r</sup> § 145, R. & 38, 4.

ex omni numero, noctis interventu, ad terram pervenērint, cùm<sup>a</sup> ab horā ferè quartā usque ad solis occāsum pugnarētur.

16. Quo<sup>b</sup> prælio bellum Venetōrum totiusque oræ mariti-mæ confectum est. Nam, cùm omnis juventus, omnes etiam graviōris ætatis,<sup>c</sup> in quibus aliquid consilii<sup>d</sup> aut dignitatis fuit, eò convenērant; tum, navium quod<sup>e</sup> ubique fuērat, unum in locum coëgérant: quibus<sup>f</sup> amissis, reliqui, neque quò se recipērent<sup>g</sup> neque quemadmōdum oppīda defendērent,<sup>h</sup> habēbant. Itāque se suāque omnia Cæsari dedidērunt. <sup>i</sup> In quos eo gravius Cæsar vindicandum<sup>b</sup> statuit, quo diligenter in reliquum tempus a barbāris jus legatōrum conservarētur.<sup>i</sup> Itāque, omni senātu<sup>f</sup> necāto, reliquos<sup>j</sup> sub corōnā vendidit.

17. Dum hæc in Venētis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabīnus cum iis copiis, quas a Cæsare accepērat, in fines Unel-lōrum pervenit. His præerat Viridōvix, ac summam imperii tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum, quæ defecērant, ex quibus exercitūm magnasque copias coëgērat. <sup>k</sup> Atque his paucis diēbus<sup>k</sup> Aulerci Eburovīces, Lexoviīque, senātu<sup>f</sup> suo interfecto, quòd auctōres belli esse nolēbant, portas clausērunt seque cum Viridovīce conjunxērunt; magnāque præterea multitūdo undīque ex Galliā<sup>l</sup> perditōrum hominum latronumque convenērant, quos spes prædandi, studiumque bellandi; ab agricultūrā et quotidiano labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idoneo<sup>l</sup> omnibus rebus loco<sup>m</sup> castris seše tenēbat, cùm Viridōvix contra eum duōrum milliūm spatio consedisset, quotidiēque productis copiis<sup>f</sup> pugnandi potestātem facēret;<sup>n</sup> ut jam non solūm hostībus<sup>n</sup> in contemtiōnem Sabīnus venīret,<sup>o</sup> sed etiam nostrōrum militūm vocībus<sup>o</sup> nonnihil carperētur: tantamque opiniōnem timōris præbuit, ut jam ad vallum cas-trōrum hostes accedēre audērent.<sup>p</sup> Id eā de causā faciēbat,

<sup>a</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>f</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>l</sup> 16.

<sup>b</sup> 38, 9, & § 129, R.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 5

<sup>m</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

<sup>c</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>h</sup> 113, 5.

<sup>n</sup> § 110, Obs. 1, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 106, R. VIII.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 1.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>e</sup> § 106, Obs. 10.

<sup>k</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>p</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

quod cum tantâ multitudine hostium, præsertim <sup>1</sup>eo<sup>a</sup> absente, qui summam imperii tenet<sup>b</sup>, nisi æquo loco, aut opportunitate aliquâ datâ, legato<sup>c</sup> dimicandum non existimabat.

18. Hac confirmatâ opiniōne timoris, idoneum quendam hominem et callidum delēgit, Gallum, ex his, quos auxilii causâ secum habebat. Huic <sup>d</sup> magnis præmiis pollicitationibusque persuadet, ut ad hostes transeat; <sup>e</sup> et, quid fieri velit, <sup>f</sup> edocet. Qui, <sup>g</sup> ubi pro perfugâ ad eos venit, timorem Romanorum <sup>3</sup> propōnit: "quibus angustiis <sup>h</sup> ipse Cæsar a Venetis prematur," <sup>i</sup> docet: <sup>4</sup> neque longius abesse, quin proximâ nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat, <sup>j</sup> et ad Cæsarem auxilii ferendi causâ profiscatur." <sup>k</sup> Quod <sup>l</sup> ubi auditum est, conclamat omnes, occasiōnem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse, <sup>5</sup> ad castra iri oportere. Multæ res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiōrum diērum Sabini cunctatio, <sup>m</sup> <sup>6</sup> perfugæ confirmatio, inopia cibariōrum, cui rei<sup>n</sup> parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum, spes Venetici belli, et quod ferè libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus <sup>b</sup> adducti, non prius Viridovīcem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma ut capiant <sup>p</sup> et ad castra contendant. Quare concessâ, læti, ut exploratâ victoriâ, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, <sup>7</sup> quibus <sup>q</sup> fossas Romanorum compleant, <sup>q</sup> ad castra pergent.

19. Locus erat castrorum editus, et paulatim ab imo acclivis circiter passus <sup>r</sup> mille. Huc magno cursu contendērunt, ut <sup>s</sup> quam minimum spatii <sup>s</sup> ad se colligendos armandosque Romānis darētur, <sup>9</sup> exanimatique pervenērunt. Sabinus, suos hortatus, cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quæ ferēbant, onera, subito duabus portis erup-

<sup>a</sup> 110.

<sup>g</sup> 39, 5.

<sup>n</sup> § 113, R.

<sup>b</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>b</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>c</sup> § 147, R. & 113.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>p</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>d</sup> § 123, R. & 63.

<sup>k</sup> 38.

<sup>q</sup> § 141, Obs. 2. 4th.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>l</sup> 108, 4.

<sup>r</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>m</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>s</sup> § 106, R. VIII.

tiōnem fiēri jubet. Factum est opportunitāte loci, hostium inscientiā ac defatigatiōne, virtūte militū, superiōrum pugnārum exercitatiōne, ut ne unum quidem nostrōrum impētum ferrent,<sup>a</sup> ac statim terga vertērent. Quos<sup>b</sup> impedītos <sup>1</sup> intēgris virībus<sup>c</sup> milites nostri consecūti, magnum numērum eōrum occidērunt; reliquos equītes consecūti, paucos, qui ex fugā evasērant, reliquērunt. Sic, uno tempōre, et<sup>e</sup> de navāli pugnā<sup>2</sup> Sabīnus, et de Sabīni victoriā Cæsar certior factus; civitatesque omnes se stātim Titurio dedidērunt. Nam, ut<sup>f</sup> ad bella suscipienda<sup>g</sup> Gallōrum aläcer ac promtus est anīmus, sic mollis ac<sup>3</sup> minimē resistens ad calamitātes perferendas<sup>g</sup> mens eōrum est.

20. Eōdem ferē tempōre, Publius Crassus, cùm in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quæ pars,<sup>h</sup> ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum latitudine,<sup>i</sup> èt multitudine<sup>i</sup> homīnum, <sup>4</sup>ex tertiā parte Galliæ est aestimanda, cùm intelligēret in his locis sibi<sup>k</sup> belum gerendum, ubi paucis antè annis Lucius Valerius Præconīnus, legātus, exercitu pulso, imperfectus esset,<sup>l</sup> atque unde Lucius Manilius, proconsul, impedimentis amissis profugisset,<sup>l</sup> <sup>5</sup> non mediocrem sibi diligentiam<sup>m</sup> adhibendam<sup>n</sup> intelligēbat. Itäque re frumentariā provīsā, auxiliis equitatūque comparāto,<sup>o</sup> multis præterea viris fortibus Tolōsā,<sup>p</sup> Carcasōne, et Narbōne, quæ sunt civitātes Galliæ Provinciæ, finitimæ his regionib⁹, nominātim evocātis, in Sotiatum fines exercitūm introduxit. Cujus adventu cognito, Sotiates, magnis copiis coactis, equitatūque,<sup>6</sup> quo plurimū valēbant, in itinēre agmen nostrum aborti, primum equestre prælium commisērunt: deinde, equitatū suo pulso, atque insequentib⁹ nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocavērunt, ostendērunt. Hi, nostros disjectos aborti, prælium renovārunt.

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>f</sup> 124, 20.

<sup>1</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>b</sup> 38.

<sup>g</sup> 112, 7.

<sup>m</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>h</sup> 37, 2d, 4, Note. 1.

<sup>n</sup> 108, 4.

<sup>d</sup> 105,

<sup>i</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>o</sup> § 98, Obs. 4.

<sup>e</sup> 124, 1.

<sup>k</sup> § 147, R. LXI.

<sup>p</sup> § 136, R. LII.

21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sotiates, superioribus victoriis<sup>a</sup> freti, in suâ<sup>b</sup> virtute totius Aquitaniæ salutem positam putarent; <sup>c</sup> nostri autem, quid sine imperatore, et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo duce,<sup>d</sup> efficere possent, perspici cuperent.<sup>e</sup> Tandem, confecti vulneribus, hostes terga vertere.<sup>f</sup> Quorum<sup>r</sup> magno numero interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatum oppugnare coepit. Quibus<sup>g</sup> fortiter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. Illi, alias eruptione tentata, alias cuniculis ad aggrem<sup>h</sup> vineasque actis (cujus rei<sup>b</sup> sunt longè peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eos<sup>2</sup> aerariæ secturæ sunt), ubi diligentia nostrorum<sup>3</sup> nihil<sup>i</sup> his rebus profici posse<sup>k</sup> intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in ditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quâ<sup>f</sup> re impetrata, arma tradere jussi, faciunt.

22. Atque, in eâ re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, aliâ ex parte oppidi Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldarios appellant (quorum hæc est conditio, ut omnibus in vitâ commodis<sup>l</sup> unâ cum his fruantur,<sup>m</sup> quorum se amicitiae<sup>o</sup> dedidèrent; si quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum unâ ferant,<sup>m</sup> aut sibi<sup>o</sup> mortem consciscant: neque adhuc hominum memoriâ repertus est quisquam, qui, eo interfecto, cuius se amicitiae<sup>o</sup> devovisset, mortem recusaret),<sup>p</sup> cum iis Adcantuannus, eruptiōnem facere conatus, clamore ab eâ parte munitiōnis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrisserint,<sup>c</sup> vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset,<sup>c</sup> repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eadē ditionis conditiōne<sup>l</sup> uteretur,<sup>g</sup> ab Crasso impetravit.

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocationum et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum verò<sup>6</sup> barbiri commoti, quod oppidum,<sup>r</sup> et natūrâ<sup>s</sup> loci et manus<sup>t</sup> munitum,

<sup>a</sup> § 119, R.

<sup>g</sup> 38, & 109.

<sup>n</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>b</sup> 30, 2.

<sup>h</sup> § 107, R. IX.

<sup>o</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>i</sup> § 128, Exc.

<sup>p</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>d</sup> 110, 1.

<sup>k</sup> § 145, Obs. 3, (se.)

<sup>q</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>e</sup> § 144, Obs. 6.

<sup>l</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>r</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>f</sup> 38.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>s</sup> § 129, R.

paucis diēbus,<sup>a</sup> quibus<sup>a</sup> eò ventum erat,<sup>b</sup> expugnātum<sup>c</sup> cog-  
novērant, legātos quoquoversus dimittere, conjurāre, obsides  
inter se dare, copias parāre cōpērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad  
eas civitātes legāti, quæ sunt<sup>1</sup> citeriōris Hispaniæ,<sup>d</sup> finitimæ  
Aquitaniæ:<sup>e</sup> inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum<sup>f</sup>  
adventu magnâ cum auctoritāte, et magnâ cum hominum  
multitudine, bellum gerēre conantur. Duces verò ii deligun-  
tur, qui unā cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos<sup>g</sup> fuērant,  
summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimabantur.  
Hi consuetudine Populi Romāni<sup>2</sup> loca capēre, castra mu-  
nire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod<sup>f</sup>  
ubi Crassus animadvertisit, suas copias propter exiguitātem  
non<sup>3</sup> faciliē didūci,<sup>h</sup> hostem et vagāri<sup>i</sup> et vias obsidēre<sup>j</sup> et  
castris satis præsidii relinquēre,<sup>k</sup> ob eam causam minūs com-  
mōdē frumentum commeatumque sibi<sup>k</sup> supportāri;<sup>h</sup> <sup>4</sup> in dies  
hostium numērum augēri; non cunctandum existimāvit,  
quin pugnā decertāret.<sup>l</sup> <sup>5</sup>Hāc re ad consilium delatā, ubi om-  
nes<sup>6</sup> idem sentīre<sup>l</sup> intellexit, postērum diem pugnæ constituit.

24. Primā luce, productis omnibus copiis,<sup>7</sup> dupliči acie  
institutā,<sup>8</sup> auxiliis in medianam aciem conjectis, quid hostes  
consilii<sup>m</sup> capērent<sup>n</sup> expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudi-  
nem, et vetērem belli gloriam, paucitatemque nostrōrum, se  
tutò dimicatūros<sup>o</sup> existimābant, tamen tutius<sup>p</sup> esse arbitra-  
bantur, obsessis viis, comīeātu interclūso, sine ullo vulnere  
victoriā potīri: et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariæ Romā-  
ni sese recipēre cōpissent,<sup>q</sup> impedītos in agmīne et sub sar-  
cīnis, inferiōres anīmo,<sup>r</sup> adorīri cogitābant. Hoc consilio  
probāto ab ducībus, productis Romanōrum copiis, sese cas-  
tris<sup>s</sup> tenēbant. Hāc re perspectā Crassus,<sup>t</sup> cùm suā cunc-  
tatiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostes nostros milites alaci-

<sup>a</sup> § 131, R. XLI.Obs.3. <sup>g</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>b</sup> 67, 5, Note.

<sup>h</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>o</sup> 100, 1.

<sup>c</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>i</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>p</sup> § 98, Obs. 6.

<sup>d</sup> § 108, R. XII.

<sup>k</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>q</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>r</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>f</sup> 38.

<sup>m</sup> § 106, R. VIII.

<sup>s</sup> § 136. Obs. 5, (in.)

ores ad pugnandum<sup>a</sup> effecissent; <sup>b</sup> atque omnium voces audirentur, <sup>b</sup> expectari<sup>c</sup> dintius non oportere, quin<sup>d</sup> ad castra irētur; <sup>c</sup> cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cùm alii<sup>e</sup> fossas complērent, <sup>b</sup> alii<sup>e</sup> multis telis conjectis, defensores vallo<sup>f</sup> munitionibusque depellērent, auxiliaresque, quibus<sup>g</sup> ad pugnam non multū Crassus confidēbat, lapidibus<sup>h</sup> telisque subministrandis, <sup>i</sup> et ad agḡrem cespitiibus comportandis, speciem atque opiniōnem pugnantium<sup>k</sup> præbērent; <sup>b</sup> cùm item ab hostiis<sup>l</sup> constanter ac non timidē pugnarētur, <sup>b</sup> telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra accidērent; <sup>b</sup> equites, circumītis hostium castris, Crasso renunciavērunt, non eādem esse diligentia ab<sup>m</sup> decumānā portā castra<sup>n</sup> munīta, facilemque adītum habēre.

26. Crassus, equitum præfectos cohortatus, ut magnis præmiis<sup>h</sup> pollicitationibusque suos excitārent, quid fieri velit ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, eductis quatuor cohortibus, quæ, præsidio<sup>m</sup> castris<sup>m</sup> relictæ, <sup>o</sup> intritæ ab labōre erant, et<sup>o</sup> longiore<sup>n</sup> itinere<sup>h</sup> circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent,<sup>o</sup> omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quas diximus, munitiōnes pervenērunt, atque, his prorūtis, priūs in hostium castris constitērunt, quām<sup>o</sup> planè ab iis vidēri,<sup>r</sup> aut, quid rei<sup>p</sup> gererētur,<sup>q</sup> cognosci<sup>r</sup> posset. Tum vero, clamōre ab eā parte audīto, nostri redintegratis virībus,<sup>h</sup> quod<sup>s</sup> plerumque in spe victoriæ accidēre consuēvit, acriūs impugnāre cœpérunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus,<sup>t</sup> se per munitiōnes dejicēre et fugā<sup>h</sup> salūtem petere<sup>o</sup> intendērunt. Quos<sup>u</sup> equitatūs apertissimis campis<sup>v</sup> consecutātus,

<sup>a</sup> § 147, Obs. 4.

<sup>b</sup> § 129, R,

<sup>p</sup> § 106, R. VIII.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>l</sup> § 147. R. LXII.

<sup>q</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>d</sup> 67, Note.

<sup>k</sup> 19, (*militum.*)

<sup>r</sup> 87.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>l</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>s</sup> 37, 9, Note. 3.

<sup>f</sup> § 98, Obs. 12.

<sup>m</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>t</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>g</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>n</sup> § 120, Obs. 5.

<sup>u</sup> 38.

<sup>h</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>o</sup> § 140. 1, 2d.

<sup>v</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)

ex millium quinquaginta numēro, quæ<sup>a</sup> ex Aquitaniâ Cantabrisque convenisse<sup>b</sup> constābat, vix quartâ parte relictâ<sup>c</sup> multâ<sup>c</sup> nocte<sup>d</sup> se in castra recēpit.

27. Hâc audītâ pugnâ,<sup>e</sup> magna pars Aquitaniæ sese Crasso<sup>f</sup> dedidit, obsidesque ultro misit: quo<sup>g</sup> in numero fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Preciāni, Vocātes, Tarusātes, Elusātes, Garītes, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzātes, Cocosātes. Paucæ ultimæ natiōnes, anni tempore<sup>h</sup> confīsæ, quòd hiems subērat, hoc facere neglexērunt.

28. Eōdem ferè tempore<sup>i</sup> Cæsar, etsi prope exacta jam æstas erat, tamen, quòd, omni Galliâ<sup>j</sup> pacatâ, Morini Menapiique<sup>k</sup> supererant, qui<sup>k</sup> in armis essent,<sup>k</sup> neque<sup>l</sup> ad eum unquam legatos de pace misissent,<sup>k</sup> arbitratus, id bellum celeriter confici posse, eò exercitum adduxit: <sup>o</sup> qui longè aliâ ratiōne, ac reliqui<sup>m</sup> Galli, bellum agere instituērunt. Nam quòd intelligebant, maximas natiōnes,<sup>n</sup> quæ prælio contendissent,<sup>o</sup> pulsas<sup>b</sup> superatasque esse,<sup>b</sup> <sup>o</sup> continentesque silvas ac palūdes habēbant, eò se suāque omnia contulērunt. Ad quarum<sup>g</sup> initium silvārum cùm Cæsar pervenisset,<sup>p</sup> castraque munire instituisset,<sup>p</sup> neque<sup>l</sup> hostis intērim visus esset,<sup>p</sup> dispersis in opere nostris,<sup>l</sup> subītō ex omnibus partibus silvæ evolavērunt et in nostros<sup>q</sup> impētum fecērunt. Nostri<sup>g</sup> celeriter arma cepērunt, eosque in silvas repulērunt, et, compluribus<sup>e</sup> imperfectis, <sup>s</sup> longiūs<sup>r</sup> impeditioribus locis secuti, paucos ex suis deperdidērunt.

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus<sup>s</sup> Cæsar silvas cædere instituit, et, ne, quis<sup>t</sup> inermibus imprudentibusque militibus<sup>t</sup> ab latere impētus fiéri<sup>u</sup> posset,<sup>u</sup> omnein eam<sup>v</sup> materiam, quæ

<sup>a</sup> § 145, R. & Obs. 2.

<sup>b</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>c</sup> 17, 1.

<sup>d</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>e</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>f</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>g</sup> 38.

<sup>h</sup> § 121, Obs. 2.

<sup>i</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>k</sup> § 141, R. V., (*soli.*)

<sup>l</sup> § 93, 1.

<sup>m</sup> § 87, 6.

<sup>n</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>o</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>p</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>q</sup> 19, 2.

<sup>r</sup> 22, 1.

<sup>s</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>t</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>u</sup> § 140, 1, 2d

erat cæsa, <sup>1</sup> conversam ad hostem collocābat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incredibili celeritāte <sup>a</sup> magno spatio <sup>b</sup> paucis diēbus <sup>c</sup> 2 confecto, cùm jam pecus atque <sup>d</sup> extrema <sup>e</sup> impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, <sup>e</sup> ipsi <sup>f</sup> densiores silvas petērent; ejusmōdi sunt tempestātes consecūtæ, utl opus necessariò intermitterētur, <sup>g</sup> et, continuatiōne <sup>a</sup> imbrīum diutius <sup>4</sup> sub pellībus milites continēri <sup>h</sup> non possent. <sup>g</sup> Itāque vastatis omnībus eōrum agris, <sup>b</sup> vicis ædificiisque incensis, Cæsar exercitūm reduxit, et in Aulercis, Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatībus, <sup>5</sup> quæ proximè bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocāvit.

<sup>a</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>d</sup> 17, 2.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>b</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>h</sup> 87, 6.

<sup>c</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>f</sup> 32, 3.

## BOOK IV.

### GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. War with the Usipetes and Tenchtheri—Chap. 1–15. II. Cæsar's bridge over the Rhine, and his crossing into Germany—Chap. 16–19. III. Cæsar passes into Britain.—A battle—surrender of the Britains, and subsequent revolt.—Chap. 20–36. IV. War with the Morini and Menapii—Chap. 37–38.

1. <sup>a</sup> EA, quæ secūta est, hiēme,<sup>a</sup> qui fuit annus <sup>2</sup>Cneio Pompeio,<sup>b</sup> Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipētes Germāni, et item Tenchthēri, magnā cum multitudīne hominū, flumen Rhenum transiērunt, non longè a mari, <sup>3</sup>quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quòd, ab Suēvis complūres annos<sup>c</sup> exagitāti, bello premebantur et agricultūrā<sup>d</sup> prohibebantur. Suevōrum gens est longè maxīma et bellicosissima Germanōrum<sup>e</sup> omnium. Hi centum pagos habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singūla<sup>f</sup> millia armatōrum bellandi causā ex sinib⁹ edūcunt. Reliqui, <sup>4</sup>qui domi mansērint,<sup>g</sup> se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remānent. Sic neque agricultūra, <sup>5</sup>nec ratio atque usus belli, intermittit. Sed privāti ac separāti agri apud eos nihil est; neque longiùs anno<sup>h</sup> remanēre uno in loco incolendi causā licet. Neque multū frumento,<sup>i</sup> sed <sup>6</sup>maxīmam partem<sup>k</sup> lacte atque pēcōre<sup>l</sup> vivunt, multūque sunt in venationib⁹; quæ res et cibi genēre,<sup>l</sup> et quotidiānā exercitatiōne, et libertāte vitæ (quòd, a puēris <sup>7</sup>nullo officio<sup>l</sup> aut disciplinā assuefacti, nihil omniō contra voluntātem faciānt),<sup>m</sup> et vires alit, et immāni corpōrum magnitudīne<sup>n</sup> homines efficit. Atque in eam<sup>o</sup> se consuetudinē adduxērunt,

<sup>a</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>g</sup> § 141, R. III.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, Obs. 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 110, Obs. 1, & 2.

<sup>h</sup> § 120, R.

<sup>n</sup> § 106, R. VII. &

<sup>c</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>i</sup> § 121, Obs. 2.

6, 1.

<sup>d</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

<sup>k</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (Se-

o) § 31, Obs. 2, &

<sup>e</sup> § 106, Obs. 3, (gens)

<sup>cundum.)</sup>

28, 1.

<sup>f</sup> 26, 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 129, R.

ut locis frigidissimis, neque vestitus, <sup>a</sup> præter pelles, habeant <sup>b</sup> quicquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur <sup>b</sup> in fluminibus.

2. Mercatoribus <sup>c</sup> est ad eos aditus magis eo, <sup>d</sup> ut, quæ bello cepérint, <sup>d</sup> quibus vendant, <sup>e</sup> habeant, <sup>b</sup> quām quò ullam rem ad se importari desidèrent: <sup>f</sup> quinetiam <sup>g</sup> jumentis, <sup>g</sup> quibus <sup>h</sup> maximè Gallia delectatur, quæque impenso parant pretio, <sup>i</sup> Germāni importatīs non utuntur: sed quæ sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, hæc <sup>j</sup> quotidiānā exercitatiōne, summi ut sint <sup>k</sup> labōris, <sup>l</sup> efficiunt. Equestrībus præliis sæpe ex equis desiliunt, ac pedibus <sup>m</sup> præliantr; equosque eodem remanēre vestigio <sup>m</sup> assuefaciunt; ad quos se celeriter, cùm usus est, recipiunt: neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur, quām ephippiis <sup>g</sup> uti. <sup>4</sup> Itaque ad quemvis numērum ephippiatōrum equitū, quamvis pauci, adīre audent. Vinum ad se omnīno importari non sinunt, quod eā re ad labōrem ferendum remollescere homines, atque effemināri, arbitrantur.

3. <sup>5</sup> Publicè maximam putant esse laudem, quām latissimè a suis finibus vacare agros: <sup>n</sup> hāc re <sup>6</sup> significāri, magnum numērum <sup>n</sup> civitatum suam vim sustinēre non posse. Itaque, unā ex parte, a Suēvis, circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri <sup>7</sup> vacare dicuntur. <sup>8</sup> Ad altēram partem succēdunt Ubii (quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, <sup>9</sup> ut est captus Germanōrum), et paulo quām sunt ejusdem genēris cetéri humaniōres; propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multūmque ad eos mercatōres ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatēm Gallīcis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cùm Suēvi, multis sæpe bellis experti, propter <sup>10</sup> amplitudinēm gravitatemque civitatis, finibus <sup>o</sup> expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecērunt, ac multo<sup>p</sup> humiliōres infirmioresque redēgērunt.

<sup>a</sup> § 106, R. VIII.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>g</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>m</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)

<sup>c</sup> § 112, R. II.

<sup>h</sup> § 121, Obs. 2.

<sup>n</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>i</sup> § 133, R.

<sup>o</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>e</sup> § 141, R.I. & Obs. 1. <sup>k</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>p</sup> § 132, R. XLIII.

4. <sup>1</sup>In eādem causā fuērunt Usipētes et Tenchthēri, quos suprà diximus, qui complūres annos<sup>a</sup> Suevōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum<sup>b</sup> tamē, agris<sup>c</sup> expulsi, et multis Germaniae locis<sup>d</sup> triennium<sup>a</sup> vagāti, ad Rhenum pervaenērunt: <sup>2</sup>quas<sup>e</sup> regiōnes Menapii incolēbant, et ad utramque ripam flumīnis agros, ædificia, vicosque habēbant; sed tantæ multitudinis aditu<sup>f</sup> perterrīti, ex his ædificiis, quæ trans flumen habuērant, demigravērant, et, cis Rhenum dispositis præsidiiis,<sup>g</sup> Germānos transīre prohibēbant. Illi, omnia experti, cùm neque vi<sup>f</sup> contendēre propter inopiam navium, neque <sup>3</sup>clam transīre propter custodias Menapiōrum, possent,<sup>h</sup> reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulavērunt; et, <sup>4</sup>tridui viam progressi, rursus revertērunt, atque, omni hoc itinēre unā nocte equitātu<sup>i</sup> confecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppressērunt, qui, de Germanōrum discessu per exploratōres certiōres facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigravērant. His<sup>g</sup> interfectis, navibusque eōrum occupātis,<sup>g</sup> priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quæ citra Rhenum quiēta in suis sedībus erat, certior fiēret,<sup>k</sup> flumen transiērunt, atque, omnībus eōrum ædificiis<sup>g</sup> occupātis,<sup>g</sup> reliquam partem<sup>a</sup> hiēmis se eōrum copiis aluērunt.

5. His de rebus Cæsar certior factus, et <sup>6</sup>infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus,<sup>l</sup> quòd sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles, et novis plerumque rebus<sup>m</sup> student, <sup>7</sup>nihil his<sup>n</sup> committendum existimāvit. <sup>8</sup>Est autem hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis,<sup>o</sup> uti et viatōres, etiam invītos, consistēre cogant,<sup>p</sup> et, quod quisque eōrum de quâque re audiērit<sup>q</sup> aut cognovērit, quærant;<sup>p</sup> et mercatōres in opp̄idis vulgus circumsistat,<sup>p</sup> quibusque ex regionībus veniant,<sup>q</sup> quasque ibi res cognovērint, pronunciare cogant.<sup>p</sup> His rumorībus atque auditionībus per-

<sup>a</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>g</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>m</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>b</sup> 19, (*tempus.*)

<sup>h</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>n</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>c</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>i</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (*ab.*)

<sup>o</sup> § 108, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>p</sup> § 145, Obs. 5.

<sup>e</sup> 37, 2d, 4, Note 1.

<sup>l</sup> 106, 1.

<sup>q</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>f</sup> § 129, R.

mōti, de <sup>1</sup>summis sēpe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum <sup>a</sup> eos  
<sup>2</sup>e vestigio pēnitēre necesse est, <sup>3</sup>cūm incertis rumorib⁹  
serviant, <sup>c</sup> et plerīque ad voluntātem eōrum facta respondeant.<sup>c</sup>

6. Quā consuetudinē cognitā, Cæsar, <sup>4</sup>ne <sup>d</sup> graviōri bello <sup>e</sup>  
occurrēret, maturiūs quām consuērat ad exercitū proficis-  
citur. Eò cūm venisset, ea, quæ fore suspicātus erat, <sup>5</sup>facta <sup>f</sup>  
cognōvit; missas <sup>f</sup> legatiōnes a nonnullis civitatib⁹ ad Ger-  
mānos, invitatosque <sup>f</sup> eos, uti ab Rheno discedērent; <sup>g</sup> om-  
niāque quæ postulāssent, <sup>h</sup> ab se fore parāta. Quā <sup>i</sup> spe ad-  
ducti Germāni latiūs jam vagabantur, et in fines Eburōnum  
et Condrusōrum, qui sunt Trevirōrum clientes, pervenērant.  
Principib⁹ Galliæ evocātis, Cæsar ea quæ cognovērat <sup>6</sup> dis-  
simulanda <sup>k</sup> sibi <sup>l</sup> existimāvit, eorumque animis permulsis et  
confirmātis, equitatuque imperāto, bellum cum Germānis  
gerēre constituit.

7. Re <sup>m</sup> frumentariā comparātā, equitibusque delectis, iter  
in ea loca facere cœpit, quibus <sup>n</sup> in locis esse Germānos au-  
diēbat. A quibus cūm paucōrum diērum iter <sup>o</sup> abesset, le-  
gāti ab his venērunt, quorum hæc fuit oratio: “Germānos”  
neque priōres <sup>q</sup> Popūlo Romāno bellum inferre, neque tamen  
recusāre, <sup>r</sup> si laccasantur, quin armis contendant; <sup>s</sup> quōd Ger-  
manōrum consuetūdo hæc sit <sup>t</sup> a majorib⁹ tradīta, quicum-  
quē bellum infērant, <sup>h</sup> <sup>7</sup> resistēre, neque deprecāri: hæc ta-  
men dicere, venisse <sup>f</sup> invītos, <sup>q</sup> ejectos domo. <sup>u</sup> Si <sup>s</sup> suam gra-  
tiam Romāni velint, posse eis utiles esse amīcos: vel sibi  
agros attribuant, vel patientur <sup>9</sup> eos tenēre quos armis pos-  
sedērint.<sup>v</sup> Sese unis Suēvis <sup>10</sup> concedēre, quibus ne Dii qui-  
dem immortāles pares esse possint: reliquum quidem <sup>11</sup> in  
terris esse nemīnem, quem non superāre possint.”

<sup>a</sup> § 113, Ex. II.

<sup>b</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>p</sup> § 145, R. LVIII.

<sup>b</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>i</sup> 38.

<sup>q</sup> § 98, Obs. 10.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>k</sup> § 108, 4.

<sup>r</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>l</sup> § 126, Obs. 3.

<sup>s</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>e</sup> § 112, R. IV

<sup>m</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>t</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>f</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>n</sup> 37, 6, Note. 1.

<sup>u</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1. 3d.

<sup>o</sup> 132, R. XLII.

<sup>v</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

8. <sup>1</sup> Ad hæc Cæsar, quæ visum est, respondit; sed <sup>2</sup> exi-  
tus fuit oratiōnis: “Sibi <sup>a</sup> nullam cum his amicitiam esse  
posse, si in Galliā remanērent: neque <sup>3</sup> verum esse, qui <sup>b</sup>  
suos fines tuēri non potuērint, <sup>c</sup> aliēnos occupāre: <sup>d</sup> neque  
ullos in Galliā vacāre agros qui dari, tantæ præsertim multi-  
tudini, <sup>d</sup> sine injuriā possint.<sup>e</sup> Sed licēre, si velint, in Ubi-  
ōrum finībus considēre, quorum sint<sup>f</sup> legāti apud se, et de  
Suevōrum injuriis querantur,<sup>f</sup> et a se auxilium petant: hoc  
se ab iis impetratūrum.”<sup>g</sup>

9. Legāti hæc se ad suos relatūros <sup>g</sup> dixērunt, et, re delib-  
erātā, post diem tertium ad Cæsārem reversūros: interea ne  
propiūs se <sup>h</sup> castra movēret, <sup>i</sup> petiērunt. Ne id quidem <sup>k</sup> Cæ-  
sar ab se impetrāri posse dixit: cognovērat enim, magnam  
partem equitātūs ab iis aliquot diēbus <sup>l</sup> ante prædandi fru-  
mentandīque causā ad Ambivarētos trans Mosam missam.  
Hos <sup>m</sup> expectāri equītes, atque ejus rei causā morām <sup>m</sup> inter-  
pōni, arbitrabātur.

10. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosēgo, qui est in finībus Lin-  
gōnum, <sup>5</sup> et, parte quādam ex Rheno receptā, quæ appellā-  
tur Vahēlis,<sup>n</sup> insūlam effīcit Batavōrum, neque longiūs ab  
eo millībus <sup>o</sup> passuum octoginta in Oceānum transit. Rhe-  
nus autem orītus ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incōlunt, et longo  
spatio <sup>p</sup> per fines Nantuatiū, Helvetiōrum, Sequanōrum,  
Mediomatricōrum, Tribocōrum, Trevirōrum citātus <sup>q</sup> fertur;<sup>r</sup>  
et, ubi Oceāno <sup>s</sup> appropinquat, <sup>t</sup> in plures diffliuit partes, mul-  
tis ingentibusque insūlis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris  
barbarisque nationībus incolitūr <sup>t</sup> (ex quibus sunt, qui pisci-  
bus <sup>u</sup> atque ovis avium vivēre existimantur), <sup>v</sup> multisque cap-  
itibus in Oceānum influit.

<sup>a</sup> § 112, R. II.	<sup>b</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)	<sup>c</sup> § 132, R. XLII.
<sup>b</sup> 37, (eos.)	<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.	<sup>q</sup> § 98, Obs. 10.
<sup>c</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.	<sup>k</sup> 121, Note. 2.	<sup>r</sup> 116, 4.
<sup>d</sup> § 126, R. III.	<sup>l</sup> § 131, R. XLI.	<sup>s</sup> § 112, R. IV.
<sup>e</sup> § 141, R.I. & Obs. 1.	<sup>m</sup> § 145, R.	<sup>t</sup> § 102, R. II.
<sup>f</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.	<sup>n</sup> § 103, R.	<sup>u</sup> § 121, Obs. 2.
<sup>g</sup> § 100, 2.	<sup>o</sup> § 120, R. XXIV.	

11. Cæsar cùm ab hoste non ampliùs passuum duodëcim millibus abesset, ut erat constitütum, ad eum legāti revertuntur: qui,<sup>a</sup> in itinère congressi, magnopere, ne longiùs progrederetur,<sup>b</sup> orabant. Cùm id non impetrâssent,<sup>c</sup> petebant, utì ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, præmitteret,<sup>b</sup> eosque pugnâ<sup>d</sup> prohiberet; sibique útì potestâtem faceret, in Ubios legatos mittendi: quorum<sup>e</sup> si Principes ac Senatus<sup>f</sup> sibi jurejurando<sup>f</sup> fidem fecissent, eâ conditiōne,<sup>g</sup> quæ a Cæsare ferretur, se usūros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatiū daret.<sup>b</sup> Hæc omnia Cæsar<sup>g</sup> eòdem illo pertinêre<sup>h</sup> arbitrâbatur, ut, tridui morâ interpositâ, equites eorum, qui abessent,<sup>i</sup> reverterentur:<sup>k</sup> tamen sese non longiùs millibus passuum quatuor aquatiōnis causâ processûrum eo die dixit: huc postero die<sup>l</sup> quâm frequentissimi convenirent,<sup>b</sup> ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret.<sup>k</sup> Intērim ad præfectos, qui cum omni equitâtu antecessérant, mittit, qui<sup>m</sup> nunciarent, ne hostes prælio lacesserent,<sup>b</sup> et, si ipsi lacesserentur, <sup>n</sup>sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propiùs accessisset.<sup>n</sup>

12. At hostes, ubi primùm nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cùm ipsi non ampliùs<sup>o</sup> octingentos equites haberent, quòd ii, qui frumentandi causâ ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris,<sup>p</sup> quòd legati eorum paulo antè a Cæsare discesserant, atque is dies induciis<sup>q</sup> erat ab eis petitus, impetu facto, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt. Rursus resistentibus nostris,<sup>p</sup> consuetudine suâ<sup>r</sup> ad pedes desiluerunt, subfossisque equis, compluribusque nostris dejectis, reliquos in fugam conjecerunt, atque ita perterritos egérunt, ut non priùs fugâr desistarent,<sup>s</sup> quâm in conspectu agminis nostri venissent.

<sup>a</sup> 39, 5.

<sup>s</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>h</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>o</sup> § 120, Obs. 3

<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>p</sup> 109, 1.

<sup>d</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>q</sup> § 114, R. & Obs. 4.

<sup>e</sup> 39.

<sup>l</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>r</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.)

<sup>f</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>m</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>s</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

In eo prælio ex equitibus<sup>a</sup> nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso, Aquitanus, <sup>b</sup> amplissimo genere<sup>b</sup> natus, cuius avus in civitate suâ regnum obtinuerat, amicus<sup>c</sup> ab Senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cùm fratri<sup>d</sup> <sup>2</sup> intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret,<sup>e</sup> illum ex periculo<sup>f</sup> eripuit: ipse, equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissimè restitit. Cùm circumventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset,<sup>e</sup> atque id frater, qui jam prælio<sup>g</sup> excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo<sup>g</sup> se hostibus<sup>d</sup> obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hoc facto prælio, Cæsar neque jam sibi<sup>h</sup> legatos<sup>i</sup> audiendos,<sup>k</sup> neque conditiōnes accipiendas<sup>k</sup> arbitrabatur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petītā pace, ultiō bellum intulissent: <sup>j</sup> expectare<sup>m</sup> verò, dum hostium copiæ augerentur,<sup>n</sup> equitatusque reverteretur, <sup>4</sup> summæ dementiæ<sup>o</sup> esse<sup>p</sup> judicabat; et, cognitâ Gallorum infirmitate, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno prælio auctoritatis<sup>q</sup> essent consecuti, sentiebat: quibus<sup>r</sup> ad consilia capienda nihil<sup>i</sup> spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus, et consilio cum legatis et quæstore communicato, <sup>s</sup> ne quem diem pugnæ prætermittet, opportunissima res accidit, quòd postridie ejus diēi<sup>s</sup> mane, eādem et perfidiā et simulatiōne usi Germāni, frequentes, <sup>6</sup> omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venērunt; simul, ut dicebatur, <sup>7</sup> sui purgandi causâ, quòd<sup>8</sup> contrà atque esset dictum, et ipsi petissent, prælium pridie commisissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de induciis fallendo impetrarent. <sup>9</sup> Quos<sup>i</sup> sibi Cæsar oblatos gavīsus, illīco retinēri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque, quòd recenti prælio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsēqui jussit.

<sup>a</sup> § 107, Obs. 8.

<sup>g</sup> § 136. R. LII.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>b</sup> § 119, R. & 6, 5.

<sup>h</sup> § 126, Obs. 3.

<sup>o</sup> § 108, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 103, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 145, R. (*esse.*)

<sup>p</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>d</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>k</sup> 108, 4.

<sup>q</sup> § 106, R. VIII.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>l</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>r</sup> 39, & § 126, R. III.

<sup>f</sup> § 123, Obs. 1.

<sup>m</sup> § 144, R. LVI.

<sup>s</sup> § 135, XLVI.

14. Acie triplici institutâ, et celeriter octo millium<sup>a</sup> itinere confecto, priùs ad hostium castra pervenit, quâm, quid ageretur, <sup>b</sup> Germâni sentire possent.<sup>c</sup> Qui, <sup>d</sup> omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventûs nostri, et discessu sūorum, neque consilii habendi <sup>e</sup> neque arma capiendi <sup>f</sup> spatio dato, <sup>g</sup> perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educere, an castra defendere, an fugâ salûtem petere, præstaret. <sup>b</sup> Quorum<sup>g</sup> timor cùm fremitu et concursu <sup>h</sup> significaretur, milites nostri, <sup>i</sup> pristini diēi perfidiâ incitati, in castra irrupérunt. Quorum<sup>h</sup> qui <sup>i</sup> celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restitérunt, atque inter carros impedimentaque prælium commisérunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant), passim fugere cœpit; ad quos<sup>j</sup> consectandos Cæsar equitatum misit.

15. Germâni, post tergum <sup>k</sup> clamore audito, cùm suos <sup>k</sup> interfici vidèrent, armis abjectis, signisque militaribus relictis, se ex castris ejecérunt: et, cùm <sup>l</sup> ad confluentem Mosæ et Rheni pervenissent, <sup>m</sup> reliquâ fugâ desperatâ, magno numero imperfecto, reliqui se in flumen præcipitavérunt, atque ibi timore,<sup>l</sup> lassitudine,<sup>l</sup> vi fluminis oppressi, periérunt. Nostri ad unum<sup>m</sup> omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, <sup>n</sup> ex tanti belli timore, cùm hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra recepérunt. Cæsar his,<sup>n</sup> quos in castris retinuerat, <sup>o</sup> discedendi potestatē fecit: illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti,<sup>o</sup> quorum agros vexavérant, remanere se apud eum velle dixérunt. His<sup>n</sup> Cæsar libertatem concessit.

16. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Cæsar statuit, sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quarum<sup>p</sup> illa fuit justissima, quod, cùm vidéret, Germânos tam facile impelli,

<sup>a</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>f</sup> 112, 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>g</sup> 39.

<sup>m</sup> 19, (*hominem.*)

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>h</sup> 39, & § 107, R. X.

<sup>n</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>d</sup> 39, 5.

<sup>i</sup> 37, (*ii.*)

<sup>o</sup> 106, 1.

<sup>e</sup> 112, 5.

<sup>k</sup> 19, 2, & § 145, R.

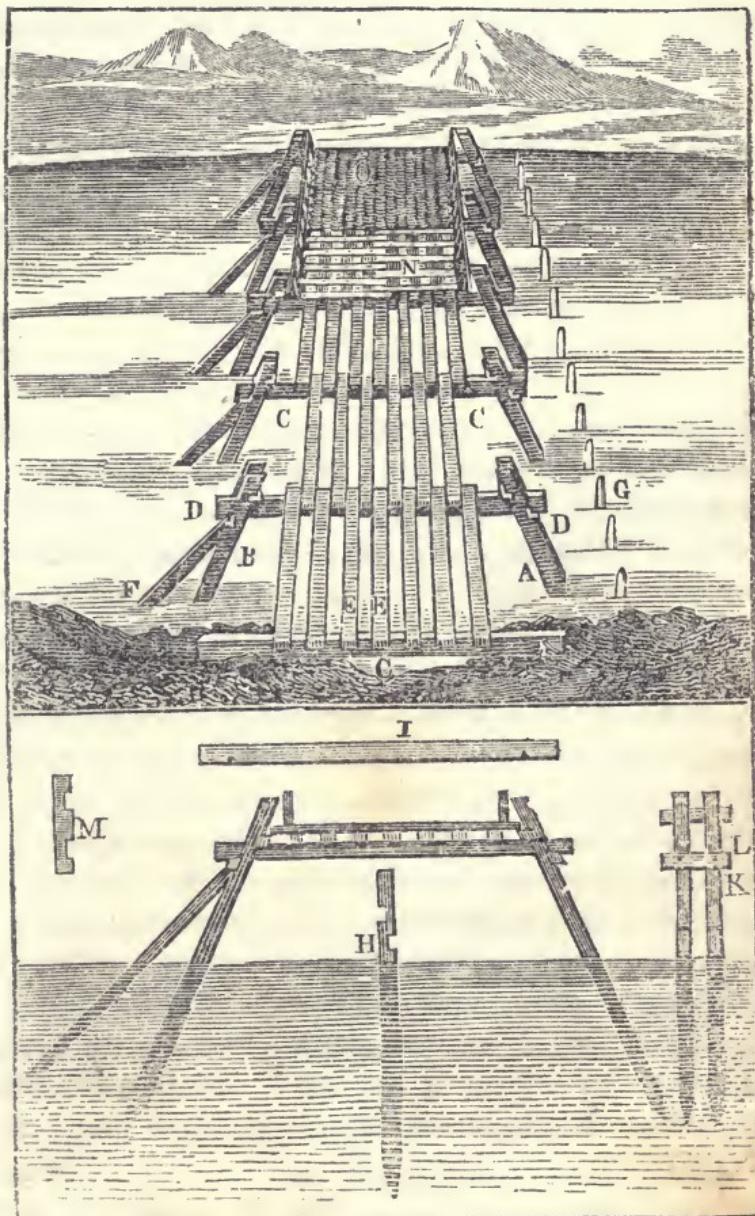
<sup>p</sup> 38, & § 107, R. X

ut in Galliam venirent,<sup>a</sup> <sup>1</sup> suis quoque rebus<sup>b</sup> eos timere voluit, cum intelligerent, <sup>2</sup> et posse et audere Populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. <sup>3</sup> Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatū Usipetum et Tenchtherorum, quam supradicata commemoravi, prædandi<sup>c</sup> frumentandique causam Mosam transisse, neque prælio<sup>d</sup> interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrorum receperat seque cum iis coniunxerat. Ad quos<sup>e</sup> cum Cæsar nuncios misisset, qui<sup>f</sup> postularent, eos, qui sibi<sup>g</sup> Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi<sup>g</sup> dederent,<sup>h</sup> respondērunt: “Populi Romani imperium Rhenum<sup>i</sup> finire: si, se invito Germānos in Galliam transire non æquum existimaret, <sup>4</sup> cur sui<sup>k</sup> quicquam<sup>l</sup> esse imperii<sup>m</sup> aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet?”<sup>m</sup> Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Cæsarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, “ut sibi<sup>g</sup> auxilium ferret,<sup>h</sup> quod graviter ab Suēvis premerentur;” vel, si id facere<sup>o</sup> occupationibus reipublicæ prohiberetur, exercitum modò Rhenum transportaret:<sup>h</sup> id<sup>i</sup> sibi<sup>d</sup> ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum: tantum esse nomen atque opinione ejus exercitūs, Ario visto pulso, et hoc novissimo prælio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione<sup>o</sup> et amicitia Populi Romani tuti<sup>p</sup> esse possint.”<sup>a</sup> Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

17. Cæsar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire, neque satis tutum esse<sup>q</sup> arbitrabatur, <sup>6</sup> neque suæ<sup>r</sup> neque Populi Romani dignitatis<sup>k</sup> esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis<sup>7</sup> proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id<sup>i</sup> sibi<sup>s</sup> contendendum, aut

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.	<sup>g</sup> § 123, R.	<sup>n</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.
<sup>b</sup> § 112, R. XVII.	<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.	<sup>o</sup> § 129, R.
<sup>c</sup> 112, 1.	<sup>i</sup> § 145, R.	<sup>p</sup> § 103, Obs. 6.
<sup>d</sup> § 112, R. I.	<sup>k</sup> § 108, R. XII.	<sup>q</sup> 51, 5.
<sup>e</sup> 39, 9.	<sup>l</sup> § 106, R. VIII.	<sup>r</sup> 29, 1.
<sup>f</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.	<sup>m</sup> § 140, 6.	<sup>s</sup> 113, & § 147.

PLAN OF THE BRIDGE MADE OVER THE RHINE BY CÆSAR,  
IN TEN DAYS.



A. *Tigna bina sesquipedalia*: Two piles each a foot and a half thick, joined together at the distance of two feet. H. One of the piles detached. K. Form of the two piles braced together. B. Two opposite piles similarly joined together, and at the distance of forty feet down the river from the other. C. *Trabs bipedalis*: Large beam two feet square, extending from the upper to the lower piles. I. The same beam detached. D. *Fibulae binae*: Two braces fastening each pair of piles together, as seen at L., one on each side, (*utrumque*)—the one below, supporting the beam, (*trabs*), the other above it. M. Form of the brace detached. E E. *Materies*: Timbers laid from beam to beam, (*directa*), lengthwise of the bridge. N. *Longurii*: Spars laid across the timbers. O. *Crates*: Hurdles laid over the spars. F. *Sublicæ*: Stakes sunk in the river as butresses, and fastened (*coniunctæ*), to each lower pair of piles. G. *Aliæ sublicæ*: Other stakes driven in above the bridge, and separate from it, as a fence against trunks of trees, &c. sent down the river.



aliter non transducendum exercitum, existimabat. <sup>1</sup> Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. <sup>2</sup> Tigna bina<sup>a</sup> sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo praeacūta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo<sup>b</sup> pedum duōrum inter se jungēbat. <sup>3</sup> Hæc cùm<sup>c</sup> machinationib<sup>d</sup> immissa in flumen defixērat, fistucisque<sup>d</sup> adgērat, <sup>4</sup> non sublīcæ modo<sup>d</sup> directa<sup>e</sup> ad perpendicūlum, sed prona<sup>e</sup> ac fastigāta, ut secundum natūram fluminis procumbērent; <sup>f</sup> <sup>5</sup> iis<sup>g</sup> item contraria bina,<sup>a</sup> ad eundem modum juncta, intervallo<sup>b</sup> pedum quadragēnūm, ab inferiore parte, contra vim atque impētum fluminis conversa statuēbat. <sup>6</sup> Hæc utrāque insuper bipedalibus trabibus<sup>b</sup> immissis quantum<sup>i</sup> eōrum tignōrum junctūra distābat, binis utrimque fibulis<sup>k</sup> ab extrēmā parte, distinebantur: <sup>7</sup> quibus<sup>l</sup> disclūsis atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat opēris firmitūdo, atque <sup>8</sup> ea<sup>m</sup> rerum natūra, ut, <sup>9</sup> quo<sup>n</sup> major vis aquæ se incitavisset, <sup>o</sup> hoc<sup>n</sup> arctiūs illigāta tenerentur. <sup>p</sup> <sup>10</sup> Hæc directâ materie<sup>q</sup> injectâ contexebantur, et <sup>11</sup> longuriis<sup>q</sup> cratibusque consternebantur: <sup>12</sup> ac nihilo secius sublīcæ et ad inferiōrem partem fluminis obliquè agebantur, quæ, <sup>r</sup> <sup>13</sup> pro pariēte subjectæ, et cum omni opere conjunctæ, vim fluminis excipērent: <sup>r</sup> <sup>14</sup> et aliæ item supra pontem mediōcri spatio, <sup>b</sup> ut, si arbōrum truncis, sive naves <sup>15</sup> dejiciendi opēris essent<sup>t</sup> a barbāris missæ, his defensorib<sup>d</sup> eārum rerum vis minuerētur, <sup>f</sup> neu ponti<sup>u</sup> nocērent.

18. Diēbus<sup>v</sup> decem, <sup>16</sup> quibus materia cœpta erat compor-tāri, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Cæsar, <sup>17</sup> ad utramque partem pontis firmo præsidio<sup>b</sup> relicto, in fines Sigambrōrum contendit. Intērim a complurib<sup>v</sup> civitatib<sup>v</sup> ad eum legāti veniunt, <sup>w</sup> quibus<sup>x</sup> pacem atque amicitiam pe-

<sup>a</sup> 26, 3.<sup>b</sup> § 132, R. XLII.<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.<sup>d</sup> § 129, R.<sup>e</sup> § 98, Obs. 10.<sup>f</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.<sup>g</sup> § 111, R.<sup>h</sup> 109, 2.<sup>i</sup> 46, (*tantum.*) &<sup>b</sup><sup>k</sup> 110.<sup>l</sup> § 38, & 109, 2.<sup>m</sup> 124, 17, & 28.<sup>n</sup> § 132, Obs. 6, &<sup>o</sup> 22, 4, Obs.<sup>p</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.<sup>q</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.<sup>q</sup> § 126, R. V.<sup>r</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.<sup>s</sup> 19, (*sublīcæ.*)<sup>t</sup> 81, 2, & 140, 2.<sup>u</sup> § 112, R. V.<sup>v</sup> § 131, R. XLI.<sup>w</sup> § 44, I. 3.<sup>x</sup> § 123, R.

tentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adduci<sup>a</sup> jubet,  
At Sigambri, ex eo tempore quo<sup>b</sup> pons institui cœptus est,  
fugâ comparatâ,<sup>1</sup> hortantibus iis<sup>c</sup> quos ex Tenchthēris atque  
Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus<sup>d</sup> suis-accesserant, suā-  
que omnia exportavérant, seque<sup>e</sup> in solitudinem ac silvas  
abdidérant.

19. Cæsar, paucos dies<sup>e</sup> in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus viciis ædificiisque incensis,<sup>f</sup> frumentisque succisis,<sup>f</sup> se in fines Ubiōrum recēpit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suēvis premerentur,<sup>g</sup> hæc ab iis cognovit: Suēvos, posteāquam per exploratōres pontem fieri comperissent,<sup>h</sup> more suo concilio habito, nuncios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent,<sup>k</sup> liberos, uxores, suāque omnia in silvas deponerent,<sup>k</sup> atque omnes qui arma ferre possent<sup>i</sup> unum in locum convenirent:<sup>k</sup> <sup>j</sup> hunc esse delectum medium<sup>m</sup> ferè regiōnum eārum quas Suēvi obtinerept:<sup>n</sup> hic Romanōrum adventum expectare atque ibi decertare constituisse.<sup>o</sup> Quod ubi Cæsar compērit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causā transducere exercitum constituērat, ut Germānis metum injicēret,<sup>k</sup> ut Sigambros<sup>4</sup> ulciscerētur,<sup>k</sup> ut Ubios ob-sidiōne liberaret,<sup>k</sup> diēbus<sup>c</sup> omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumtis,<sup>b</sup> satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum<sup>o</sup> arbitratus, se in Galliam recēpit, pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguâ parte æstatis reliquâ, Cæsar, etsi in his locis, quod omnīs Gallia ad septentriones vergit,<sup>6</sup> matūræ sunt hiēmes, tamen in Britanniam proficiisci contendit, quod, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis,<sup>q</sup> hostibus nostris<sup>r</sup> inde subministrata auxilia intelligēbat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficēret,<sup>k</sup> tamen magno sibi<sup>s</sup> usui fore arbitrabātur, si modò insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca,

<sup>a</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>b</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>o</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>c</sup> 109, 1.

<sup>i</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>p</sup> 38, 4.

<sup>d</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>q</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

<sup>e</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>l</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>r</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>f</sup> 104, 1.

<sup>m</sup> § 97, R. Exp.

<sup>s</sup> § 114, R.

portus, aditus cognovisset: quæ omnia ferè Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim <sup>1</sup> temere præter mercatores illò adit quisquam, <sup>2</sup> neque iis ipsis <sup>a</sup> quicquam, præter oram maritimam atque eas regiones quæ sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset <sup>b</sup> insulæ magnitudo, neque quæ <sup>c</sup> aut quantæ <sup>c</sup> nationes incolerent, <sup>b</sup> neque <sup>d</sup> quem <sup>e</sup> usum belli haberent, <sup>b</sup> aut quibus <sup>c</sup> institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei <sup>d</sup> portus, reperire poterat.

21. Ad hæc cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus <sup>e</sup> Caium Volusenum, cum navi longâ præmittit. Huic <sup>f</sup> mandat, uti, exploratis omnibus rebus, ad se quamprimum revertatur: <sup>g</sup> ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficisciatur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transjectus. Huc naves undique ex finitumis regionibus et, quam <sup>h</sup> superiore æstate ad Veneticum bellum fecerat, classem jubet convenire.<sup>i</sup> Intērim, consilio ejus cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britanos, a compluribus ejus insulæ civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur <sup>k</sup> obsides dare, atque imperio <sup>l</sup> Populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus <sup>m</sup> auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque ut <sup>n</sup> in eâ sententiâ permanerent, <sup>g</sup> eos domum <sup>n</sup> remittit, et cum his unâ Comium, quem ipse Atrebatis superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidélem arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni <sup>o</sup> habebatur, mittit. Huic impērat, quas possit adeat <sup>b</sup> civitates, <sup>b</sup> horteturque <sup>g</sup> ut Populi Romani <sup>b</sup> fidem sequantur; <sup>g</sup> seque celeriter eo venturum nunciet. <sup>g</sup> Volusenus, perspectis regionibus, <sup>7</sup> quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, <sup>8</sup> qui navi egridi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, <sup>p</sup> quinto die ad Cæsarem revertitur; quæque ibi perspexisset renunciat.

---

<sup>a</sup> § 126, R. XXXIII.	<sup>f</sup> 63, & § 123, R.	<sup>i</sup> § 112, R. V.
<sup>b</sup> § 140, 5.	<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.	<sup>m</sup> 38, & 109, 2.
<sup>c</sup> 48, & § 34, Obs. 1.	<sup>h</sup> 43.	<sup>n</sup> § 130, 4.
<sup>d</sup> § 103, Obs. 2.	<sup>i</sup> 90, 4.	<sup>o</sup> § 126, R. II.
<sup>e</sup> 106, 1.	<sup>k</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.	<sup>p</sup> § 141, R. III.

22. Dum in his locis Cæsar navium parandārum<sup>a</sup> causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum legāti venērunt, qui<sup>b</sup> se<sup>1</sup> de superiōris tempōris consilio excusārent,<sup>b</sup> quod homīnes barbāri, et nostræ consuetudinīs<sup>c</sup> imperīti, bellum Popūlo Romāno fecissent,<sup>d</sup> seque ea, quæ imperāsset,<sup>e</sup> factūros pollicerentur.<sup>b</sup> Hoc sibi<sup>f</sup> satis opportūnè Cæsar accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquēre volēbat, neque belli gerendi<sup>a</sup> propter anni tempus, facultātem habēbat, neque<sup>2</sup> has tantulārum rerum occupatiōnes<sup>g</sup> sibi<sup>h</sup> Britanniæ<sup>i</sup> anteponendas judicābat, magnum his<sup>k</sup> obsidum numērum impērat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recēpit. <sup>j</sup> Navībus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot<sup>l</sup> satis esse ad duas transportandas legiōnes existimābat, quicquid præterea navium<sup>m</sup> longārum habēbat, quæstōri, legātis, præfectisque distribuit. Huc accedēbant octodēcim onerariæ naves, quæ ex eo loco ab<sup>n</sup> millib⁹ passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minūs in eundem portum pervenīre possent.<sup>o</sup> Has equitībus distribuit; reliquum exercitūm Quinto Titurio Sabīno et Lucio Aurunculejō Cottæ, legātis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum legāti non venērant, deducendum<sup>p</sup> dedit. Publīum Sulpitium Rufum, legātum, cum eo præsidio quod satis esse arbitrabātur, portum tenēre jussit.

23. His constitūtis rebus, factus idoneam ad navigandum<sup>q</sup> tempestātem, <sup>r</sup> tertīā ferē vigiliā<sup>s</sup> solvit, equitesque in ulteriōrem portum progrēdi,<sup>r</sup> <sup>t</sup> et naves condescendēre,<sup>r</sup> et se sequi<sup>r</sup> jussit: a quibus<sup>u</sup> cùm id paulo tardiūs esset administrātum, ipse<sup>v</sup> horā diēi circiter quartā cum primis navībus Britanniām attīgit, atque ibi in omnībus collībus<sup>w</sup> exposītas hostium

<sup>a</sup> 112, 5.

<sup>h</sup> § 126, Obs. 3.

<sup>n</sup> § 132, Obs. 5.

<sup>b</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4.

<sup>i</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 1.

<sup>c</sup> § 107, R. IX.

<sup>k</sup> § 123, R. & 5, 1.

<sup>p</sup> 107, 1.

<sup>d</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>l</sup> 46, 2.

<sup>q</sup> 112, 3.

<sup>e</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>m</sup> § 106, R. VIII. &

<sup>r</sup> 90, 1.

<sup>f</sup> § 112, R. IV.

Obs. 10.

<sup>s</sup> 38.

<sup>g</sup> § 145, R.

copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura: <sup>1</sup> adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in littus telum adjici posset. Hunc <sup>2</sup> ad egrediendum nequam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eò convenirent, <sup>3</sup> ad horam nonam in anchoris expectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognosset, <sup>4</sup> et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, <sup>4</sup> monuitque (ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, <sup>5</sup> ut quae celarem atque instabilem motum haberent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His <sup>6</sup> dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo, <sup>7</sup> et sublati anchoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano littore <sup>8</sup> naves constituit.

24. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso <sup>9</sup> equitatu, <sup>5</sup> et essedariis, quo plerumque genere <sup>10</sup> in praeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus <sup>11</sup> egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves, propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant; <sup>12</sup> militibus autem, ignotis locis, <sup>13</sup> impeditis manibus, <sup>14</sup> magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum, <sup>15</sup> et in fluctibus consistendum, <sup>16</sup> et cum hostibus erat pugnandum: <sup>17</sup> cum illi aut ex arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, <sup>18</sup> omnibus membris <sup>19</sup> expediti, notissimis locis, <sup>20</sup> audacter tela conicarent, <sup>21</sup> et equos <sup>22</sup> insuefactos incitarent. <sup>23</sup> Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino genoris <sup>24</sup> pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate <sup>25</sup> ac studio, quo <sup>26</sup> in pedestribus uti praeliis consueverant, utebantur.

25. Quod ubi Cæsar animum advertit, naves longas, <sup>27</sup> quarum et species erat barbaris <sup>28</sup> inusitator, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et

<sup>a</sup> 87, 1.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>l</sup> § 147, & 113, 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>g</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.) <sup>m</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>c</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>h</sup> § 98, Obs. 4. & 109. 2.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>i</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>o</sup> § 108, R. IX.

<sup>e</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>k</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>p</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>a</sup> remis incitari, <sup>a</sup> et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, <sup>a</sup> atque inde fundis, sagittis, <sup>2</sup> tormentis, hostes propelli <sup>a</sup> ac submoveri jussit: <sup>3</sup> quae res magno usui <sup>b</sup> nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figurâ, et remorum motu, et inusitatō genere tormentorum permoti, barbāri constitērunt, <sup>4</sup> ac paulum modò pedem retulerunt. Atque, nostris militibus <sup>c</sup> cunctantibus, maximè propter altitudinem maris, <sup>5</sup> qui <sup>d</sup> decimæ legionis aquilam ferēbat, contestatus <sup>e</sup> Deos, ut <sup>f</sup> ea res legioni <sup>f</sup> feliciter evenīret: “Desilite,” inquit, “commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certè meum reipublicæ atque imperatōri officium præstitiero.” Hoc cùm <sup>7</sup> magnâ voce dixisset, <sup>8</sup> ex navi se projēcit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre cœpit. Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, <sup>g</sup> ne <sup>b</sup> tantum dedecus admireretur, universi ex navi desiluērunt: hos item ex proximis navibus cùm conspexissent, subsecūti hostibus <sup>i</sup> appropinquarent.

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare, <sup>k</sup> neque firmiter insistere, <sup>k</sup> neque signa subsequi <sup>k</sup> poterant, atque alias aliâ <sup>l</sup> ex navi, qui buscumque <sup>m</sup> signis occurserat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes verò, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex littore aliquos <sup>9</sup> singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoribantur: plures paucos <sup>n</sup> circumstebant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciabant. <sup>10</sup> Quod cùm animum advertisset Cæsar, <sup>11</sup> scaphas longarum navium, item <sup>12</sup> speculatoria navigia militibus compleri <sup>a</sup> jussit, et, quos <sup>p</sup> laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul <sup>q</sup> in arido constitērunt, suis omnibus consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prossequi <sup>k</sup> potuerunt, quod

<sup>a</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>g</sup> § 28, Obs. 5.

<sup>m</sup> 37, 7, Ncte. 2, &

<sup>b</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 3d, & 121.

<sup>§</sup> 99, Obs. 7.

<sup>c</sup> 109, 1.

<sup>i</sup> § 112, R. IV.

<sup>n</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>d</sup> 37, 3.

<sup>k</sup> 87, 7.

<sup>o</sup> § 38, 7.

<sup>e</sup> 105, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 98, Obs. 11. &

<sup>p</sup> 43.

<sup>f</sup> § 112, R. XVII.

25, 1.

<sup>q</sup> 124, 18, (Sup.ac.)

equites<sup>1</sup> cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Cæsari defuit.

27. Hostes proelio superati, simul<sup>a</sup> atque se ex fugâ receperunt, statim ad Cæsarem legatos de pace miserunt: obsides daturos, quæque imperasset<sup>b</sup> sese facturos, polliciti sunt. Unà cum his legatis Commius Atrébas venit, quem<sup>c</sup> suprà demonstravérāt a Cæsare in Britanniam præmissum.<sup>d</sup> Hunc illi e navi egressum, cùm ad eos<sup>e</sup> oratōris modo imperatōris mandata perferret, comprehendērant, atque in vincula conjecerant: tum, proelio facto, remisērunt et in petendā<sup>f</sup> pace ejus rei<sup>g</sup> culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignoscerētur, petivérunt. Cæsar questus, quòd, cùm ultro<sup>h</sup> in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent,<sup>i</sup> bellum sine causâ intulissent,<sup>j</sup> ignoscere<sup>k</sup> imprudentiæ<sup>l</sup> dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem, ex longinquoribus locis arcessitam,<sup>m</sup> paucis diēbus<sup>n</sup> sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jussérunt, principesque undique convenire, et se civitatesque suas Cæsari commendare cœpérunt.

28. His rebus pace confirmatâ,<sup>o</sup> post diem quartum, quām est in Britanniam ventum,<sup>p</sup> naves octodēcim, de quibus<sup>q</sup> suprà demonstratum est, quæ equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solvérunt. Quæ<sup>r</sup> cùm appropinquarent Britanniæ, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla eārum<sup>s</sup> cursum tenere posset,<sup>t</sup> sed aliæ eodem, unde erant profectæ, referrentur; aliæ ad inferiorem partem insulæ,<sup>u</sup> quæ est propius solis occasum,<sup>v</sup> magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur: quæ<sup>w</sup> tamen, anchoris jactis cùm fluctibus completerentur,<sup>x</sup> necessariò adversâ nocte in altum proiectæ, continentem petierunt.

<sup>a</sup> 124, 18.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>l</sup> 39, 6, or 1.

<sup>b</sup> 80, 1.

<sup>g</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>m</sup> § 107, R. X.

<sup>c</sup> § 145, R. & 91, 4.

<sup>h</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>d</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>i</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>o</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)

<sup>e</sup> § 147, R. LXII.

<sup>k</sup> 67, 5, Note.

<sup>p</sup> § 38.

29. Eâdem nocte accidit, ut esset<sup>a</sup> luna plena, <sup>1</sup>qui<sup>b</sup> dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit; <sup>2</sup>nostrisque<sup>c</sup> id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus<sup>d</sup> Cæsar exercitum transportandum curavérat, quasque in aridum<sup>e</sup> subduxérat, aestus coimplébat; et onerarias, <sup>3</sup>quæ ad anchoras erant deligatæ, tempestas<sup>f</sup> afflictabat; neque ulla nostris<sup>g</sup> facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus<sup>g</sup> fractis, reliquæ cùm essent, funibus,<sup>g</sup> anchoris, reliquisque armamentis amissis, ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod<sup>h</sup> necesse erat accidere, totius exercitûs perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant aliæ, quibus reportari possent;<sup>i</sup> et omnia deérant, quæ ad resiciendas eas usui<sup>k</sup> sunt, et, <sup>5</sup>quòd omnibus<sup>l</sup> constabat hiemari in Galliâ oportere, frumentum<sup>6</sup> his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

30. Quibus<sup>m</sup> rebus<sup>n</sup> cognitis, príncipes Britanniæ, qui post prælium factum ad ea, quæ jussérat Cæsar, facienda convenérant, inter se collocuti, cùm equites<sup>n</sup> et naves et frumentum Românis<sup>o</sup> deesse intelligerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quæ hoc erant etiam angustiora, quòd sine impedimentis Cæsar legiōnes transportavérat, optimum factu<sup>p</sup> esse duxerunt, rebelliōne<sup>q</sup> factâ, frumento<sup>q</sup> comeatūque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere, quòd, iis superatis, aut reditu<sup>r</sup> interclūsis, neminem postea belli inferendi causâ in Britanniam transitūrum confidabant. Itaque, rursus conjuratōne<sup>r</sup> factâ, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere cœperunt.

31. At Cæsar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognovérat, tamen et ex eventu navium suārum, <sup>9</sup>et ex eo, quòd obsides dare intermisérant, fore<sup>r</sup> id,<sup>s</sup> quod accidit, suspicabatur.

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>t</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>m</sup> 38, 3.

<sup>b</sup> § 99, Exc. 1, &

<sup>s</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>n</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>37</sup>, 4.

<sup>b</sup> 37, 9, Note. 3.

<sup>o</sup> § 112, R. I.

<sup>c</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, Obs. 1.

<sup>p</sup> 114, 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>k</sup> § 114, Obs. 4.

<sup>q</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

<sup>e</sup> 19, (*locum.*)

<sup>l</sup> § 113, R. & 19.

<sup>r</sup> 100, 12.

Itaque <sup>1</sup> ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat,<sup>a</sup> et, quæ <sup>b</sup> gravissimè afflictæ erant naves, eārum <sup>c</sup> materiâ atque ære ad reliquas reficiendas utebātur, et, quæ ad eas res erant usui,<sup>d</sup> ex continenti comportari jubēbat. Itaque, cùm id summo studio a militib⁹ administrarētur, duodēcim navibus amissis,<sup>2</sup> reliquis <sup>e</sup> ut navigāri commōdē posset, effēcit.

32. <sup>3</sup>Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuetudīne unā frumentum <sup>f</sup> missâ, quæ appellabātur septīma, neque ullā ad id tempus belli suspicīōne interpositâ, cùm pars hominū in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, ii, qui pro portis castrōrum <sup>4</sup> in statiōne erant, Cæsari renunciārunt, pulvērem <sup>5</sup> majōrem, <sup>5</sup>quām consuetūdo ferret,<sup>h</sup> in eā parte vidēri, quam' in partem lēgio iter fecisset. Cæsar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid<sup>g</sup> novi a barbāris initūm <sup>k</sup> consilii, cohortes, quæ <sup>6</sup>in stationib⁹ erant, secum in eam partem proficisci,<sup>l</sup> duas ex reliquis <sup>7</sup> in statiōnem succedēre,<sup>l</sup> reliquas armāri<sup>l</sup> et confestim sese subsēqui<sup>1</sup> jussit. Cùm paulò longius a castris processisset, suos <sup>z</sup> ab hostib⁹ premi,<sup>m</sup> atque ægrē sustinēre, <sup>8</sup>et, confertâ legiōne, ex omnib⁹ partib⁹ tela <sup>g</sup> conjici,<sup>m</sup> anīnum advertit. Nam <sup>9</sup>quōd, omni ex reliquis partib⁹ demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicāti hostes, huc nostros esse ventūros, noctu in silvis delituērant: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo <sup>n</sup> occupātos, subītō adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos <sup>10</sup> incertis ordinib⁹ perturbavērant: simul equitātu<sup>e</sup> atque essēdis<sup>e</sup> circumde-dērant.

33. <sup>11</sup>Genus hoc est ex essēdis pugnæ: primò per omnes partes perequātant, et tela conjiciunt, atque <sup>12</sup> ipso <sup>o</sup> terrōre<sup>e</sup> equōrum, et strepitu rotārum, ordines plerumque perturbant;

<sup>a</sup> § 44, II. 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>k</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>b</sup> 37, 6, Note. 1. &

<sup>f</sup> § 148, R. LXIII.

<sup>l</sup> 90, 4.

43.

<sup>g</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>m</sup> 96, 6.

<sup>c</sup> 19, (navium.)

<sup>h</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>n</sup> § 147, Obs. 5.

<sup>d</sup> § 114, Obs. 4.

<sup>i</sup> 37, 6, Note. 1.

<sup>o</sup> 32, 5.

et cùm se inter equitum turmas <sup>1</sup> insinuavérint, <sup>a</sup> ex essédis desiliunt, et pedibüs præliantur. <sup>2</sup> Aurigæ intērim paulatim ex prælio excēdunt, <sup>3</sup> atque ita curru <sup>b</sup> se collōcant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, <sup>c</sup> expedītum ad suos recep-tum habeant. <sup>d</sup> <sup>4</sup> Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem pedi-tum, in præliis præstant: <sup>5</sup> ac tantum usu quotidiano et ex-er citatiōne efficiunt, uti, in declivi ac præcipiti loco, <sup>6</sup> inci-tatos equos sustinēre, <sup>7</sup> et brevi <sup>e</sup> moderāri ac flectere, et per temōnem percurrere, et in jugo insistere, et inde se in cur-rus citissimè recipere consuērint. <sup>d</sup>

**34.** Quibus <sup>f</sup> rebus, <sup>g</sup> perturbatis nostris novitāte pugnæ, tempore <sup>h</sup> opportunissimo Cæsar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu <sup>i</sup> hostes constitērunt, nostri se ex timōre recepērunt. Quo <sup>k</sup> facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum prælium aliēnum esse tempus arbitratus, <sup>l</sup> suo se loco <sup>g</sup> continuuit, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra legiōnes reduxit. Dum hæc geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discessērunt. Secūtæ sunt <sup>g</sup> continuos complūres dies<sup>m</sup> tempestates, quæ <sup>n</sup> et nostros in castris continērent, <sup>n</sup> et hostem a pugnâ prohibērent. <sup>n</sup> Intērim barbāri nuncios in omnes partes dimisērunt, paucitatemque nostrorum mil-i-tum <sup>o</sup>suis prædicavérunt, et, <sup>10</sup>quanta prædæ faciendæ, <sup>o</sup> atque in perpetuum sui liberandi, <sup>o</sup> facultas darētur, <sup>p</sup> si Romānos castris<sup>q</sup> expulissent, demonstravérunt. His rebus celeriter magnâ multitudine peditatūs equitatūsque coactâ, ad castra venērunt.

**35.** Cæsar, etsi idem, <sup>r</sup> quod superioribus diēbus <sup>h</sup> accidē-rat, fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritāte peri-cūlum effugērent; <sup>s</sup> tamen nactus equites circiter triginta,

<sup>a</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>g</sup> § 136, Obs. 5 (*in.*)

<sup>n</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>b</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (*cum.*) <sup>h</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>o</sup> 112, 5.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>i</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>p</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>k</sup> 38, 5.

<sup>q</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>e</sup> 19, (*tempore.*)

<sup>i</sup> 106, 1.

<sup>r</sup> § 145, R. & 19.

<sup>f</sup> 38.

<sup>m</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>s</sup> § 145, Obs. 6.

quos Commius Atrébas, de quo lantè dictum est,<sup>a</sup> secum transportavérat, legiōnes in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso prælio, diutius nostrōrum milītum impētum hostes ferre non potuērunt, ac terga vertērunt. Quos<sup>b</sup> tanto spatio<sup>c</sup> secūti, quantum<sup>d</sup> cursu<sup>e</sup> et virībus efficēre potuērunt, complūres ex iis occidērunt; deinde, <sup>f</sup> omnībus<sup>f</sup> longē latēque afflictis incensisque, se in castra recepērunt.

36. Eōdem die legāti, ab hostībus missi ad Cæsārem de pace, venērunt. His<sup>g</sup> Cæsar numērum obsidum, quem ante imperavérat, duplicāvit, eosque in continentem addūci<sup>h</sup> jussit, quōd, propinquā<sup>i</sup> die<sup>j</sup> æquinoctii, infirmis navībus,<sup>k</sup> hiēmi<sup>k</sup> navigatiōnem subjiciendam<sup>l</sup> non existimābat. Ipse, idoneam tempestātem nactus, paulò post medium noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolūmes ad continentem pervenērunt; sed ex his onerariæ duæ<sup>m</sup> eosdem, quos reliquæ,<sup>n</sup> portus capēre non potuērunt, et paulo infrā delātæ sunt.

37. <sup>o</sup> Quibus<sup>b</sup> ex navībus cùm essent expositi milītes circiter trecenti, atque in castra contendērent, Morīni, quos Cæsar, in Britanniā proficiscens, pacātos reliquērat, spe<sup>e</sup> prædæ adducti, primò<sup>p</sup> non ita magno suōrum numēro circumstetērunt, ac, <sup>q</sup> si sese interfici nollent,<sup>n</sup> arma ponere jussērunt. Cùm illi, <sup>q</sup> orbe facto, sese defendērent, celeriter ad clamōrem homīnum circiter millia sex convenērunt. Quā<sup>b</sup> re nunciātā, Cæsar omnem ex castris equitātum suis<sup>o</sup> auxilio<sup>o</sup> misit. Intērim nostri milītes impētum hostium sustinuērunt, atque ampliū horis<sup>p</sup> quatuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et, paucis vulnerībus acceptis, complūres ex iis occidērunt. Postea verò quām equitātus noster in conspēctum venit, hostes abjectis armis<sup>10</sup> terga vertērunt, magnusque eōrum numērus est occīsus.

<sup>a</sup> 67, Note. (*a nobis.*) <sup>g</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>m</sup> § 101, Obs. 4, (*ce-*

<sup>b</sup> § 38.

<sup>h</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>p</sup> *ērunt.*)

<sup>c</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>i</sup> § 110, 1

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>d</sup> 44, 3.

<sup>k</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>o</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>e</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>l</sup> 108, 4.

<sup>p</sup> § 120, R.

<sup>f</sup> 19, (*negotiis.*)

38. Cæsar postero die Titum Labiēnum legātum, cum iis legionib⁹, quas ex Britanniā reduxerat, in Mor̄nos, qui rebellōnem fecerant, misit. Qui,<sup>a</sup> cūm propter siccitātes palūdum, quò se recipērent,<sup>b</sup> non habērent<sup>c</sup> (quo perfugio<sup>d</sup> superiōre anno fuérant usi), omnes ferè in potestātem Labiēni venērunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati, qui in Menapiōrum fines legiōnes duxerant, omnibus eōrum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quòd Menapii se omnes <sup>1</sup> in densissimas silvas abdidērant, se ad Cæsarem receperunt. Cæsar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitātes ex Britanniā obsides miserunt; reliquæ neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex litēris Cæsaris diērum <sup>e</sup> viginti supplicatio a Senātu decretā est.

<sup>a</sup> 39, 5.<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.<sup>e</sup> § 106, R. VII.<sup>b</sup> § 140, 5.<sup>d</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

## BOOK V.

### GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Cæsar's second expedition into Britain—Chap. 1-23. II. War with Ambiorix—Chap. 24-54 III. Insurrection among the Tre-viri repressed—Chap. 55-58.

1. <sup>1</sup>Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio, consuli<sup>bis</sup>, discēdens ab hibernis Cæsar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuérat, legātis impērat, quos legionib<sup>us</sup> præfecerat, uti, <sup>2</sup>quamplurīmas<sup>a</sup> possent, hiēme<sup>b</sup> naves ædificandas<sup>c</sup> veteresque reficiendas<sup>c</sup> curārent. Eārum modum formamque demonstrat. <sup>3</sup>Ad celeritātem onerandi subductionesque paulò facit humiliōres, quām quibus<sup>d</sup> in <sup>4</sup>nostro mari uti consuevīimus; atque id eo<sup>e</sup> magis, quòd propter crebras commutatiōnes æstuum minūs magnos ibi fluctus fiéri cognovērat: ad onēra et ad multitudinēm jumentōrum transportandam paulò latiōres, quām quibus<sup>d</sup> in reliquis utimur marībus. Has omnes <sup>5</sup>actuarias impērat fiéri, quam ad rem multūm humilitas <sup>6</sup>adjūvat. Ea, quæ sunt usui <sup>7</sup>ad armandas naves, ex Hispaniā apportāri jubet. Ipse, conventib<sup>us</sup> Galliæ citeriōris peractis, in Illyricum proficisci<sup>t</sup>ur, quòd a Pirustis finitīmam partem Provinciæ incursionib<sup>us</sup> vastāri audiēbat. Eò cùm venisset, civitatib<sup>us</sup> milites impērat, certumque in locum convenire jubet. Quā<sup>g</sup> re nunciātā, Pirustæ legātos ad eum mittunt, qui<sup>h</sup> doceant, nihil eārum rerum publīco factum consilio, sesēque parātos esse demonstrant, <sup>8</sup>omnībus rationib<sup>us</sup> de injuriis satisfacere. Acceptā oratiōne eōrum, Cæsar obsides impērat, eosque ad certam diem addūci jubet: nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitātem persecutūrum de-

<sup>a</sup> § 134, Obs. 6, 3d.

<sup>d</sup> 37.

<sup>g</sup> 38, 5.

<sup>b</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>e</sup> § 132, Obs. 6.

<sup>h</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>c</sup> 108, 4.

<sup>f</sup> § 123, R. & 5. 1.

<sup>i</sup> § 129, R.

monstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut imperav̄erat, arbitros inter civit̄tes dat,<sup>1</sup> qui litem æstiment<sup>a</sup> p̄enamque constituant.<sup>a</sup>

2. His confectis rebus<sup>2</sup> conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficisciatur. Eò cùm venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militum studio, in summâ omnium rerum inopiâ, circiter sexcentas ejus genêris, cujus<sup>b</sup> suprà demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invēnit<sup>3</sup> instructas,<sup>4</sup> neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diēbus deduci possent.<sup>c</sup> Colaudatis militibus<sup>d</sup> atque iis<sup>d</sup> qui negotio præfuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam<sup>e</sup> transmissum<sup>e</sup> esse cognov̄erat, circiter millium passuum<sup>f</sup> triginta a continentali. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum,<sup>g</sup> reliquit: ipse cum legionibus<sup>g</sup> expeditis quatuor et equitiibus octingentis in fines Trevirorum proficisciatur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniēbant, neque imperio<sup>h</sup> parēbant, Germanosque transrhenanos solicitare dicebantur.

3. Hæc civitas longè plurimūm totius Galliæ equitatū valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut suprà demonstravimus, tangit. In eâ civitâto duo<sup>i</sup> de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetrix: ex quibus<sup>j</sup> alter, simul atque<sup>k</sup> de Cæsaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit: se suosque omnes in officio futuros, neque ab amicitia Populi Romani defectuos confirmavit; quæque in Treviris gererentur,<sup>l</sup> ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere,<sup>m</sup> iisque,<sup>d</sup> qui per ætatem in armis esse non poterant, in<sup>n</sup> silvam Arduennam abdītis, quæ ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare<sup>m</sup> instituit. Sed postea quām nonnulli principes ex

<sup>a</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>b</sup> § 99, Exe. 2.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>d</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>f</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>g</sup> § 106.R.VIII.Obs.10.<sup>i</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>h</sup> 112, R. V.

<sup>i</sup> 19, 1.

<sup>k</sup> 124, 18.

<sup>l</sup> § 144, R. LVII.

ea civitāte, et familiaritatē Cingetorīgis adducti et adventu nostri exercitūs perterriti, ad Cæsarem venerunt, et de suis privātim rebus ab eo petere cœperunt,<sup>1</sup> quoniam civitati consulerē non possent: <sup>a</sup> Indutiomārus, veritus<sup>b</sup> ne<sup>c</sup> ab omnibus desererētur, legātos ad Cæsarem mittit; <sup>d</sup> sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quò facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam <sup>e</sup> laberētur. Itaque esse civitatem in suā potestāte, seque, si Cæsar permittēret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suas civitatisque fortūnas ejus fidēi <sup>f</sup> permīssūrum.

4. Cæsar, etsi intelligēbat, quā de causā ea dicerentur,<sup>e</sup> quæque eum res ab instituto consilio deterrēret,<sup>e</sup> tamen, ne æstātem in Trevīris consumēre cogerētur,<sup>f</sup> omnibus ad Britanicum bellum rebus comparātis, Indutiomārum ad se cum ducentis obsidib⁹ venire<sup>g</sup> jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominātim evocavērat, consolātus<sup>h</sup> Indutiomārum hortatusque est, uti in officio permaneret: nihil tamen secius, principib⁹ Trevirōrum ad se convocātis, hos singillātim Cingetorīgi conciliāvit: quod cūm<sup>i</sup> merito ejus ab se fieri intelligēbat, tum<sup>j</sup> magni<sup>k</sup> interesse arbitrabātur, ejus auctoritatem inter suos quamplurimū valere, cuius tam egregiam in se voluntātem perspexisset.<sup>l</sup> Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomārus, <sup>m</sup> suam gratiam inter suos minui; et, qui<sup>m</sup> jam antē inimico in nos animo fuisset, <sup>n</sup> multo gravius hōc dolore exarsit.

5. His rebus constitūtis, Cæsar ad portum Itium cum legionib⁹ pervenit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quæ in Meldis factæ erant, tempestāte rejectas. <sup>o</sup> cursum tenere non potuisse, atque eodem, unde erant profectæ, revertisse: reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus in-

<sup>a</sup> § 140, Obs. 2.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>i</sup> 124, 8.

<sup>b</sup> 106, 1.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 1, 21.

<sup>k</sup> § 113, Exc. I.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, Obs. 6, & 121.

<sup>g</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>l</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>d</sup> 94, 4, & § 145, R.

<sup>h</sup> 115, 1.

<sup>m</sup> § 141, R. III.

structas invēnit. Eòdem totius Galliæ equitātus convēnit, numero<sup>a</sup> millium quatuor, principesque omnibus ex civitatibus: ex quibus per paucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliâ, reliquos obsidum loco<sup>a</sup> secum ducere, decreverat; quod, cùm ipse abesset, motum Galliæ verebatur.

6. Erat unà cum cetèris Dumnorix Æduus, de quo ab nobis<sup>1</sup> antea dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum<sup>2</sup> cupidum rerum<sup>b</sup> novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi<sup>c</sup> magnæ inter Gallos auctoritatis<sup>c</sup> cognovерat. Accedēbat huc, quod jam in concilio Æduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi<sup>d</sup> a Cæsare regnum civitatis deferri: quod<sup>e</sup> dictum Ædui graviter ferēbant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causâ legatos ad Cæsarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Cæsar cognovérat. Ille omnibus primò precibus<sup>f</sup> petere contendit, ut in Galliâ relinqueretur; partim, quod insuetus navigandi<sup>b</sup> mare timēret; partim, quod religionibus sese diceret impediri. Posteaquam id obstinatè sibi<sup>d</sup> negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi ademtā, principes Galliæ solicitare, se vocare singulos horatique cœpit, ut in continent remanerent; metu territare non sine causâ fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate<sup>b</sup> spoliaretur: id esse consilium Cæsaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliæ interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necaret: fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, quod<sup>i</sup> esse ex usu Galliæ intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Hæc a compluribus ad Cæsarem deferebantur.

7. Quâ<sup>c</sup> re cognitâ, Cæsar, quod tantum civitati Æduum dignitatis<sup>k</sup> tribuerat, coercendum<sup>l</sup> atque deterendum,<sup>l</sup> quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuēbat; quod<sup>g</sup> longius ejus amentiam progrēdi vidēbat, prospiciendum,<sup>m</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (de.)

<sup>b</sup> § 107, R. IX.

<sup>c</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>d</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>e</sup> 38.

<sup>f</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>h</sup> § 126, R. V.

<sup>i</sup> 37, 2.

<sup>k</sup> § 106, R. VIII

<sup>l</sup> 108, 4.

<sup>m</sup> 113, 5.

ne quid<sup>a</sup> sibi<sup>b</sup> ac rei publicæ nocere posset. Itaque dies<sup>c</sup> circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod<sup>d</sup> Corus ventus navigatiōnem impediēbat, qui magnam partem<sup>e</sup> omnis temporis in his locis flare consuēvit, dabat opēram, ut in officio Dumnorīgem contineret,<sup>d</sup> nihilo tamen secius omnia ejus consilia<sup>f</sup> cognosceret: tandem, idoneam nactus tempestātem, milites equitesque concēdere naves jubet. At, omnium impedītis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Aduōrum a castris, inscīente Cæsare, domum<sup>e</sup> discedere cœpit. Quā re nunciātā, Cæsar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatū ad eum insequendū mittit, retrahīque<sup>f</sup> impērat: si vim faciat neque<sup>g</sup> pareat, interfici<sup>f</sup> jubet: nihil<sup>h</sup> hunc<sup>h</sup> se absente pro sano factūrum arbitrātus, qui præsentis imperium neglexisset.<sup>i</sup> Ille enim revocātus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorāre cœpit, sæpe clamītans, “liberum se liberæque civitatis<sup>k</sup> esse.” Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt atque hominem interficiunt; at Adui equites ad Cæsarem omnes revertuntur.

8. His rebus gestis, Labiēno in continentē cum tribus legionibus et equitū millib⁹ duōbus relicto, ut portus tueretur<sup>d</sup> et rem frumentariam providēret,<sup>d</sup> quæque in Galliā gererentur<sup>l</sup> cognosceret,<sup>d</sup> consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet,<sup>d</sup> ipse cum quinque legionibus et<sup>l</sup> pari numēro equitū quem in continentē relinquēbat, solis occāsu<sup>m</sup> naves solvit, et, leni Afrīco provectus, mediā circiter nocte<sup>m</sup> vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit, et, longiūs delātus æstu, ortā luce, sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus, æstus commutatiōnem<sup>l</sup> secūtus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insulæ caperet,<sup>d</sup> quā optimum esse egressum superiore æstātē cognovērat. Quā in re admōdum fuit

<sup>a</sup> § 116, Obs. 3.

<sup>e</sup> § 130, 4.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, R. III.

<sup>b</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>f</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>k</sup> § 108, R. XII.

<sup>c</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>g</sup> § 93, 1, (and not.)

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1. 2d.

<sup>h</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>m</sup> § 131, R. XL.

milītum <sup>1</sup> virtus laudanda, qui <sup>2</sup> vectoriis gravibusque navi-  
giis, non intermisso remigandi labōre, longārum navium cur-  
sum adæquārunt. <sup>3</sup> Accessum est <sup>a</sup> ad Britanniam omnībus  
navībus <sup>i</sup> meridiāno ferē tempōre: neque in eo loco hostis est  
visus, sed, ut postea Cæsar ex captīvis compērit, cūm <sup>b</sup> mag-  
næ manus eò convenissent, <sup>b</sup> multitudine navium perterrītæ  
(quæ <sup>4</sup> cum annotīnis privatisque, quas sui quisque commō-  
di <sup>c</sup> fecerat, ampliùs octingentis uno erant visæ tempōre), a  
littōre discessérant ac se in superiōra loca abdidērant.

9. Cæsar, exposito exercitu et loco castris <sup>d</sup> idoneo capto,  
ubi ex captīvis cognōvit, quo in loco hostium copiæ conse-  
dissent, <sup>e</sup> cohortībus decem ad mare relictis et equitībus tre-  
centis, qui <sup>f</sup> præsidio <sup>g</sup> navībus essent, de tertīâ vigiliā ad  
hostes contendit, eo minūs <sup>h</sup> veritus navībus, <sup>h</sup> quòd <sup>i</sup> in littōre  
molli atque aperto deligātas ad anchōram relinquēbat; et  
præsidio <sup>e</sup> navībus Quintum Atrium præfēcit. Ipse, noctu  
progressus millia passuum circiter duodēcim, hostium copias  
conspicātus est. Illi, equitātu <sup>i</sup> atque essēdis ad flumen  
progressi, ex loco superiōre nostros prohibēre et prælium  
committēre cœpērunt. Repulsi ab equitātu, se in silvas ab-  
didērunt, locum nacti, egregiè et natūrā et opere munitum,  
quem domestiци belli, ut videbātur, causā jam antē præpa-  
ravērant: nam crebris arborībus <sup>k</sup> succīsis omnes introītus  
erant <sup>l</sup> præclūsi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnābant, nostrosque  
intra munitiōnes ingrēdi prohibēbant. At milītes legiōnis  
septīmæ, <sup>g</sup> testudīne <sup>k</sup> factā, et aggēre ad munitiōnes adjecto,  
locum cepērunt eosque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis vulneri-  
bus <sup>k</sup> acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longiùs Cæsar prosēqui  
vetuit, et quòd loci natūram ignorābat, et quòd, magnā  
parte diēi consumtā munitiōni <sup>l</sup> castrōrum tempus relinquī  
volēbat.

<sup>a</sup> 67, 5, Note.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>c</sup> § 106, Obs. 3. (*causā.*)

<sup>d</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>f</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>g</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 112, R. XVII.

<sup>i</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (*cum*)

<sup>j</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>k</sup> § 110, R. XV.

10. Postridie ejus diēi<sup>a</sup> mane <sup>1</sup>tripartitò milites equitesque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itinēris<sup>b</sup> progressis, cùm jam extrēmi<sup>c</sup> essent in prospektu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Cæsarem venērunt, qui<sup>d</sup> nunciārent, <sup>2</sup>superiōre nocte, maximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnes naves <sup>3</sup>afflictas<sup>e</sup> atque in littōre ejectas esse; quod neque anchōræ funesque <sup>4</sup>subsistērent, neque nautæ gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: <sup>f</sup> itaque <sup>5</sup>ex eo concursu navium magnum esse <sup>6</sup>incommōdum acceptum.<sup>e</sup>

11. His rebus cognitiis, Cæsar legiōnes equitatumque revocāri atque itinēre desistēre jubet: ipse ad naves revertītur: eādem ferè, quæ ex nuntiis literisque cognovērat, <sup>7</sup> coram perspicit, sic ut, amissis circiter quadraginta navibus, reliquæ tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur.<sup>g</sup> Itaque ex legionibus fabros delēgit, et ex continenti alios accessīri jubet; Labiēno<sup>h</sup> scribit, ut, quām plurimas posset, iis legionibus<sup>i</sup> quæ sint<sup>k</sup> apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi <sup>8</sup>res erat multæ opēræ<sup>l</sup> ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves <sup>9</sup>subdūci<sup>m</sup> et cum castris unā munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consūmit, ne nocturnis<sup>n</sup> quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregiè munitis, easdem copias, quas antè, præsidio navibus reliquit: ipse eādem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eò cùm venisset, magiores jam undique in eum locum copiæ Britannōrum convenērant, <sup>10</sup>summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno,<sup>o</sup> cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen divīdit, quod appellātur Tamēsis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic<sup>p</sup> <sup>11</sup> superiōre tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercessē-

<sup>a</sup> § 135, R. XLVI.<sup>f</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.<sup>1</sup> § 106, R. VII.<sup>b</sup> § 106, R. VIII.<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.<sup>m</sup> 94, 3.<sup>c</sup> Sup. fugientium.<sup>h</sup> § 123, R.<sup>n</sup> 121, Note. 2.<sup>d</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.<sup>i</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.)<sup>o</sup> § 126, R. III.<sup>e</sup> 93, 2.<sup>k</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.<sup>p</sup> § 112, R. IV.

rant: sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello<sup>a</sup> imperioque præfecerant.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, <sup>1</sup> quos<sup>b</sup> natos in insulâ ipsâ, memoriâ proditum dicunt: maritima pars ab iis, qui prædæ ac belli inferendi causâ ex Belgis transierant; qui omnes ferè iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus<sup>c</sup> orti ex civitatibus eò pervenérunt, et <sup>2</sup> bello illato ibi remanserunt atque agros colere cœperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo, <sup>3</sup> creberimaque ædificia, <sup>4</sup> ferè Gallicis<sup>d</sup> consimilia: pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut ære,<sup>e</sup> aut <sup>5</sup> taleis ferreis, ad certum pondus examinatis, pro nummo. Nascitur ibi <sup>6</sup> plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum; sed ejus exigua est <sup>7</sup> copia: ære<sup>e</sup> utuntur importato. <sup>8</sup> Materia cujusque generis, ut in Galliâ, est, præter sagum atque abiëtem. Leporem et gallinam et ansarem gustare, fas non putant; haec tamen alunt <sup>9</sup> animi voluptatisque causâ. <sup>10</sup> Loca sunt temperatiora, quam in Galliâ, <sup>11</sup> remissioribus frigoribus.<sup>f</sup>

13. Insula natûrâ <sup>12</sup> triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus latéris alter angulus, qui est <sup>13</sup> ad Cantium, quo ferè omnes ex Galliâ naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem; inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet circa millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit <sup>14</sup> ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem, quâ ex parte est Hibernia, <sup>15</sup> dimidio<sup>h</sup> minor, ut æstimatur, quam Britannia; <sup>i</sup> <sup>16</sup> sed par spatio<sup>k</sup> transmissus, atque<sup>l</sup> ex Galliâ, est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quæ appellatur <sup>17</sup> Mona; complices præterea minores objectæ insulæ existimantur; de quibus<sup>c</sup> insulis nonnulli scripserunt, <sup>18</sup> dies<sup>m</sup> continuos triginta sub brumâ, esse noctem,<sup>b</sup> Nos nihil de eo percontatiōibus reperiebamus, <sup>19</sup> nisi certis ex aquâ mensuris breviō-

<sup>a</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>e</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>i</sup> § 120, Obs. 2, 2d.

<sup>b</sup> § 145, R. & 91, 4.

<sup>f</sup> 110.

<sup>k</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>c</sup> 37, 6, Note. 1.

<sup>g</sup> 19, (*latus.*)

<sup>l</sup> § 149, Obs. 6.

<sup>d</sup> § 111, R. & 19.

<sup>h</sup> § 132, R. XLIII.

<sup>m</sup> § 131, R. XLI

res esse, quām in continente, noctes videbāmus. Hujus est longitūdo latēris, ut fert illōrum opinio, <sup>1</sup> septingentōrum millium.<sup>a</sup> Tertium est <sup>2</sup> contra septentriōnes, cui parti<sup>b</sup> nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angūlus latēris maxīmē ad Germaniam spectat: huic<sup>c</sup> millia<sup>d</sup> passuum <sup>3</sup> octingenta in longitudinē esse existimātur.<sup>e</sup> Ita omnis insula est in circuītu vicies centum millium passuum.

14. Ex his omnībus longē sunt <sup>4</sup> humanissimi, qui Cantūm incōlunt, quae regio est marītima omnis; neque multum a Galīcā diffērunt consuetudīne. Interiores plerīque frumenta non serunt, sed lacte<sup>f</sup> et carne vivunt, pellibusque<sup>g</sup> sunt vestīti. Omnes verò <sup>5</sup> se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod cōeruleum effīcit colōrem, atque hoc horridiōre sunt in pugnā aspectu: <sup>h</sup> capillōque<sup>i</sup> sunt promisso atque omni parte corpōris rasā, præter caput et labrum superius. Uxōres habent <sup>j</sup> deni duodenīque inter se commūnes, et maxīmē fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum libēris; sed, si qui sunt ex his nati, eōrum habentur libēri, <sup>k</sup> quo<sup>l</sup> primū virgo quæque deducta est.

15. Equites hostium essedariīque acriter prælio cum equitātu nostro in itinēre conflixērunt, <sup>9</sup> tamen ut nostri omnībus partībus superiores fuērint, atque eos in silvas collesque compulērint: sed complurībus interfectis, cupidiūs<sup>l</sup> insecūti, nonnullos ex suis amisērunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentībus nostris atque occupātis in munitiōne castrōrum, subītō se ex silvis ejecērunt, impetūque in eos facto, qui erant in statiōne pro castris collocāti, acriter pugnāvērunt: duabusque <sup>10</sup> submissis cohortībus a Cæsare, atque his primis legiōnum<sup>m</sup> duārum, cùm hæ, per exiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se, <sup>11</sup> constitissent, novo genēre pugnæ perterrītis nostris, per medios audacissimē perrupērunt, seque inde in-

<sup>a</sup> § 132, Obs. 3.

<sup>e</sup> 51.

<sup>1</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (cum)

<sup>b</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>f</sup> § 121, Obs. 2.

<sup>k</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (a.)

<sup>c</sup> § 112, R. II.

<sup>g</sup> § 126, R. V.

<sup>l</sup> 22, 3.

<sup>d</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>m</sup> § 107, R. X.

colūmes recepērunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi, pluribus immissis cohortibus, repelluntur.

16. Toto hoc in genere pugnæ,<sup>1</sup> cùm sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur,<sup>2</sup> intellectum est,<sup>a</sup> nostros<sup>b</sup> propter gravitatem armaturæ, quod neque inséqui<sup>c</sup> cedentes possent, neque ab signis discedere auderent, minùs aptos esse ad hujus genoris hostem; equites<sup>b</sup> autem magno cum periculo dimicare,<sup>c</sup> propterea quod illi etiam consultò plerumque<sup>d</sup> cedarent,<sup>d</sup> et, cùm paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent<sup>e</sup> et pedibus<sup>e</sup> disparsi prælio contendarent. Equestris autem prælia ratio et cedentibus<sup>f</sup> et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut, nunquam<sup>g</sup> conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis<sup>g</sup> præliarentur,<sup>h</sup> stationesque dispositas haberent,<sup>h</sup> atque<sup>i</sup> alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succedarent.<sup>h</sup>

17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constituerunt, rarique se ostendere et<sup>j</sup> lenius, quam pridie, nostros equites prælio laccessere cœperunt. Sed meridie, cùm Cæsar pabulandi causâ tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic,<sup>k</sup> ut ab signis legionibusque non absistarent: Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, repulèrent, neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio<sup>i</sup> confisi equites, cùm post se legiones vidèrent, præcipites hostes egérunt: magnoque eorum numero imperfecto, neque sui colligendi, neque consistendi, aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dedérunt. Ex hâc fugâ protinus, quæ undique convenerant, auxilia discusserunt:<sup>l</sup> neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contendérunt.

<sup>a</sup> 51, 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>g</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>b</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>e</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>c</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>f</sup> 19, & § 123, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 112, R. V.

18. Cæsar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamēsin in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod<sup>a</sup> flumen uno omnino loco<sup>b</sup> pedibus, atque hoc<sup>c</sup> ægrè, transiri potest. Eò cùm venisset, animadvertisit, ad altéram fluminiſ ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas: ripa autem erat<sup>1</sup> acutis sudib⁹ præfixis munīta; ejusdem genēris sub aquā defixæ sudes flumine<sup>d</sup> tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a capti⁹ vis perfugisque, Cæsar, præmisso equitatū, confestim legiōnes subsequi jussit. Sed eā<sup>e</sup> celeritatē atque eo<sup>f</sup> impetu milites ierunt,<sup>2</sup> cùm capite solo ex aquā exstarent,<sup>f</sup> ut hostes impētum legiōnum atquē equitum sustinēre non possent,<sup>g</sup> ripas que dimitterent ac se fugæ mandarent.

19. Cassivellaunus, <sup>3</sup>ut suprà demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentiōnis, <sup>4</sup>dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quatuor essedariōrum relictis, itinera nostra servabat, paululumque<sup>5</sup> ex viā excedēbat, locisque<sup>b</sup> impeditis ac silvestribus sece occultabat, atque iis regionib⁹, quibus<sup>b</sup> nos iter facturos cognovērat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellēbat: et, cùm equitatus noster, liberius<sup>h</sup> prædandi vastandique causā, se in agros effundēret, omnibus viis<sup>i</sup> notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittēbat, et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis configēbat, atque hoc metu latiūs<sup>h</sup> vagari prohibēbat. <sup>6</sup>Relinquēbatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdi<sup>k</sup> Cæsar patet, et tantum<sup>l</sup> in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostib⁹ nocerētur,<sup>k</sup> quantum labore<sup>d</sup> atque itinere legiōnarii milites efficere poterant.

20. Intērim Trinobantes, propè firmissima eārum regiōnum civitas, ex quā Mandubratius adolescens, Cæsaris fidem secūtus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venērat (cujus pater Imanuentius in eā civitate regnum obtinuērat, intersec-

<sup>a</sup> 37, 6, Note. 1.

<sup>e</sup> 28, 1.

<sup>i</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

<sup>f</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>k</sup> § 85, 3.

<sup>c</sup> 19, loco, Sup. (in.)

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>l</sup> § 116, Obs. 3.

<sup>d</sup> 129, R.

<sup>h</sup> 22, 3.

<sup>m</sup> 66, 7.

tusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fugâ mortem vitav rat), leg tos ad C  s rem mittunt, pollicenturque, sese ei dedit ros atque imper ta fact ros: petunt, ut Mandubratium ab injuri  Cassivellauni defendat,<sup>a</sup> <sup>1</sup> atque in civit tem mittat, qui pr  sit <sup>b</sup> imperiumque obtineat.<sup>b</sup> His <sup>c</sup> C  sar imp  rat obs des quadraginta frumentumque exercitui,<sup>d</sup> Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imper ta celeriter fec runt, ob des <sup>e</sup> ad num erum frument que mis runt.

21. Trinobant bus defensis atque ab omni mil tum injuri  <sup>f</sup> prohib tis, Cenimagni, Segonti ci, Ancal tes, Bibr ci, Cassi, legation bus missis sese C  s ri dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non long  ex eo loco opp dum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis <sup>e</sup> paludibusque mun tum, quo<sup>f</sup> satis magnus hom num pecorisque num rus conven rit. (<sup>4</sup> Opp dum autem Britanni vocant, c  m silvas imped tas vallo atque foss  muni runt,<sup>g</sup> qu  incursi nis hostium vitand  caus  conven re consu runt.) E  proficisci t cum legion bus: locum rep rit egregi  nat r  <sup>e</sup> atque op re mun tum; tamen hunc du bus ex part bus oppugn re contendit. Hostes, paulisper mor ti, mil tum nostr rum imp  tum non tul runt, ses que ali  ex parte op di ejec runt. Magnus ibi num rus pec ris repertus, multique in fug  sunt comprehensi atque interficti.

22. Dum h c in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod <sup>h</sup> esse <sup>i</sup> ad mare sup r  demonstrav mus, quibus <sup>j</sup> region bus <sup>k</sup> quatuor reges pr  rant, Cinget rix, Carvilius, Taximag lus, Seg nax, nuncios mittit, atque his imp  rat, utl, coactis omn bus copiis, castra navalia de improv so<sup>l</sup> <sup>6</sup> adoriantur atque oppugnant. Ii c  m ad castra venissent, nostri, erupti ne fact , multis e orum <sup>m</sup> imperfectis, capto etiam nob li duce Lugotor ge, suos incol mes redux runt. Cassivellaunus, hoc pr  lio nunci to, tot detrimentis accep-

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>e</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>i</sup> 37, 1, (regiones.)

<sup>b</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>f</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

<sup>k</sup> § 112, R. I.

<sup>c</sup> § 123, R. & 5, 1.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>l</sup> § 90, 6.

<sup>d</sup> § 110, R. XV.

<sup>h</sup> § 145, R. & 91.

<sup>m</sup> § 107, R. X.

tis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditioне ad Cæsarem mittit. Cæsar, cum statuisse<sup>a</sup> hiemem in continenti propter repentinوس Galliæ<sup>1</sup> motus agere, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facilè extrahi posse intelligeret, obsides imperat, et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis<sup>b</sup> Populo Romano Britannia pendere, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio, neu Trinobantibus bellum faciat.<sup>d</sup>

23. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenerit<sup>2</sup> refectas. His deductis, quod et<sup>e</sup> captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperiérant naves, duabus<sup>4</sup> commealibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, ut ex tanto navium numero, tot<sup>5</sup> navigacionibus, neque hoc, neque superiore anno,<sup>f</sup> ulla omnino navis, quæ milites portaret,<sup>g</sup> desideraretur:<sup>h</sup> at ex iis, quæ inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur,<sup>i</sup> et prioris comitatus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta,<sup>j</sup> per paucæ locum caperent;<sup>k</sup> reliquæ fere omnes rejicerentur.<sup>k</sup> Quas<sup>l</sup> cum aliquamdiu Cæsar frustra expectasset,<sup>a</sup> ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod æquinoctium suberat,<sup>m</sup> necessariò angustius milites collocavit, ac, summâ tranquillitate consecutâ, secundâ initâ cum solvisset vigiliâ, primâ luce terram attulit, omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

24. <sup>10</sup> Subductis navibus, concilioque Gallorum Samoibrivæ<sup>m</sup> peracto, quod eo anno<sup>11</sup> frumentum in Galliâ propter siccitates angustius provenierat, coactus est aliter, ac superioribus annis,<sup>f</sup> exercitum in hibernis collocare, legionesque<sup>12</sup> in plures civitates distribuere: ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Caio Fabio legato dedit; alteram in Nervios

<sup>a</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>e</sup> 124, 1.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>b</sup> § 106, R. VIII.

<sup>f</sup> § 131, R. XL.

<sup>k</sup> Sup. accidit ut.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>g</sup> § 141, R.I. & Obs. 1.

<sup>l</sup> 38.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>m</sup> § 130, R. XXXVI.

Quintio Cicerōni; tertiam in Essuos Lucio Roscio; quartam in Remis cum Tito Labieno in confinio Trevirōrum hiemāre jussit; tres in Belgio collocāvit: his Marcum Crassum, quæstōrem, et Luçium Munatium Plancum et Caium Trebonium, legātos,<sup>a</sup> præfēcit. Unam legiōnem, quam proximè trans Padum conscripsērat, et cohortes quinque in Eburōnes, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorīgis et Cativolci erant, misit. His<sup>b</sup> militib⁹ Quintum Titurium Sabīnum et Lucium Aurunculeum Cottam, legātos,<sup>a</sup> præesse jussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legionib⁹, facillimè inopiæ frumentariæ sese <sup>c</sup> medēri posse existimāvit: atque harum <sup>d</sup> tamen omnium hiberna (præter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dedērat), <sup>e</sup> millibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiōnes collocāset<sup>e</sup> munītaque hiberna cognovisset, in Galliā morāri constituit.

25. Erat in Carnutib⁹ <sup>f</sup> summo loco<sup>f</sup> natus Tasgetius, cuius majores in suā civitāte regnum obtinuerant. Huic Cæsar, pro ejus virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulāri ejus operā fuērat usus, majōrum locum restituērat. <sup>g</sup> Tertium jam hunc annum<sup>g</sup> regnantem inimici palam, multis etiam ex civitāte auctoribus, interfecērunt. Defertur ea res ad Cæsarem. Ille veritus, <sup>h</sup> quod ad plures pertinēbat, ne<sup>h</sup> civitas eōrum impulsu deficēret, Lucium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes profici sci jubet, ibique hiemāre; quorumque opērā cognovērit Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittēre. Intērim ab omnibus legātis quæstoribusque, quibus legiōnes transdidērat, certior factus est, <sup>i</sup> in hiberna perventum<sup>i</sup> locumque hibernis esse munītum.

26. Diēbus circiter quindēcim, quibus in hiberna ventum est,<sup>j</sup> initium repenti tumultūs ac defectiōnis ortum est ab

<sup>a</sup> § 97, Obs. 2.

<sup>d</sup> 19, (*legiōnum.*)

<sup>g</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>b</sup> § 112, R. I.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, Obs. 6&121, 6.

<sup>c</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>f</sup> § 119, R.

<sup>i</sup> 67, 5, Note.

Ambiorige et Cativolco: <sup>1</sup> qui<sup>a</sup> cùm ad fines regni sui Sabino<sup>b</sup> Cottaeque præstò fuissent, frumentumque in hiberna com-portavissent, Indutiomari Treviri nunciis impulsi, suos con-citavérunt, subitòque oppressis lignatoribus, magnâ manu castra oppugnatum<sup>c</sup> venérunt. Cùm celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent, atque, unâ ex parte His-pánis equitibus emissis, equestri prælio<sup>d</sup> superiôres fuissent, <sup>2</sup> desperâtâ re, hostes suos ab oppugnatiōne reduxérunt. Tum suo more conclamavérunt, utì aliqui ex nostris<sup>e</sup> ad collo-quium prodirent; habere se, quæ<sup>f</sup> de re communi dicere vellent,<sup>f</sup> quibus rebus controversias<sup>g</sup> minui posse sperarent.<sup>f</sup>

27. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causâ Caius Arpineius, eques Românus, familiaris Quintii Titurii et Quintus Ju-nius ex Hispaniâ quidam, qui jam antè<sup>h</sup> missu Cæsaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consuevérat: apud quos Ambiorix<sup>i</sup> ad hunc modum locutus est: <sup>j</sup> “Sese pro Cæsaris in se benefi-ciis<sup>k</sup> plurimum ei confitéri debere, quod ejus operâ stipen-dio<sup>l</sup> liberatus esset,<sup>f</sup> quod Aduatucis finitîmis suis pendere consuêsset:<sup>f</sup> quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Cæsare remissi essent, quos Aduatuci, obsidum numero missos, apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent:<sup>f</sup> neque id, quod fecerit<sup>m</sup> de oppugnatiōne castrorum, aut judicio<sup>n</sup> aut volun-tate suâ fecisse,<sup>i</sup> sed coactu<sup>o</sup> civitatis;<sup>p</sup> suaque esse ejus-modi imperia, ut non minus haberet<sup>k</sup> juris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati<sup>q</sup> porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinæ Gallorum conjuratiōni resistere non potuérit: id se facile<sup>r</sup> ex humilitate suâ probare posse, quod non adeo sit<sup>f</sup> imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis<sup>s</sup> Populum Ro-mânum se superare posse confidat: sed<sup>t</sup> esse Galliæ com-mune consilium; omnibus hibernis Cæsaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio altéræ legiōni<sup>u</sup> subsidio

<sup>a</sup> 39, 6.<sup>e</sup> § 107, Obs. 8.<sup>i</sup> § 145, Obs. 3.<sup>b</sup> § 135, R. XLVII.<sup>f</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.<sup>k</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.<sup>c</sup> § 148, 1.<sup>g</sup> § 126, R. V.<sup>l</sup> § 112, R. II.<sup>d</sup> § 128, R.<sup>h</sup> § 129, R.<sup>m</sup> § 114. R.

venire posset: <sup>a</sup> non facile Gallos Gallis <sup>b</sup> negare potuisse, præsertim cum de recuperandâ communâ libertate consilium initum videretur. <sup>1</sup> Quibus <sup>c</sup> quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere se nunc ratiōnem officii pro beneficiis Cæsaris; monere, orare Titurium <sup>d</sup> <sup>2</sup> pro hospitio, ut suæ ac milītum saluti consulat: magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; <sup>e</sup> hanc <sup>f</sup> affore biduo. <sup>3</sup> Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne <sup>g</sup> prius, quam finiti sentiant, <sup>h</sup> eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter <sup>i</sup> millia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter <sup>j</sup> paulò amplius ab his absit. Illud se polliceri et jure-jurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines suos datūrum; <sup>k</sup> quod <sup>l</sup> cum faciat, et <sup>m</sup> civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et <sup>n</sup> Cæsari pro ejus meritis gratiam referre.” Hac oratione habitâ, discedit Ambiorix.

28. Arpineius et Junius, quæ audiērint, ad legatos defērunt. Illi, repentinâ re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, non tamen negligenda existimabant: maximèque hac re permovebantur, quod, civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum suâ sponte Populo Romano bellum facere ausam, <sup>o</sup> vix erat credendum. <sup>p</sup> Itaque ad consilium rem defērunt magnaque inter eos <sup>q</sup> existit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni milītum et primorum ordinum centuriōnes nihil temere agendum, <sup>r</sup> neque ex hibernis injussu Cæsaris discedendum, <sup>s</sup> existimabant: “quantasvis magnas etiam copias Germanorum <sup>t</sup> sustinéri posse munītis hibernis,” docēbant: <sup>u</sup> “rem esse testimonio, <sup>v</sup> quod primum hostium impētum, multis ultro vulneribus illatis, fortissimè sustinuerint: <sup>w</sup> re frumentariâ non premi: interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Cæsare conventura subsidia

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>e</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>k</sup> 38, 4.

<sup>b</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>f</sup> § 145, R, & 19.

<sup>l</sup> 124, 1.

<sup>c</sup> 39, & § 112, R. III.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>m</sup> 108.

<sup>d</sup> § 124, R. &

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>n</sup> § 114, R. & Obs. 4.

§ 116, Exp.

<sup>i</sup> 27, 10, Obs.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 6.

postrēmo, “quid esse <sup>1</sup>levius aut turpius, quām, <sup>2</sup>auctōre hoste,<sup>a</sup> de summis rebus capēre consilium?”

29. Contra ea Titurius, .“serò factūros,” <sup>3</sup>clamitābat, “cum majōres hostium manus, adjunctis Germānis, conveniissent: aut cùm aliquid calamitatis in proxīmis hibernis esset acceptum, brevem consulendi esse occasiōnem: <sup>4</sup>Cæsarem <sup>b</sup> arbitrāri profectum <sup>c</sup> in Italiam: neque aliter Carnūtes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse captūros, neque Eburōnes, si ille adesset, tantā cum contentiōne nostri ad castra ventūros esse: <sup>5</sup>non hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectare; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germānis dolōri Ario-visti mortem <sup>b</sup> et superiōres nostras victorias: <sup>b</sup> <sup>d</sup>ardēre Galliam, <sup>b</sup> tot contumeliis acceptis sub Popūli Romāni imperium redactam, superiōre gloriā rei militāris extinctā.” Postrēmo, “quis hoc sibi <sup>d</sup> persuadēret, <sup>e</sup> sine certā re Ambiorīgem ad ejusmōdi consilium descendisse <sup>c</sup>? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: <sup>f</sup> si nil sit durius, nullo pericūlo ad proxīmam legiōnem perventūros; si Gallia omnis cum Germānis consentiat, <sup>g</sup> unam esse in celeritatē posītam salūtem. Cottæ quidem atque eōrum, qui dissentiērent, consilium quem habēret <sup>c</sup> exītum? In quo si non <sup>10</sup> præsens pericūlum, at certè longinquā obsidiōne <sup>f</sup> fames esset pertimescenda.”

30. <sup>11</sup>Hâc in utramque partem disputatiōne habitā, cùm a Cottâ <sup>12</sup>primisque ordinib⁹ acriter resisterētur, <sup>g</sup> <sup>13</sup>“Vincite,” inquit, “si ita vultis,” Sabīnus, <sup>14</sup>et id clariōre voce, <sup>f</sup> ut magna pars militum exaudīret: “neque is sum,” inquit, “qui <sup>h</sup> gravissimē ex vobis mortis pericūlo terrear: <sup>15</sup>hi sapient, et si gravius quid accidērit, abs te ratiōnem reposcent: qui, <sup>i</sup> si per te liceat, perendīo die cum proxīmis hibernis conjuncti, commūnem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, <sup>16</sup>nec rejecti et relegāti longē ab cetēris aut ferro aut fame intereant.

<sup>a</sup> 110, 1.

<sup>d</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>g</sup> 67.

<sup>b</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>h</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 2d, & 40.

<sup>c</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>f</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, R. III. & Exp.

31. <sup>1</sup> Consurgitur<sup>a</sup> ex consilio; comprehendunt <sup>2</sup> utrumque et orant, “ne suâ dissensiône et pertinaciâ rem in sumum periculum deducant:<sup>b</sup> facilem esse rem, seu maneant,<sup>c</sup> seu proficiscantur,<sup>c</sup> si modò unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contrà in dissensiône nullam se salûtem perspicere.” <sup>3</sup> Res disputatiône ad medium noctem perducitur. Tandem <sup>4</sup> dat Cotta permotus manus; supèrat sententia Sabini. <sup>5</sup> Pronunciatur,<sup>d</sup> primâ luce itûros: consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cùm sua quisque miles circumspicere,<sup>e</sup> quid secum portare posset,<sup>e</sup> quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquerê cogeretur.<sup>e</sup> <sup>7</sup> Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et <sup>8</sup> vigiliis periculum augeretur. Primâ luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, <sup>9</sup> ut quibus<sup>f</sup> esset persuasum,<sup>g</sup> non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum,<sup>h</sup> longissimo agmine<sup>i</sup> maximisque impedimentis.

32. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectiône eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipartito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco, a<sup>k</sup> millibus passuum circiter duobus, Romanorum adventum expectabant: et, cùm <sup>10</sup> se major pars agminis in magnam convallem demisset, ex utrâque parte ejus vallis subito se ostenderunt, novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris<sup>j</sup> loco prælium committere cœperunt.

33. Tum demum Titurius, <sup>11</sup>ut qui<sup>f</sup> nihil antè providisset, trepidare,<sup>m</sup> concursare, cohortesque disponere; <sup>12</sup> hæc tamen ipsa timide atque ut<sup>n</sup> eum omnia deficere viderentur: quod plerumque iis<sup>p</sup> accidere consuevit, qui <sup>13</sup> in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui<sup>q</sup> cogitasset, hæc posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis

<sup>a</sup> 67, 5. Note.

<sup>f</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>1</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>g</sup> § 141, Obs. 4.

<sup>m</sup> § 144, Obs. 6.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>h</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>n</sup> § 140, 1, 2d, (ita.)

<sup>d</sup> 51, 2.

<sup>i</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>o</sup> 37, 9, Note. 3.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>k</sup> § 132, Obs. 5.

<sup>p</sup> § 112, R. IV.

<sup>1</sup> auctor non fuisset, nullā in re commūni salūti<sup>a</sup> deērat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militib⁹, imperatōris; et in pugnā, militis officia præstābat. Cùmque propter longitūdinem agmīnis<sup>2</sup> minūs facilē per se omnia obire, et, quid quoque loco<sup>c</sup> faciendum esset,<sup>b</sup> providēre possent,<sup>3</sup> jussērunt pronuntiāre, ut impedimenta relinquērent atque<sup>4</sup> in orbem consistērent. Quod<sup>d</sup> consilium etsi in ejusmōdi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen<sup>5</sup> incommōdē accidit: nam et nostris militib⁹ spem minuit, et hostes ad pugnam alacriōres effēcit, quòd non sine summo timōre et desperatiōne id factum videbātur. Præterea accidit, quod<sup>f</sup> fieri necesse erat, ut<sup>6</sup> vulgō milites ab signis discederent,<sup>h</sup> quæ quisque eōrum<sup>g</sup> carissīma habēret<sup>i</sup> ab impedimentis petere atque abripere properāret,<sup>h</sup> clamōre ac fletu omnia complerentur.<sup>h</sup>

34. At<sup>s</sup> barbāris<sup>a</sup> consilium non defuit: nam duces eōrum totā acie pronuntiāre jussērunt, “ne quis ab loco discederet<sup>9</sup> illōrum<sup>k</sup> esse prædam, atque illis reservāri, quæcumque Romāni reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoriā posita existimārent.”<sup>10</sup> Erant et virtūte et numēro pugnando<sup>l</sup> pares nostri, tamen etsi ab duce et a fortūnā deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte ponēbant, et, quoties quæque cohors procurrēret, ab eā parte magnus hostium numērus cadēbat. Quā<sup>d</sup> re animadversā, Ambiōrix pronuntiāri jubet, ut procul tela conjiciant, neu propiūs accēdant, et, quam in partem Romāni impētum secērint,<sup>11</sup> cedant (levitāte armōrum et quotidīnā exercitatiōne<sup>12</sup> nihil iis nocēri posse<sup>m</sup>): rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

35. Quo<sup>d</sup> præcepto ab iis diligentissimē observāto, cùm quæpiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impētum fecerat, hostes velocissimē refugiēbant. Intērim eam partem nudāri necesse erat et ab latēre aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cùm

<sup>a</sup> § 112, R. I.

<sup>e</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>f</sup> 37, 9, Note. 3.

<sup>k</sup> § 108, R. XII.

<sup>c</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)

<sup>g</sup> § 107, R. X.

<sup>l</sup> § 128, R,

<sup>d</sup> 38.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>m</sup> 66, & 68, 2.

in eum locum, unde erant progressi, reverti cœperant, et ab iis, qui cessérant, et ab iis, qui proximi<sup>a</sup> stetérant, circumveniebantur; sin autem<sup>1</sup> locum tenēre vellent, nec virtuti<sup>b</sup> locus relinquebātur, neque ab tantâ multitudine conjecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis, resistebant et, magnâ parte diēi consumtâ, cùm a primâ luce<sup>2</sup> ad horam octavam pugnarētur, nihil, quod ipsis<sup>c</sup> esset indignum, committēbant. Tum Tito Balventio,<sup>d</sup> qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnæ auctoritatis,<sup>3</sup> utrumque femur tragulâ transjicitur. Quintus Lucanius, ejusdem ordinis,<sup>e</sup> fortissimè pugnans, dum circumvento filio<sup>f</sup> subvenit, interficitur: Lucius Cotta, legatus, omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans,<sup>g</sup> in adversum os fundâ vulnerātur.

36. His rebus permotus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpr̄tem sūm, Cneium Pompeium, ad eum mittit, rogatum,<sup>g</sup> ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: “si velit secum collōqui, licere; sperare, a multitudine impetrari posse, quod<sup>h</sup> ad milītum salūtem pertineat;<sup>i</sup> ipsi<sup>k</sup> vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se<sup>l</sup> suam fidem interponere.” Ille cum Cottâ saucio communicat, “si videātur, pugnâ ut excēdant et cum Ambiorige unâ colloquantur: sperare, ab eo de suâ ac milītum salûte impetrare posse.” Cotta se ad armatum hostem itūrum negat<sup>j</sup> atque in eo constituit.

37. Sabinus, quos<sup>g</sup> in præsentia tribunos milītum circum se habēbat et primorum ordinum centuriōnes, se sequi jubet, et, cum proprius Ambiorigem<sup>m</sup> accessisset, jussus arma abjicere, imperatum facit, suisque, ut idem faciant, impērat. Intērim, dum de conditionibus inter se agunt, longiorque

<sup>a</sup> § 98, Obs. 10.

<sup>e</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>b</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>f</sup> § 112, Obs. 5, 2d.

<sup>k</sup> 66, 7.

<sup>c</sup> § 119, R.

<sup>g</sup> § 148, 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 110, Obs. 1.

<sup>h</sup> 37, 2.

<sup>m</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)

consultò ab Ambiorīge instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more<sup>1</sup> victoriam conclāmant atque ululatum tollunt, impetuque in nostros facto, ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maximā parte militum, reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi: ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cùm magnā multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum projecit, ipse pro castris fortissimè pugnans occiditur. <sup>2</sup> Illi ægrè ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent: noctu<sup>3</sup> ad unum<sup>a</sup> omnes, desperatā salūte, se ipsi<sup>b</sup> interficiunt. Pauci ex prælio elapsi, incertis itineribus<sup>c</sup> per silvas ad Titum Labiēnum legatum in hiberna pervenient atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

38. Hac victoriā<sup>e</sup> sublatus Ambiorix, statim cum equitatu in Aduatūcos, qui erant ejus regno<sup>d</sup> finiti, proficisciatur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque se subsequi jubet. Re demonstratā, Aduatucisque concitatīs, postero die in Nervios pervenit, hortaturque, “ne sui<sup>e</sup> in<sup>f</sup> perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi<sup>g</sup> Romānos, pro iis, quas accepērint,<sup>h</sup> injuriis, occasionem dimittant: imperfectos esse<sup>i</sup> legatos duo magnamque partem exercitus interisse”<sup>i</sup> demonstrat; <sup>k</sup>“nihil esse negotii, subito oppressam legiōnem, quæ cum Cicerōne hiemet,<sup>k</sup> interfici; <sup>l</sup> se ad eam rem profitetur adjutorem.”<sup>m</sup> Facile hac oratione Nerviis persuadet.

39. Itaque, confestim dimisis nunciis ad Ceutrōnes, Gruarios, Levācos, Pleumoxios, Geidūnos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt, cogunt, et de improviso ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum famā de Titurii morte perlata. <sup>n</sup>Huic quoque accidit, quod<sup>m</sup> fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionis-

<sup>a</sup> 19, (*hominem.*)

<sup>e</sup> 112, 5.

<sup>i</sup> 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2.

<sup>b</sup> 33, 1.

<sup>f</sup> § 90, 6.

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>c</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>g</sup> 112, 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>m</sup> 37, 9, Note 3.

que causā in silvas discessissent,<sup>a</sup> repentinō equitum adventu interciperentur.<sup>b</sup> His circumventis, magnā manu Eburōnes, Nervii, Aduatūci atque horum omnium socii et cliētes, legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt: nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum condescendunt. <sup>1</sup> Ægrē is dies sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritāte ponēbant, atque, hanc adepti<sup>c</sup> victoriam, in perpetuum se fore viciōres<sup>d</sup> confidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Cæsārem confestim ab Cicerōne litéræ, magnis<sup>2</sup> propositis præmiis, si pertulissent. Obsessis omnibus viis, missi<sup>e</sup> intercipiuntur. Noctu ex eā materiā, quam munitiōnis causā comportavērānt, <sup>3</sup> turres admōdum centum et viginti excitantur incredibili celeritāte: quæ<sup>f</sup> deesse opēri<sup>g</sup> videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die, multo majoribus copiis coactis, castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ab nostris eādem ratiōne,<sup>h</sup> quā pridie, resistitūr: <sup>i</sup> hoc idem deinceps reliquis fit diēbus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad labōrem intermittitūr: non ægris,<sup>k</sup> non vulnerātis, facultas quiētis datur: quæcuīque<sup>l</sup> ad proxīmi diēi oppugnatiōnem opus sunt, noctu comparantur: multæ<sup>4</sup> præustæ sudes, magnus muralium pilōrum numērus instituitur; <sup>5</sup> turres contabulantur, pinnæ loricæque ex cratībus attexuntur. Ipse Cicēro, <sup>6</sup> cùm tenuissimā valetudinē<sup>m</sup> esset, ne nocturnum<sup>n</sup> quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut<sup>o</sup> ultrō militūm concursu ac vocībus<sup>7</sup> sibi<sup>p</sup> parcēre cogerētur.

41. Tunc duces principesque Nerviōrum, qui<sup>8</sup> aliquem sermōnis adītum causamque amicitiæ cū Cicerōne habēbant, collōqui sese velle dicunt. <sup>9</sup> Factā potestāte, eādem, quæ Ambiōrix cum Titurio egērat, commemorant, “omnem esse in armis Galliam, Germānos Rhenum transisse, Cæsār-

<sup>a</sup> § 141, R. I.

<sup>f</sup> 37, 2.

<sup>l</sup> 37, 8, Note. 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>g</sup> § 112, R. I.

<sup>m</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>c</sup> 105, 1.

<sup>h</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>n</sup> 121, Note. 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 103, R.

<sup>i</sup> 67, 1.

<sup>o</sup> § 140, 1, 1st, (ita.)

<sup>e</sup> 19, (*homines*.)

<sup>k</sup> § 126, R. III. & 19.

<sup>p</sup> § 112, R. V.

is reliquorumque hiberna oppugnāri." Addunt etiam de Sabīni morte. <sup>1</sup> Ambiorīgem ostentant fidēi faciendæ causā: "errāre <sup>2</sup> eos" dicunt, "si quicquam ab his præsidii sperent," qui suis rebus <sup>b</sup> diffidant; <sup>c</sup> sese tamen <sup>3</sup> hoc esse in Cicērō-nem Populumque Romānum animo, <sup>d</sup> ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent<sup>m</sup> atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinē nolint: <sup>n</sup> <sup>4</sup> licēre illis <sup>e</sup> incolubus per se ex hibernis discedere, et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficiisci." Cicēro ad hæc unum modò respondit. "Non esse consuetudinē Popūli Romāni, ullam accipere ab hoste armāto conditiō-nem: si ab armis discedere velint, <sup>a</sup> se <sup>f</sup> <sup>g</sup> adjutōre utantur, legatosque ad Cæsārem mittant: <sup>g</sup> sperāre, <sup>h</sup> pro ejus justitiā, quæ petiērint, <sup>c</sup> impetratūros."

42. Ab hâc spe repulsi Nervii, vallo <sup>h</sup> pedum undēcim et fossā pedum quindēcim hiberna cingunt. Hæc et superiō-rum annōrum consuetudine <sup>h</sup> a nostris cognovērant, et, quos-dam de exercitu nacti captīvos, ab his docebantur: <sup>i</sup> sed, nullā ferramentōrum copiā, <sup>j</sup> quæ sunt ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis <sup>h</sup> cespītem circumcidere, manibus <sup>h</sup> <sup>k</sup> sagulisque <sup>l</sup> ter-ram exhaustū cogebantur. Quā <sup>k</sup> quidem ex re hominū multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minūs horis tribus <sup>10</sup> millium decem in circuītu munitiōnem perfecērunt: reliquisque diē-bus turres ad altitudinē valli, <sup>11</sup> falces testudinesque, quas iīdem captīvi docuērant, parāre ac facere cœpērunt.

43. Septīmo oppugnatiōnis die, maxīmo coorto vento, <sup>12</sup> ferventes fusili ex argillā <sup>l</sup> glandes fundis et <sup>13</sup> servefacta jacūla in casas, quæ more <sup>h</sup> Gallīco stramentis erant tectæ, jacere cœpērunt. Hæ celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et venti magnitudine <sup>h</sup> in omnem castrōrum locum <sup>14</sup> distulērunt. Hostes, maxīmo clamōre <sup>h</sup> insecūti, quasi partā jam atque exploratā victoriā, turres testudinesque <sup>15</sup> agere et scalis val-

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 2.

<sup>e</sup> 66, 2.

<sup>i</sup> 110, 1.

<sup>b</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>f</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>k</sup> 38.

<sup>c</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>g</sup> § 139, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 128, Obs. 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>h</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>m</sup> § 140. 1. 1st.

lum ascendere cœperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea<sup>a</sup> præsentia animi fuit, ut, cùm undique flammā torrerentur,<sup>b</sup> maximāque telorum multitudine premerentur,<sup>b</sup> suāque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortūnas conflagrare intelligerent<sup>b</sup> non modò<sup>c</sup> demigrandi causā de vallo decederet<sup>c</sup> nemo, sed pæne ne respiceret<sup>c</sup> quidem quisquam; ac tum omnes<sup>d</sup> acerrimè fortissimèque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris<sup>d</sup> longè gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit even-  
tum, ut eo die maximus hostium numerus vulneraretur<sup>c</sup> at-  
que interficeretur, ut<sup>e</sup> se sub ipso vallo constipavérant<sup>f</sup> re-  
cessumque primis<sup>f</sup> ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem in-  
teriorissimā flammā, et quodam loco<sup>g</sup><sup>h</sup> tūrri<sup>b</sup> adactā et contin-  
gente vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnes ex eo, quo<sup>g</sup> stabant,<sup>i</sup>  
loco recesserunt suosque omnes removērunt; nutu<sup>k</sup> vocibus-  
que hostes, "si introīre vellent," vocare cœperunt,<sup>l</sup> quorum  
progrēdi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus<sup>h</sup>  
conjectis<sup>6</sup> deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimi viri centuriōnes,<sup>j</sup> qui  
jam primis ordinib⁹ appropinquārent, Tito Pulfio et Lucius  
Varēnus. Hi perpetuas controversias inter se habebant,  
quinam anteferrētur,<sup>m</sup> omnibusque annis de loco summis  
simultatib⁹ contendēbant. Ex iis Pulfio, cùm acerrimè  
ad munitiōnes pugnaretur, "Quid dubitas," inquit, "Va-  
rēne? aut quem locum probandae virtutis tuæ<sup>n</sup> spectas? hic,  
hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabit." Hæc cùm dix-  
isset,<sup>b</sup> procēdit extra munitiōnes,<sup>o</sup> quāque pars hostium con-  
fertissima visa est, in eam irrumpit. Ne Varēnus quidem  
tum vallo sese continet, sed omnium veritus existimatiōnem  
subsequitur. Tum, mediocri spatio<sup>b</sup> relicto, Pulfio pilum  
in hostes mittit atque unum ex multitudine<sup>o</sup> procurrentem  
transjicit, quo<sup>b</sup> percusso et exanimato,<sup>11</sup> hunc scutis protē-

<sup>a</sup> 28, 1.<sup>e</sup> § 140, Obs. 1.<sup>i</sup> § 44, II. 2.<sup>b</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.<sup>f</sup> § 123, R. & 19.<sup>k</sup> § 129, R.<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.<sup>g</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)<sup>l</sup> § 112, R. IV.<sup>d</sup> § 111, R.<sup>h</sup> 109, 2.<sup>m</sup> § 140, 5.

gunt hostes, <sup>1</sup> in illum tela universi conjiciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulfioni<sup>a</sup> et verūtum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti<sup>b</sup> dextram moratur manum; impedītum<sup>c</sup> hostes circumsistunt. <sup>2</sup> Succurrit inimicus illi<sup>d</sup> Varēnus et laboranti<sup>e</sup> subvenit. Ad <sup>3</sup> hunc se confestim a Pulfione omnis multitudo convertit, <sup>4</sup> illum verūto transfixum arbitrantur. Occursat ociūs gladio cominusque rem gerit Varēnus atque, uno imperfecto, reliquos paulum propellit: dum cupidiūs instat, <sup>5</sup> in locum dejectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulfio atque ambo incolūmes, compluribus interfectis, summā cum laude sese intra munitiōnes recipiunt. Sic fortūna <sup>6</sup> in contentiōne et certamīne utrumque versavit, ut alter altéri<sup>d</sup> inimicus auxilio<sup>f</sup> salutīque esset, neque dijudicāri posset, uter utri<sup>g</sup> virtute<sup>h</sup> anteferendus videretur.

45. <sup>7</sup> Quanto<sup>i</sup> erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maximè quod, magnā parte militum confectā vulneribus, res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenērat, tanto<sup>j</sup> crebriores litræ nuntiique ad Cæsarem mittebantur: quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciātu necabatur. Erat <sup>k</sup> unus intus Nervius, nomine Vertico,<sup>g</sup> loco natus honesto, qui a primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfugērat, suamque ei fidem præstiterat. Hic <sup>l</sup> servok spe libertatis magnisque persuādet præmiis, ut literas ad Cæsarem defērat. Has ille in jaculo illigātas effert, et, Gallus inter Gallos sine ullā suspiciōne versatus, ad Cæsarem pervenit. Ab eo<sup>l</sup> de <sup>11</sup> periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

46. Cæsar, acceptis litrēis <sup>12</sup> horā circiter undecimā diēi, statim nuncium in Bellovacos ad Marcum Crassum quæs-

<sup>a</sup> § 110, Obs. 1,

<sup>e</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>i</sup> § 132, R. XLIII. Obs.

<sup>b</sup> 19, (*ei,*) & <sup>a</sup>.

<sup>f</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>6</sup>, & 44, 8, & 47.

<sup>c</sup> 19, (*eum.*)

<sup>g</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>k</sup> 63, & § 123, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>l</sup> 67, 1.

tōrem mittit; cuius hiberna abērant ab eo millia passuum v*is* ginta quinque. Jubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci,<sup>a</sup> ce leriterque ad se venīre. Exiit cum nuncio Crassus, Altērum<sup>b</sup> ad Caium Fabium legātū mittit, ut in Atrebatiū fines legiōnem addūcat,<sup>c</sup> <sup>1</sup> quā sibi<sup>d</sup> iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēno,<sup>2</sup> si reipublicæ commōdō facere posset, cum legiōne ad fines Nerviōrum veniat:<sup>c</sup> reliquam partem exercitūs, quōd paulo abērat longiūs, non putat expectandam;<sup>e</sup> equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis cogit.

47. Horā circiter tertiā ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die millia<sup>f</sup> passuum viginti progređitur. Crassum Samarobrīvæ<sup>g</sup> præficit, legionemque ei<sup>g</sup> attribuit, quōd ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsides civitatum,<sup>3</sup> literas publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eō<sup>4</sup> tolerandæ hiēmis causā devexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, non ita multum morātus, in itinēre cum legiōne occurrat. Labiēnus, interitu Sabīni et cæde cohortium cognitā, cùm omnes ad eum Trevirōrum copiæ venissent,<sup>h</sup> veritus, ne,<sup>i</sup> si ex hibernis fugæ similem profectiōnem fecisset, hostium impētum sustinēre non posset, præsertim quos<sup>k</sup> recenti victoriā efferri sciret, literas Cæsari remittit, quanto cum pericūlo legiōnem ex hibernis eductūrus esset:<sup>l</sup> <sup>5</sup> rem gestam in Eburonib⁹ perscribit: docet, omnes peditatūs equitatūsque copias Trevirōrum tria millia<sup>f</sup> passuum longè ab suis castris consedisse.

48. Cæsar, consilio ejus probāto, etsi,<sup>6</sup> opiniōne<sup>m</sup> trium legiōnum dejectus, ad duas rediērat, tamen unum communis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte ponēbat. Venit magnis itinerib⁹ in Nerviōrum fines. Ibi ex captīvis cognoscit, quæ apud Cicerōnem gerantur,<sup>l</sup> quantōque in pericūlo res sit.<sup>l</sup> Tum cuidam<sup>g</sup> ex equitib⁹ Gallis magnis præmiis persuādet,

<sup>a</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>c</sup> 108, 4.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, Obs. 6.

<sup>b</sup> 19, (*nuncium.*)

<sup>f</sup> § 132, R.

<sup>k</sup> § 145, R. & 91, 4.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>g</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>d</sup> 113, 5.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>m</sup> § 136, R. LII.

ut ad Ciceronem epistolam defērat. Hanc Græcis conscrip-  
tam litēris mittit, ne, interceptâ epistolâ, nostra ab hostib⁹  
consilia cognoscantur.<sup>a</sup> Si adīre non possit, monet, ut tra-  
gūlam cum epistolâ,<sup>b</sup> ad amentum deligatā, intra munitiō-  
nes castrorum abjiciat.<sup>b</sup> In litēris scribit, se cum legionib⁹  
profectum celeriter affōre: hortātur, ut pristinam virtūtem  
retineat. Gallus, periculum veritus, ut erat præceptum, tra-  
gūlam mittit. Hæc<sup>c</sup> casu ad turrim adhæsit, neque<sup>c</sup> ab  
nostris biduo animadversa; tertio die a quodam milite con-  
spicitur; demta ad Ciceronem defertur. Ille<sup>d</sup> perlectam in  
conventu militum recitat, maximāque omnes lætitia afficit.  
Tum sumi incendiōrum procul videbantur, quæ res omnem  
dubitatiōnem adventūs legiōnum<sup>e</sup> expūlit.

49. Galli, re cognitā per exploratōres, obsidiōnem relin-  
quunt, ad Cæsarem omnibus copiis contendunt; eæ erant  
armatōrum circiter millia<sup>f</sup> sexaginta. Cicero, datâ facul-  
tate, Gallum ab eodem Verticōne, quem suprà demonstrav-  
imus, repētit; qui litēras ad Cæsarem refērat;<sup>g</sup> hunc<sup>f</sup> ad-  
mōnet, iter cautè diligenterque faciat:<sup>g</sup> perscrībit in litēris,  
hostes ab se discessisse, omnemque ad eum multitudinem  
convertisse. Quibus<sup>h</sup> litēris circiter mediā nocte Cæsar al-  
latis suos facit certiores, eosque ad dimicandum animo` con-  
firmat: postero die luce primā movet castra, et circiter mil-  
lia<sup>i</sup> passuum quatuor progressus, trans vallem magnam et  
rivum multitudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni peri-  
culi<sup>k</sup> res, cum tantis copiis inīquo loco<sup>j</sup> dimicare. Tum,  
quoniam liberātum obsidiōne<sup>m</sup> Ciceronem sciēbat, eoque  
omnino remittendum de celeritate existimābat, consēdit, et,  
quām æquissimo potest loco,<sup>l</sup> castra commūnit. Atque hæc,  
etsi erant exigua perse, vix hominum<sup>k</sup> millium septem, præ-  
sertim nullis cum impedimentis, <sup>6</sup>tamen angustiis viārum

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.<sup>e</sup> § 141, Obs. 2 4th.<sup>i</sup> § 132, R. XLII.<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.<sup>f</sup> § 124, R.<sup>k</sup> § 106, R. VII.<sup>c</sup> § 93, 1.<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5.<sup>l</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)<sup>d</sup> § 136, R. XLVIII.<sup>h</sup> 38.<sup>m</sup> § 126, R. V.

quām maximē potest, contrāhit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemtiōnem hostībus<sup>a</sup> veniat. Intērim, speculatorībus in omnes partes dimissis, explōrat, quo commodissimo<sup>b</sup> itinēre vallem transīre possit.

50. Eo die, parvūlis equestrībus prōeliis ad aquam factis, utrīque sese suo loco continent; <sup>1</sup> Galli, quōd ampliōres copias, quæ nondum convenērant, expectābant; Cæsar, si fortè timōris simulatiōne hostes <sup>2</sup> in suum locum elicēre posset, ut citra vallem pro castris prōelio contendēret; <sup>c</sup> si id efficēre non posset, ut, explorātis itinerībus, minōre cum pericūlo vallem rivumque transīret. <sup>c</sup> Primā luce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit, prōeliumque cum nostris equitībus committit. Cæsar consultò equītes cedēre, <sup>d</sup> seque in castra recipēre <sup>d</sup> jubet; simul ex omnībus partībus castra altiōre vallo munīri, <sup>d</sup> <sup>3</sup> portasque obstrui, atque in his administrandis rebus quām maximē concursāri et cum simulatiōne timōris agi jubet.

51. Quibus omnībus rebus hostes invitāti copias transdūcunt, aciemque inīquo loco constituunt; nostris verō <sup>4</sup> etiam de vallo deductis, propriūs accēdunt, et tela intra munitiōnem ex omnībus partībus conjiciunt; praeconibusque <sup>e</sup> circummissis pronuntiāri jubent, “seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante horam tertiam <sup>5</sup>ad se transīre, sine pericūlo licēre; post id tempus non fore potestātem:” <sup>6</sup> ac sic nostros contemsērunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis singūlis ordinībus cespītum, quōd <sup>7</sup> eā non posse introrumpēre videbantur, alii vallum manu scindēre, alii fossas complēre incipērent. Tum Cæsar, omnībus portis eruptiōne factā equitatūque emissō, celerīter hostes dat in fugam, sic, uti omnīno pugnandi causā resistēret nemo; magnumque ex eis numerum occīdit, atque omnes armis <sup>f</sup> exuit.

52. <sup>8</sup> Longiùs prosēqui verītus, quōd silvæ paludesque intercedēbant, neque etiam parvūlo detrimēto <sup>9</sup> illōrum locum

<sup>a</sup> § 110, Obs. 1.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>e</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>b</sup> § 98, Obs. 10.

<sup>d</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>f</sup> § 125, R.

relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eōdem die ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtas turres, testudīnes, munitionesque hostium admirātur: <sup>1</sup> productā legiōne cognoscit, non decimū quemque esse relictum milītem sine vulnēre. Ex his omnibus judīcat rebus, quanto cum pericūlo et quantā cum virtūte res sint <sup>a</sup> administrātæ: Cicerōnem <sup>2</sup> pro ejus merīto, legionemque collaudat: centuriōnes singillātim tribunosque milītum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtūtem testimonio Ciceronis cognovērat. De casu Sabīni et Cottae certiūs ex captīvis cognoscit. Postēro die conciōne habītā <sup>3</sup> rem gestam propōnit, milītes consolātur et confirmat: quōd detrimentum <sup>4</sup> culpā et temeritatē legāti sit <sup>b</sup> acceptum, hoc <sup>5</sup> æquiōre anīmo ferendum docet, <sup>6</sup> quōd, beneficio Deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum <sup>7</sup> expiāto incommōdo, neque hostībus diutīna lētatio, neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur.<sup>c</sup>

53. Intērim ad Labiēnum per Remos incredibili celeritatē de victoriā Cæsāris fama perfertur, ut, cū ab hibernis Ciceronis abesset millia passuum circiter sexaginta, eōque <sup>8</sup> post horam nonam diēi Cæsar pervenisset, ante medium noctem ad portas castrōrum clamor orirētur, <sup>d</sup> quo clamōre significatio victoriæ gratulatiōque ab Remis Labiēno <sup>e</sup> fiēret. Hāc famā ad Trevīros perlātā, Indutiomārus, qui postēro die castra Labiēni oppūgnāre decrevērat, noctu profūgit, copiasque omnes in Trevīros redūcit. Cæsar Fabium cum legiōne in sua remittit hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrīvam <sup>9</sup> trinis hibernis hiemāre constituit; et, quōd tanti motus Galliæ extitērant, totam hiēmem ipse ad exercitū manēre decrevit. Nam illo incommōdo de Sabīni morte perlāto, omnes ferē Galliæ civitātes de bello <sup>10</sup> consultābant, nuncios legationesque in omnes partes dimittēbant, et <sup>11</sup> quid reliqui consilii <sup>f</sup> capērent <sup>a</sup> atque unde initium belli fiēret, explorābant, nocturnāque in locis desertis <sup>12</sup> concilia

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>c</sup> 77, 5.

<sup>e</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, Obs. 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>f</sup> § 106. R. VIII

habēbant. Neque ullum ferē totius hiēmis tempus sine sollicitudine Cæsāris intercessit, <sup>1</sup> quin <sup>a</sup> aliquem de conciliis ac motu Gallōrum nuncium accipēret.<sup>a</sup> In his ab Lucio Roscio legāto, quem legiōni decimae tertiae præfecerat, certior est factus, magnas Gallōrum copias eārum civitātum, quæ <sup>2</sup> Armorīcæ appellantur, oppugnandi sui causā convenisse: neque longiūs<sup>b</sup> millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis absuisse, sed nuncio allāto de victoriā Cæsāris, discessisse, adeo ut fūgæ similis discessus viderētur.

54. At Cæsar, principibus cujusque civitatis ad se evocātis, aliās<sup>c</sup> territando, cùm se scire, quæ fierent, denunciāret, aliās cohortando, magnam partem Galliæ in officio tenuit. Tamen Senōnes, quæ est civitas in primis firma et magnæ inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarīnum, quem Cæsar apud eos regem constituērat (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu in Galliam Cæsāris, cujusque majōres regnum obtinuerant), interficere publico consilio conāti, cùm ille præsensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno<sup>d</sup> domōque expulērunt: et, missis ad Cæsārem satisfaciendi causā legātis, cùm is omnem ad se senātum venire jussisset, <sup>e</sup> dicto audientes non fuērunt. <sup>f</sup> Tantum<sup>e</sup> apud homines barbāros valuit, esse repertos aliquos principes belli inferendi, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutatiōnem <sup>g</sup> attulit, ut præter Æduos et Remos, quos <sup>h</sup> præcipuo semper honōre Cæsar habuit, <sup>i</sup> altēros pro vetere ac perpetuā erga Popūlum Romānum fide, <sup>j</sup> altēros pro recentib⁹ Galīci belli officiis, <sup>k</sup> nulla ferē civitās fuērit non <sup>l</sup> suspecta nobis.<sup>m</sup> Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cùm complurībus aliis de causis, tum maxīmē,, <sup>n</sup> quōd, qui virtūte belli omnibus gentib⁹ præferebantur, tantum se ejus opiniōnis deperdidisse, ut a Popūlo Romāno imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

55. Treviri vero atque Indutiomārus totius hiēmis nullum tempus intermisērunt, quin<sup>a</sup> trans Rhenum legātos mittērent,

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>c</sup> 124, 12.

<sup>o</sup> § 116, Obs. 3.

<sup>b</sup> § 120, Obs. 3.

<sup>d</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>f</sup> § 134, Obs. 3.

civitātes solicitārent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnâ parte exercitūs nostri interfectā, multo minōrem superesse dicērent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati<sup>a</sup> Germanōrum persuadēri potuit, ut Rhenum transīret, cùm “ se bis expertos”<sup>b</sup> dicērent, “ Ariovisti bello et Tenchtherōrum transītu, non esse ampliū fortūnam tentandam.”<sup>1</sup> Hāc spe<sup>c</sup> lapsus Indutiomārus, nihilo minūs copias cogēre, exercēre, a finitīmis equos parāre, exūles damnatosque totā Galliā<sup>d</sup> magnis præmiis ad se allicēre cœpit. Ac tantam sibi jam iis rebus in Galliā auctoritatē comparavērat, ut undique ad eum legatiōnes concurrerent,<sup>e</sup> gratiam atque amicitiam publicē privatimque peterent.

56. Ubi intellexit<sup>2</sup> ultiro ad se venīri, altērā ex parte Senōnes Carnutesque conscientiā facinōris instigāri, altērā Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romānis parāre, neque sibi<sup>f</sup> voluntariōrum copias defōre, si ex finībus suis progrēdi cœpisset: armātum concilium indīcit (hoc more Gallōrum est initium belli), quo lege commūni omnes pubēres armāti convenīre consuērunt; qui<sup>g</sup> ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis<sup>3</sup> omnībus cruciatībus affectus necātur. In eo concilio Cingetorīgem,<sup>4</sup> alterius principem<sup>h</sup> factiōnis, genēruim suum (quem suprà demonstravīmus,<sup>5</sup> Cæsāris se-cūtum fidem, ab eo non discessisse), hostem judicat, bonāque ejus publicat. His rebus confectis, in concilio pronuntiat, arcessītum se a Senonībus et Carnutībus aliisque complurībus Galliæ civitatībus,<sup>6</sup> huc iter factūrum<sup>i</sup> per fines Remōrum, eorumque agros populatūrum,<sup>j</sup> ac priūs, quām id faciat, Labiēni castra oppugnatūrum:<sup>k</sup> quæ fieri velit, præcipit.

57. Labiēnus, cùm et loci natūrā et manu munitissimis castris sese tenēret, de suo ac legiōnis pericūlo nihil timēbat; ne quam occasiōnem rei bene gerendæ dimitteret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorīge atque ejus propinquis ora-

<sup>a</sup> § 126, R. III. & 68, 2. <sup>d</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ex.) <sup>g</sup> 37, 3.

<sup>b</sup> 98, 2. <sup>e</sup> § 140, 1, 1st. <sup>h</sup> § 97, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (de.) <sup>f</sup> § 112, R. I. <sup>i</sup> 94, 1, 2d, & 100, 2

tiōne Indutiomāri cognitā, quam in concilio habuērat, nuncios mittit ad finitimas civitātes, equitesque undique evōcat: iis<sup>a</sup> certum diem conveniendi dicit. Intērim propē quotidie cum omni equitātu Indutiomārus<sup>1</sup> sub castris ejus vagabātur, aliās<sup>b</sup> ut situm castrōrum cognoscēret, aliās<sup>b</sup> colloquendi aut territandi causā: equites plērumque omnes tela intra vallum conjiciēbant. Labiēnus suos intra munitiōnes continēbat, timorisque opiniōneim, <sup>2</sup>quibuscumque<sup>d</sup> potērat rebus, augēbat.

58. Cum majōre in dies contemtiōne Indutiomārus ad<sup>e</sup> castra accedēret, nocte unā, <sup>3</sup> intromissis equitībus omnium finitimārum civitātum, <sup>4</sup> quos arcessendos curavērat, tantā diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuuit, ut<sup>5</sup> nullā ratiōne ea res enunciāri aut ad Treviros perferri posset.<sup>c</sup> Intērim ex consuetudine quotidiānā Indutiomārus ad castra accēdit, atque ibi magnam partem diēi consūmit; equites tela conjiciunt, et<sup>6</sup> magnā cum contumeliā verbōrum nostros ad pugnam evōcant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vespērum <sup>7</sup> dispersi<sup>f</sup> ac dissipāti<sup>f</sup> discēdunt. Subītō Labiēnūs duābus portis omnem equitātum emittit; <sup>8</sup> praeципit atque interdīcit, proterrītis hostībus atque in fugam conjectis (quod<sup>g</sup> fore, sicut accidit, vidēbat), unum omnes petant<sup>h</sup> Indutiomārum; neu quis quem priūs vulnēret,<sup>h</sup> quām illum interfectum vidērit, quōd<sup>9</sup> morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugēre nolēbat: magna propōnit iis,<sup>a</sup> qui occidērint,<sup>i</sup> præmia: submittit cohortes equitībus subsidio. <sup>10</sup> Comprōbat hominis consilium fortūna; et, cùm unum omnes petērent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomārus interficītur, caputque ejus refertur in castra: redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consecrantur atque occīdunt. Hāc re cognitā, omnes Eburōnum et Nerviōrum, quæ convenērant, copiæ discēdunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Cæsar quietiōrem Galliam.

<sup>a</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>b</sup> 124, 12.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>d</sup> 37, 7, Note 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 136, Obs. 7.

<sup>f</sup> § 98, Obs. 10.

<sup>g</sup> 37, 9, Note 3.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, Obs. 3

## BOOK VI.

### GENERAL ARGUMENT.

I. Commotions throughout nearly all Gaul in consequence of the overthrow and death of Tiberius—Chap. 1–8. II. Cæsar's expedition against the Suevi—Chap. 9–28. III. Punishment of Ambiorix and the Eburones—Chap. 29–44.

1. MULTIS de causis Cæsar, majorem Galliæ motum expectans, per Marcum Silanum, Caum Antistium Reginum, Titum Sextium, legatos, <sup>1</sup> dilectum habere instituit: simul ab Cneio Pompeio proconsule petit, <sup>2</sup> quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublicæ causâ remaneret, <sup>a</sup> quos <sup>b</sup> ex Cisalpina Galliâ consulis sacramento rogavisset, <sup>a</sup> ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci jubaret: <sup>c</sup> magni <sup>d</sup> interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliæ existimans, tantas vidéri Italiae facultates, <sup>e</sup> ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modò id brevi tempore <sup>3</sup>sarciri, sed etiam majoribus adaugeri copiis posset. <sup>f</sup> Quod <sup>g</sup> cùm Pompeius et reipublicæ et amicitiae tribuisse, <sup>h</sup> celeriter confecto per suos dilectu, tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legiōibus, duplicatōque eārum cohortium numero, quas cum Quinto Titurio amis̄erat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid Populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent. <sup>i</sup>

2. Interfecto Indutiomaro, <sup>5</sup> ut docuimus, ad ejus propinquos a Treviris imperium desertur. Illi finitimos Germanos solicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt: cùm ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores tentant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus, jurejurando inter se confirmant, <sup>6</sup> ob sidibusque de pecuniâ cauent: Ambiorigem sibi societate et fœdere adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar, cùm

<sup>a</sup> § 141, Obs. 7.

<sup>d</sup> § 113, Exc. I.

<sup>g</sup> 38.

<sup>b</sup> 37, (milites.)

<sup>e</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>h</sup> 81, 1.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 5.

undique bellum parari videtur, Nervios, <sup>a</sup> Aduatucos, Menapios, adjunctis Cisrhennanis omnibus Germannis, esse <sup>b</sup> in armis, Senones <sup>c</sup> ad imperatum non venire, et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treviris Germanos <sup>a</sup> crebris legationibus solicitari; <sup>b</sup> maturius sibi <sup>c</sup> de bello cogitandum putavit.

3. Itaque <sup>2</sup> nondum hieme confecta, proximis quatuor coactis legionibus, de improviso in fines Nerviorum contendit, et prius, quam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, <sup>d</sup> magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto, atque eam praedâ militibus <sup>e</sup> concessâ, vastisque agris, in deditiōnem venire atque obsides sibi dare coegerit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo <sup>f</sup> vere, <sup>g</sup> ut instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui, prater Senones, Carnutes, Treverosque, venissent, initium belli ac defectiōnis hoc esse arbitratus, <sup>g</sup> ut <sup>4</sup> omnia postponere videbatur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus, <sup>h</sup> civitatemque patrum memoriā conjunxerant; <sup>i</sup> sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur. <sup>j</sup> Hac re pro suggestu pronunciata, eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficisciuntur, magnisque itineribus eò pervenit.

4. Cognito ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerauit, jubet in oppida multitudinem convenire; <sup>k</sup> conantibus, <sup>l</sup> priusquam id effici posset, <sup>d</sup> adesse Romanos <sup>m</sup> nunciatur; necessariò <sup>n</sup> sententiā desistunt, legatosque <sup>o</sup> deprecandi causā ad Cæsarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antiquitus erat in fide civitas. Libenter Cæsar potentibus Aeduis dat veniam, excusationemque accipit; <sup>p</sup> quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quæstiōnis, esse arbitrabatur. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos tradit. Eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientela: eadem

<sup>a</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>g</sup> 106, 1.

<sup>b</sup> 96, 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>h</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 147, R. LXI.

<sup>f</sup> 17, 1.

<sup>i</sup> 107, 1.

ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Cæsar, equitesque imperat civitatibus.<sup>a</sup>

5. Hac parte Galliae pacata, <sup>1</sup> totus et mente et animo in bellum Trevirorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci jubet, <sup>2</sup> ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiâ, aut ex eo, quod meruerat, odio civitatis, motus existat.<sup>b</sup> His rebus constitutis, quod <sup>3</sup> pro explorato habebat, Ambiorigem prælio non esse concertatum, <sup>4</sup> reliqua ejus consilia animo<sup>c</sup> circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapii propinquai Eburonum finibus,<sup>d</sup> <sup>5</sup> perpetuis paludibus<sup>e</sup> silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Galliâ de pace ad Cæsarem legatos nunquam miserant. Cum iis esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciēbat: item per Treviros venisse Germānis<sup>f</sup> in amicitiam, cognovērat. Hæc prius illi<sup>g</sup> detrahenda auxilia existimabant, quām ipsum bello lacess̄ret; ne, desperatâ salūte, aut se in Menapios abderebat, aut <sup>7</sup> cum Transrhenanis congrēdi cogerētur. Hoc initio consilio, totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum in Treviros mittit, duasque legiones ad eum proficisci jubet: ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi, nullâ coactâ <sup>8</sup> manu, <sup>9</sup> loci præsidio<sup>h</sup> freti, in silvas paludesque confugiunt, suaque eodem conférunt.

6. Cæsar, partitis copiis cum Caio Fabio legato et Marco Crasso quæstore, celeriterque <sup>10</sup> effectis pontibus <sup>11</sup> adit tripartito, aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero<sup>i</sup> potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii, legatos ad eum pacis petendæ causâ mittunt. Ille, obsidibus acceptis hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem, aut ejus legatos, finibus suis receperissent. His confirmatis rebus, Commium Atrebatem cum equitatu custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treviros proficiscitur.

<sup>a</sup> § 123, R. & 5, 1.

<sup>d</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>e</sup> § 126, R. III. & 5, 1.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>f</sup> § 112, R. II.

<sup>h</sup> § 119, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>g</sup> § 110, Obs. 1.

<sup>i</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

7. Dum hæc a Cæsare geruntur, Treviri, magnis coactis peditatūs equitatūsque copiis, Labiēnum<sup>a</sup> cum unā legiōne, quæ in eōrum finib⁹ hiemābat, adoriri parabant: jamque ab eo non longius bidui viā<sup>b</sup> abērant, cùm duas venisse<sup>c</sup> legiōnes missu Cæsaris cognoscunt. Posit⁹ castris a<sup>d</sup> millibus<sup>b</sup> passuum quindēcim, auxilia Germanōrum expectare constituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cognito consilio, sperans, temeritate<sup>e</sup> eōrum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, præsidio<sup>f</sup> cohortium quinque impedimentis relicto, cum viginti quinque cohortib⁹ magnōque equitatu contra hostem proficiuntur, et, mille passuum intermisso spatio,<sup>f</sup> castra com-mūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficili transītu<sup>g</sup> flumen ripisque præruptis: hoc neque ipse transire in animo habebat, neque hostes transitūros existimabat. <sup>1</sup> Augēbatur auxiliōrum quotidie spes. <sup>2</sup> Loquitur in consilio palam, “quoniam Germāni appropinquāre dicantur,<sup>h</sup> sese suas exercitūsque fortūnas<sup>3</sup> in dubium non devocatūrum, et postero die primā luce castra motūrum.” Celeriter hæc ad hostes deferuntur, ut<sup>i</sup> ex magno Gallōrum equitatūs numēro nonnullis<sup>4</sup> Gallīcis rebus<sup>k</sup> favere natūra cogēbat. Labiēnus noctu, tribūnis militum<sup>5</sup> primisque ordinib⁹ coactis, quid sui sit consilii, propōnit, et, quo facilius hostib⁹ timoris det<sup>l</sup> suspiciōnem, majore strepitu<sup>e</sup> et tumultu, quām Populi Romāni fert consuetūdo, castra movēri jubet. His rebus<sup>e</sup> fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Hæc quoque per exploratōres ante luçem, in tantā propinquitāte castrōrum, ad hostes deferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiōnes processerat, cùm Galli, cohortati inter se, “ne sperātam prædam ex manib⁹ dimittērent; <sup>6</sup> longum esse, perterritis Romānis, Germanōrum auxilium expectare, neque suam pati dignitā

<sup>a</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>d</sup> § 132, Obs. 5.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>b</sup> § 132, R. XLII. &

<sup>e</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, Obs. 1.

<sup>g</sup> 120, Obs. 3.

<sup>f</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>k</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>c</sup> 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.

<sup>g</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 1, 2d

tem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum,<sup>a</sup> præsertim fugientem atque impedītam, adorīri non audeant;" flumen<sup>a</sup> transīre et inīquo loco<sup>b</sup> prælīum committēre non dubitant. Quæc fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnes citra flumen elicēret, <sup>1</sup> eādem usus simulatiōne<sup>d</sup> itinēris, placidē progrediebātur. Tum, præmissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulo quo-dām collocātis, "Habētis," inquit, "milites,<sup>e</sup> quam petistis, <sup>2</sup> facultātem: hostem impedīto atque inīquo loco<sup>b</sup> tenētis: <sup>3</sup> præstāte eandem nobis<sup>f</sup> ducībus virtūtem, quam sæpenumē-ro imperatōri præstitistis: adesse eum et hæc coram cer-nēre, existimāte." Simul signa ad hostem converti<sup>g</sup> aciem-que dirīgi jubet, et, paucis turmis<sup>4</sup> præsidio "ad impedi-menta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latēra dispōnit. Celeri-ter nostri clamōre sublāto pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi<sup>h</sup> præter spem, quos<sup>b</sup> fugēre credēbant, <sup>6</sup> infestis signis<sup>i</sup> ad se ire vidērunt, impētum modō ferre non potuērunt, ac, primo concursu<sup>i</sup> in fugam conjecti, proxīmas silvas petiē-runt: quos<sup>k</sup> Labiēnus equitātu consecutātus, magno numēro interfecto, complurībus captis, paucis pōst diēbus civitātem recēpit: nam Germāni, qui auxilio<sup>l</sup> veniēbant, perceptā Trevirōrum fugā, sese domum contulērunt. Cum iis pro-pinqui Indutiomāri, qui defectiōnis auctōres fuērant, comi-tāti eos, ex civitāte excessēre. <sup>7</sup>Cingetorīgi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principātus atque imperium est tradītum.

9. Cæsar, postquām ex Menapiis in Trevīros venit, duā-bus de causis Rhenum transīre constituit: quarum erat al-tēra,<sup>m</sup> quod auxilia contra se Trevīris misērāt; altēra,<sup>m</sup> <sup>n</sup> ne Ambiōrix ad eos receptum habēret. His constitūtis rebus, paulum supra eum locum, quo antē exercītum transduxērat, facēre pontem instituit. Notā atque institutā ratiōne, magno

<sup>a</sup> § 116. Obs. 4.

<sup>e</sup> § 117.

<sup>i</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>b</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)

<sup>f</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>k</sup> 38.

<sup>c</sup> § 145, R. & 38.

<sup>g</sup> 90, 4.

<sup>l</sup> § 114, Obs. 4, (*illis.*)

<sup>d</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>h</sup> 38, & 91.

<sup>m</sup> 27, 10.

milītum studio, paucis diēbus opus efficitur. Firmo in Trevīris præsidio ad pontem relicto, ne quis ab iis subito motus orirētur,<sup>a</sup> relīquas copias equitatumque transdūcit. Ubiī, qui antē obsides dedērant atque in deditiōnem venērant, <sup>1</sup> purgandi sui causā ad eum legātos mittunt, qui doceant,<sup>b</sup> “neque ex suā civitāte auxilia<sup>c</sup> in Trevīros missa,<sup>d</sup> <sup>2</sup> neque ab se fidem læsam :<sup>d</sup>” petunt atque orant, “ut sibi parcat,<sup>e</sup> <sup>3</sup> ne commūni odio Germanōrum innocentēs pro nocentībus pœnas pendant :” si amplius obsidum <sup>f</sup> velit, dare pollicen-tur. <sup>4</sup> Cognitā Cæsar causā<sup>g</sup> repērit, ab Suēvis auxilia missa esse:<sup>d</sup> Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; aditus viasque in Suēvos perquirit.

10. Intērim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suēvos<sup>c</sup> omnes unum in locum copias cogēre, atque iis nationībus,<sup>h</sup> quæ sub eōrum sint<sup>i</sup> imperio, denunciāre, ut auxilia pedi-tatūs equitatūsque mittant.<sup>e</sup> His cognitīs rebus, rem fru-mentariam provīdet, castris<sup>h</sup> idoneum locum deligit, Ubiis<sup>h</sup> impērat, ut pecōra dedūcant<sup>e</sup> suāque omnia ex agris in op-pida confērant, sperans, barbāros atque <sup>5</sup>imperītos homīnes,<sup>c</sup> inopiā cibariōrum afflictos, ad inīquam pugnandi conditiō-nem posse dedūci:<sup>k</sup> mandat, ut crebros exploratōres in Suē-vos mittant,<sup>e</sup> quæque apud eos gerantur,<sup>l</sup> cognoscant.<sup>e</sup> Illi imperāta faciunt, et, paucis diēbus intermissis, <sup>6</sup>refērunt, “Suēvos<sup>c</sup> omnes, posteāquam certiōres nuncii de exercitu Romanōrum venērint, cum omnībus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coēgissent,<sup>i</sup> penītus ad extrēmos fines sese recepisse:<sup>d</sup> silvam esse ibi <sup>7</sup>infinītā magnitudine, quæ appellātur<sup>m</sup> Ba-cēnis: hanc<sup>c</sup> longē introrsus pertinēre, et, pro natīvo muro objectam, Cheruscōs<sup>8</sup> ab Suēvis, Suevosque ab Cheruscis, injuriis incursionibusque prohibēre: ad ejus initium silvæ Suēvos<sup>c</sup> adventum Romanōrum expectāre constituisse.”<sup>d</sup>

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 6.

<sup>b</sup> § 141, Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>f</sup> § 106, R. VIII.

<sup>k</sup> 87.

<sup>c</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>g</sup> 104, 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>d</sup> 98, 2, & 94, 1, 2d.

<sup>h</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>m</sup> § 141, Obs. 5, 1st.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum per ventum est,<sup>a</sup> non <sup>1</sup> aliēnum, esse vidētur,<sup>b</sup> de Galliæ Germaniæque morib⁹bus, et quo<sup>c</sup> différant<sup>d</sup> eæ natiōnes inter sese, <sup>2</sup> proponere. In Galliā, non solūm in omnibus civitatib⁹bus atque <sup>3</sup> in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed pæne etiam in singūlis<sup>e</sup> domib⁹bus, factiōnes sunt: <sup>4</sup> earumque factiōnum principes sunt, qui summa auctoritatem eorum judicio habēre existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium judiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat.<sup>f</sup> <sup>5</sup> Idque ejus rei causā antiquitūs institutum vidētur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorēm auxiliī<sup>g</sup> eḡeret: <sup>h</sup> suos enim <sup>6</sup> quisque opprīmi<sup>i</sup> et circumvenīri non patitur, neque, alīter si faciant, ullam inter suos habent auctoritatem. <sup>7</sup> Hæc eādem ratio est in summā totius Galliæ: namque omnes civitātes in partes divīsae sunt duas.

12. Cūm Cæsar in Galliam venit, alterius<sup>k</sup> factiōnis principes erant Ædui, alterius<sup>k</sup> Sequāni. Hi cūm per se minūs valērent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitūs erat in Æduis, magnæque eorum<sup>l</sup> erant clientēlæ, Germānos atque Ariovistum sibi adjunxerant, eosque ad se magnis<sup>m</sup> jactūris pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Præliis verò compluribus factis secundis, atque omni nobilitate Æduorum interfectâ, <sup>10</sup> tantum potentia<sup>n</sup> antecesserant, ut magnam partem clien- tium ab Æduis ad se transducerent, obsidesque ab iis prin- cipum filios accipērent, et publicè jurare cogerent, nihil se contra Sequānos consiliī initūros; et partem finitimi agri, per vim occupātam, possidērent: Galliæque totius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitate adductus Divitiācus, auxiliī petendi causā Romam ad Senātum profectus, <sup>11</sup> infectā re redierat. Adventu Cæsāris factā commutatiōne rerum, obsidib⁹bus Æduis reddītis, veteribus clientēlis restitūtis, novis<sup>p</sup> per Cæsārem comparātis (quod hi, qui se ad <sup>12</sup> eorum

<sup>a</sup> 67, 5, Note.

<sup>e</sup> 26, 5.

<sup>i</sup> 90.

<sup>b</sup> 51.

<sup>f</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>k</sup> 27, 10.

<sup>c</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>g</sup> § 121, Exe. 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 108, R. XII.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 21.

<sup>m</sup> 19, (clientēlis.)

amicitiam aggregavérant, meliōre conditiōne<sup>a</sup> atque æquiore imperio se<sup>b</sup> uti vidēbant),<sup>1</sup> reliquis rebus<sup>c</sup> eōrum, gratiā, dignitāte<sup>c</sup> amplificatā, Sequāni principatū<sup>2</sup> dimisérant. In eōrum locum Remi successerant;<sup>3</sup> quos<sup>d</sup> quòd adæquare apud Cæsarem gratiā intelligebātur, ii, qui propter<sup>4</sup> vetères inimicitias nullo modo cum Æduis conjungi poterant,<sup>5</sup> se Remis<sup>e</sup> in clientēlam dicābant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur. Ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatē tenēbant. Eo tum statu<sup>f</sup> res erat, ut longè principes<sup>g</sup> haberentur<sup>h</sup> Ædui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinērent.<sup>h</sup>

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominū, qui<sup>6</sup> alīquo sunt numero<sup>i</sup> atque honore,<sup>j</sup> genēra sunt duo: nam plebes pæne servōrum habētūr loco,<sup>f</sup> quæ per se nihil audet et nullo adhibētūr consilio.<sup>k</sup> Plerique, cùm aut<sup>l</sup> ære<sup>l</sup> aliēno, aut magnitudine tributōrum, aut injuriā potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitūtem dicant nobilibus:<sup>e</sup> <sup>8</sup> in hos eādem omnia sunt jura, quæ dominiñ<sup>m</sup> in servos. Sed de his duōbus generibus<sup>9</sup> altērum est Druīdum, altērum equitūm. <sup>10</sup> Illi rebus<sup>n</sup> divinis intērsunt, sacrificia publica ac privata<sup>11</sup> procūrant, religiōnes interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescentium numērus disciplinæ causā<sup>1</sup> concurrit, magnōque<sup>12</sup> ii sunt apud eos honore.<sup>f</sup> Nam ferè de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est<sup>o</sup> admissum facti, si cædes facta, si de hæreditatē, si de finibus controversia est,<sup>o</sup> iidem decernunt; præmia pœnasque constituunt: si qui aut privatus aut publicus eōrum<sup>13</sup> decretō<sup>p</sup> non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Hæc pœna apud eos est gravissima.<sup>14</sup> Quibus ita est interdictum, ii numēro impiorum ac sceleratōrum habentur: iis omnes decēdunt, <sup>15</sup> aditum eōrum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommōdi ac-

<sup>a</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.<sup>b</sup> § 145, R.<sup>c</sup> 109, 2. & § 98, Obs. 4.<sup>d</sup> 39, & 91.<sup>e</sup> § 123, R.<sup>f</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (in.)<sup>g</sup> § 103, R. & Obs. 2.<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.<sup>i</sup> § 106, R. VII.<sup>k</sup> § 126. R. III.<sup>l</sup> § 129, R.<sup>m</sup> § 112, R. II.<sup>n</sup> § 112, R. I.<sup>o</sup> § 140, Obs. 2.<sup>p</sup> § 112, R. V.

cipient: neque iis potentibus jus redditur, neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus Druidibus praest unus, qui <sup>a</sup> summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit; at, si sunt plures pares, suffragio <sup>a</sup> Druidum deligitur, nonnunquam etiam armis <sup>a</sup> de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, <sup>2</sup> quae regio totius Galliae media <sup>b</sup> habetur, considerunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt, eorumque decretis <sup>c</sup> judiciisque <sup>d</sup> parent. <sup>4</sup> Disciplina in Britanniâ reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur: et nunc, qui <sup>d</sup> <sup>e</sup> diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illò discendi causâ profiscuntur.

14. Druides a bello abesse consuérunt, neque tributa unâ cum reliquis pendunt; <sup>6</sup> militiae vacatiōnem <sup>7</sup> omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati <sup>8</sup> præmiis, <sup>a</sup> et suâ sponte <sup>a</sup> multi in disciplinam conveniunt, et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum <sup>9</sup> ediscere dicuntur: itaque annos nonnulli vicēnos <sup>c</sup> in disciplinā permānent. Neque fas esse existimant, <sup>10</sup> ea litēris mandare, cùm in reliquis ferè rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Græcis utantur <sup>f</sup> litēris. <sup>11</sup> Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgum <sup>12</sup> disciplinam efferri velint, neque eos, qui discant, <sup>g</sup> litēris <sup>c</sup> confisos, minùs memoriæ <sup>c</sup> studere: quod ferè plerisque accidit, ut præsidio literarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant.<sup>1</sup> <sup>13</sup> In primis hoc volunt persuadere, <sup>14</sup> non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios: atque hoc <sup>a</sup> maximè ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa præterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natūrâ, de Deorum immortalium vi ac potestate <sup>15</sup> dispūtant et juventuti trādunt.

<sup>a</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>d</sup> 37, (ii.)

<sup>g</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>b</sup> § 103, R. & Obs. 2.

<sup>e</sup> 26, 1.

<sup>h</sup> 37, 9, Note 3.

<sup>c</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

15. Altērum genus est equitum. Hi, <sup>1</sup>cūm est usus, atque aliquid bellum incidit (quod <sup>a</sup> ante Cæsaris adventum ferè quotannis accidere solēbat, uti aut ipsi <sup>b</sup> injurias inferrent, aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello <sup>2</sup> versantur: atque eorum ut quisque est genere <sup>c</sup> copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se <sup>3</sup> ambactos clientesque habent. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque novērunt.

16. Natio est omnium Gallorum admōdum <sup>4</sup> dedīta religiōibus, <sup>d</sup> atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, quique in præliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant, aut se immolatūros vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus utuntur; quod, pro vitâ hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse aliter Deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur: publicèque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immāni magnitudine <sup>e</sup> simulācra habent, quorum <sup>5</sup> contexta viminiis membra vivis hominibus <sup>f</sup> complent, quibus succensis, circumventi flammâ exanimantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto, aut in latrocinio, aut aliquâ noxâ sint comprehensi, <sup>g</sup> gratiōra Diis <sup>d</sup> immortalibus esse arbitrantur: sed, cūm <sup>6</sup> ejus generis copia deficit, ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

17. <sup>7</sup> Deum maximè Mercurium colunt: hujus sunt pluri-  
ma simulācra, hunc <sup>h</sup> omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc <sup>h</sup> viārum atque itinērum ducem, hunc <sup>h</sup> ad quæstus pecuniæ mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc, <sup>8</sup> Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam: de his eandem ferè, quam reliquæ gentes, <sup>i</sup> habent opinionem; Apollinem <sup>h</sup> morbos depellere, Minervam <sup>h</sup> opérum atque artificiōrum <sup>9</sup> initia tradere; Jovem <sup>h</sup> imperium cœlestium tenere; Martem <sup>h</sup> bella regere. Huic, cūm prælio dicimāre constituērunt, ea, quæ bello cepērint, plerumque de-

<sup>a</sup> 37, 9, Note 3.

<sup>d</sup> § 111, R.

<sup>g</sup> § 141, Obs. 8.

<sup>b</sup> 32, 3.

<sup>e</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>h</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>f</sup> § 125, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 101, Obs. 4.

vōvent. <sup>i</sup> Quæ superavērint, <sup>a</sup> animalia capta immōlant; reliquas res in unum locum confērunt. Multis in civitatib⁹ harum rerum exstructos tumūlos loçis <sup>b</sup> consecratis conspi-cāri licet: neque sāpe accidit, ut, neglectā quispiam religiōne, <sup>c</sup> aut capta <sup>d</sup> apud se occultare, aut <sup>e</sup> posita <sup>d</sup> tollere audēret: gravissimumque ei rei <sup>e</sup> supplicium cum cruciātu constitūtum est.

18. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognātos prædicant, idque ab Druidib⁹ prodītum dicunt. Ob eam causam, <sup>3</sup> spatia omnis tempōris non numēro diērum, sed noctium, finiunt; dies natāles et mensium et annōrum initia sic ob-servant, <sup>4</sup> ut noctem dies subsequātur. <sup>f</sup> In reliquis vitæ in-stitūtis, hōc <sup>g</sup> ferè ab reliquis diffērunt, quòd suos liberos, nisi cùm adolevērint, ut munus militiæ sustinēre possint, <sup>5</sup> palām ad se adīre non patiuntur; filiumque puerili ætāte in publico, in conspectu patris assistēre, turpe <sup>h</sup> ducunt.

19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxorib⁹ dotis nomine ac-cepērunt, tantas ex suis bonis, aestimatiōne factā, cum dotib⁹ communicant. Hujus omnis pecuniæ <sup>6</sup> conjunctim ra-tio habētur, <sup>7</sup> fructusque servantur: uter eōrum <sup>8</sup> vitā super-ārit, ad eum pars utriusque cùm fructibus superiōrum tem-pōrum pervēnit. Viri in uxōres, sicut in liberos, vitæ ne-cisque habent potestātem: et, cùm pater familiæ, illustriōre loco natus, decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt, et, de morte si res in suspicōnem venit, <sup>9</sup> de uxorib⁹ in servilem modum quæstiōnem habent, et, <sup>10</sup> si compertum est, igni atque om-nibus tormentis excruciātas interficiunt. Funēra sunt <sup>11</sup> pro cultu Gallōrum magnifica et sumtuōsa; omniāque, quæ <sup>12</sup> vivis cordi <sup>i</sup> fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem infērunt, etiam animalia: ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constābat, justis funerib⁹ confectis, unā cremabantur.

<sup>a</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>d</sup> 19, (*animalia.*)

<sup>g</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>b</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (*in.*)

<sup>e</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>h</sup> § 98, Obs. 6.

<sup>c</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>i</sup> § 114, R. & 19

20. Quæ<sup>a</sup> civitātes<sup>1</sup> commodiūs suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur, habent legib<sup>b</sup>s sanctum, si quis quid de republīcā a finitīmis rumōre ac famā accepērit, utl ad magistrātum defērat,<sup>c</sup> neve cum quo alio communicet:<sup>c</sup> quòd sāpē homīnes temerarios atque imperītos falsis rumorib<sup>d</sup>s terrēti, et ad facīnus impelli, et de summīs rebus consilium capēre cognītum est. Magistrātus, <sup>2</sup>quæ visa sunt, occultant; quæque<sup>d</sup> esse ex usu judicavērint, multitudīni produnt. De republīcā nisi<sup>3</sup> per concilium loqui non concedītur.

21. Germāni multūm ab hac consuetudīne diffērunt: nam neque Druīdes habent, qui rebus divīnis præsint,<sup>e</sup> <sup>4</sup>neque sacrificiis<sup>f</sup> student. Deōrum numēro eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt, et<sup>5</sup> quorum apertē opībus juvantur, Solem et<sup>6</sup> Vulcānum et Lunam: reliquos ne famā quidem accepērunt. Vita omnis in venationib<sup>g</sup>s atque in studiis rei militāris consistit: <sup>7</sup>ab parvūlis labōri<sup>f</sup> ac duritiāe<sup>f</sup> student. Qui diutissimē<sup>8</sup> impubēres permansērunt, maxīmam inter suos ferunt laudem: hōc ali statūram,<sup>g</sup> ali hōc vires<sup>g</sup> nervosque confirmāri, putant. Intra annum verō vicesimum feminæ notitiam habuisse, in turpissimis habent rebus: cuius rei nulla est occultatio, quòd et promiscuē in fluminib<sup>h</sup>s perluntur, et pellib<sup>h</sup>s aut parvis<sup>9</sup> rhenōnum tegimentis utuntur, magnā corpōris parte nudā.

22. Agricultūræ<sup>f</sup> non student; majorque pars victūs eōrum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit: neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistrātus ac principes in annos singūlos gentībus<sup>h</sup> cognationibusque homīnum, qui unā coiērint, <sup>10</sup> quantum,<sup>i</sup> et quo loco visum est, agri attribuunt, atque anno pōst aliō transīre cogunt.<sup>11</sup> Ejus rei multas affērunt causas; ne assiduā consuetudīne capti, studium belli gerendi agricultūrā commū-

<sup>a</sup> 37, 4, (*civitātes.*) <sup>d</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>g</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>b</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>•</sup> § 141, R. II.

<sup>h</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>f</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>i</sup> § 46, 1.

tent; <sup>a</sup> ne latos fines parāre studeant, <sup>a</sup> potentioresque humiliores possessionibus <sup>b</sup> expellant; <sup>a</sup> ne <sup>1</sup>accuratiūs ad frigōra atque æstus vitandos <sup>c</sup> ædificent; <sup>a</sup> ne qua oriātur <sup>a</sup> pecuniæ cupiditas, quâ ex re factiōnes dissensionesque nascuntur; ut <sup>2</sup>anīmi æquitāte plebem contineant, cùm suas quisque opes cum potentissimis æquāri videat.<sup>d</sup>

23. Civitatibus <sup>e</sup> maxima laus est, quâm latissimas circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc <sup>3</sup>proprium virtutis <sup>f</sup> existimant, expulsos agris <sup>g</sup> finitimos <sup>h</sup> cedere, neque quenquam <sup>h</sup> prope audere consistere: simul hōc se <sup>h</sup> fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinæ incursiōnis timore <sup>i</sup> sublato. Cùm bellum civitas aut illatum defendit, aut infert; magistratus, qui ei bello <sup>k</sup> præsint,<sup>l</sup> ut vitæ necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis. magistratus, sed principes regiōnum atque pagōrum inter suos <sup>4</sup> jus dicunt, controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quæ extra fines cujusque civitatis fiunt; atque ea juventutis exercendæ <sup>m</sup> ac desidiæ minuendæ causâ fieri prædicant. Atque, ubi quis ex principiis in concilio dixit, "se ducem fore; <sup>5</sup> qui <sup>n</sup> sequi velint, profiteantur; <sup>o</sup> "consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex iis secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur, omniumque iis <sup>p</sup> rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospites violare, fas non putant; qui <sup>n</sup> quâque de causâ ad eos venērint, ab injuriâ prohibent, sanctosque habent; iis omnium domus patent, viciisque communicat.

24. <sup>6</sup> Ac fuit antea tempus, cùm Germānos Galli virtute superarent,<sup>7</sup> ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agricole inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mittarent.

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>f</sup> § 107, R. IX.

<sup>l</sup> § 141, R. II. Obs. 2, 4th.

<sup>b</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>g</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>m</sup> 112, 5.

<sup>c</sup> § 98, Obs. 2, & 112, 7.

<sup>h</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>n</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>i</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>o</sup> § 45, I. 1.

<sup>e</sup> § 110, Obs. 1.

<sup>k</sup> § 112, R. I.

<sup>p</sup> § 126, R. V.

Itaque ea, quæ fertilissima sunt, Germaniæ loca cirum Hercyniam silvam (quam<sup>a</sup> Eratostheni et quibusdam Græcis famâ notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcæ Tectosages occupavérunt, atque ibi consedérunt. Quæ<sup>b</sup> gens ad hoc tempus iis sedibus sese contínet, <sup>1</sup> summamque habet justitiæ et bellicæ laudis opiniōnem: nunc quòque in eādem inopijâ, egestâte, patientiâ, quâ Germāni, permānent, eōdem victu<sup>c</sup> et cultu corporis utuntur; <sup>2</sup>Gallis<sup>d</sup> autem Provinciæ propinquitas, et transmarinârum rerum notitia, <sup>3</sup> multa ad copiam atque usus largītur. Paulātim assuefacti superari, multisque victi prœliis, ne se quidem ipsi<sup>e</sup> cum illis virtute compārant.

25. Hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ suprà demonstrata est, latitudo novem diērum iter<sup>f</sup> <sup>4</sup> expedīto<sup>g</sup> patet: non enim aliter<sup>h</sup> finiri potest, neque mensūras itinērum novērunt. Oriuntur ab Helvetiōrum et Nemētum et Rauracōrum finibus, rectâque fluminis Danubii regiōne<sup>h</sup> pertinet ad fines Dacōrum et Anartium: hinc se flectit<sup>i</sup> sinistrorsus, diversis ab fluīmine regionib⁹, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit: neque quisquam est hujus Germaniæ, qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvæ dicat,<sup>j</sup> cùm diērum iter<sup>f</sup> sexaginta processerit,<sup>k</sup> aut quo ex loco oriātur,<sup>l</sup> accepērit. Multa in eā genēra<sup>m</sup> ferārum nasci constat, quæ reliquis in locis visa non sint: <sup>m</sup> ex quibus, quæ maximè diffērant ab cetēris et <sup>7</sup>memoriæ<sup>n</sup> prodenda<sup>o</sup> videantur, hæc sunt.

26. <sup>s</sup>Est bos cervi figūrā, <sup>p</sup>cujus a mediâ fronte inter aures unum cornu existit, excelsius magisque directum his, quæ nobis nota sunt, cornībus. Ab ejus summo, <sup>q</sup>sicut palmæ, rami quām latè diffunduntur. Eādem est feminæ marisque natūra, eādem forma magnitudōque cornuum.

<sup>a</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>b</sup> 38, 2.

<sup>c</sup> § 121, R. XXVI.

<sup>d</sup> § 110, R.

<sup>e</sup> 33, 1.

<sup>f</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>g</sup> § 112, R. XVII.

<sup>h</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, R. I.

<sup>k</sup> § 140, Obs. 3.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>m</sup> § 141, Obs. 3.

<sup>n</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>o</sup> 108, 6.

<sup>p</sup> § 106, R. VII.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur <sup>1</sup> Alces.<sup>a</sup> Harum est consimilis capreis<sup>b</sup> figura et <sup>2</sup> varietas pellum; sed magnitudine<sup>c</sup> paulo antecedunt, mutilæque sunt cornibus,<sup>c</sup> et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quietis causâ procumbunt, neque, si <sup>3</sup> quo afflictæ casu concidérint, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His<sup>d</sup> sunt arbores pro cubilibus: <sup>4</sup> ad eas se applicant, atque ita, paulum modò reclinatæ, quietem capiunt: quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoriis, quod se recipere consuerint,<sup>e</sup> omnes eo loco aut a radicibus subruunt, aut accidunt arbores tantum, ut summa species eorum stantium relinquatur. Huc cum se consuetudine reclinavérint, <sup>5</sup> infirmas arbores pondere affligunt, atque unà ipsæ concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eorum, qui <sup>6</sup> Uri<sup>a</sup> appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine<sup>c</sup> paulo infra elephantos, specie<sup>f</sup> et colore et figurâ tauri. Magna vis eorum, et magna velocitas: neque homini,<sup>g</sup> neque feræ, quam conspexerint, parcunt. Hos studiosè foveis<sup>h</sup> captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore<sup>h</sup> durant adolescentes, atque hoc genere<sup>h</sup> venationis exercent; et, qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus,<sup>i</sup> quæ sint testimonio,<sup>j</sup> magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assueceré ad homines, et mansuefieri,<sup>k</sup> ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiosè conquisita ab labris argento<sup>k</sup> circumcludunt, atque in <sup>9</sup> amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

29. <sup>10</sup> Cæsar, postquam per Ubios exploratores compérit, Suëvos sese in silvas recepisse,<sup>l</sup> inopiam frumenti veritus, quod, ut suprà demonstravimus, minime omnes Germanni agriculturæ student, constituit, non progradi longius: sed, ne omnino metum redditus sui barbareis<sup>m</sup> tolleret, atque ut

<sup>a</sup> § 103, R. V.

<sup>e</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>i</sup> 114, R. & Obs. 4.

<sup>b</sup> 19, formis, § 111, R.

<sup>f</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>k</sup> § 125, R.

<sup>c</sup> § 128, R.

<sup>g</sup> 112, R. V.

<sup>l</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 112, R. II.

<sup>h</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>m</sup> § 123, R. & 19,

eōrum auxilia tardāret, reducto exercitu, partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitudinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit; atque in extrēmo ponte<sup>a</sup> turrim tabulatōrum<sup>b</sup> quatuor constituit, præsidiumque cohortium<sup>b</sup> duodēcim pontis tuendi causā ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco<sup>c</sup> præsidiōque Caium Volcatium Tullum adolescentem præfēcit: ipse, cùm maturescere frumenta incipērent,<sup>d</sup> ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus (per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima, atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Trevirōrum ad Nervios pertinet, milibusque<sup>e</sup> ampliū<sup>f</sup> quingentis in longitudinem patet), Lucium Minucium Basilum cum omni equitātu præmittit,<sup>g</sup> si quid celeritāte itinēris atque opportunitate temporis proficere possit; monet, ut ignes fieri in castris prohibeat,<sup>g</sup> ne qua ejus adventūs procul significatio fiat:<sup>h</sup> sese confestim subsēqui<sup>i</sup> dicit.

30. Basilus,<sup>2</sup> ut imperātum est, facit; celeriter contrāque omnium opiniōnem confecto itinēre, multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit; eōrum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitib⁹ esse dicebātur.<sup>a</sup> Multum cùm<sup>k</sup> in omnib⁹ rebus, tum<sup>k</sup> in rē militāri pōtest fortūna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum atque etiam imparātum incidēret,<sup>l</sup> priūsque ejus adventus ab hominib⁹ viderētur, quām fama ac nuncius adventūs afferrētur:<sup>m</sup> sic<sup>4</sup> magnæ fuit fortūnæ,<sup>n</sup> omni militāri instrumento,<sup>o</sup> quod circum se habēbat, erepto, rhedis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugēre mortem. Sed hoc eo factum est, quōd, ædificio circumdāto silvā (ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, qui, vitandi æstūs causā, plerumque silvārum ac fluminum petunt propinquitātes), comītes familiaresque ejus

<sup>a</sup> 17, 1.

<sup>f</sup> § 120, Obs. 3.

<sup>1</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>b</sup> § 106, R. VII.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 4.

<sup>c</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>n</sup> § 108, R. XII.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>i</sup> 94, 3.

<sup>o</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>e</sup> § 132, R. XLII.

<sup>k</sup> 124, 7.

angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus, illum in equum quidam ex suis<sup>a</sup> intulit: fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum, et ad vitandum, <sup>1</sup> multum fortuna valuit.

31. Ambiorix copias suas <sup>2</sup> judicione <sup>b</sup> non conduxerit, quod proelio dimicandum <sup>d</sup> non existimaret, an <sup>b</sup> tempore exclusus et repentinno equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi credere, dubium est: <sup>4</sup> sed certe, dimissis per agros nunciis, sibi <sup>e</sup> quemque consulere jussit: quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit: qui proximi Oceenum <sup>f</sup> fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consuerunt: multi, ex suis finibus egressi, se suaque omnia <sup>g</sup> alienissimis crediderunt. Cativolcus, rex dimidiæ partis Eburonum, qui unâ cum Ambiorige consilium iniérat, ætate jam confectus, cum laborem aut belli aut fugae ferre non posset, <sup>6</sup> omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui <sup>g</sup> ejus consilii auctor fuisse, <sup>7</sup> taxo, <sup>h</sup> cujus magna in Gallia Germanique copia est, se exanimavit.

32. Segni Condrusique ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui sunt, inter Eburones Treviroisque, legatos ad Cæsarem miserunt, oratum, <sup>i</sup> ne se in hostium numero duceret, <sup>k</sup> neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, <sup>8</sup> unam <sup>l</sup> esse causam judicaret: <sup>k</sup> nihil se de bello cogitavisse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Cæsar, explorata re <sup>9</sup> quæstiōne captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fugâ convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, <sup>k</sup> imperavit: si ita fecissent, <sup>m</sup> fines eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis, impedimenta omnium legiōnum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc ferè est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causâ

<sup>a</sup> § 107, Obs. 8.

<sup>e</sup> § 112, R. V.

<sup>i</sup> § 148, R. LXIII.

<sup>b</sup> 124, 13.

<sup>f</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ad.)

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>g</sup> § 141, R. III.

<sup>l</sup> § 103, R.V. & Obs. 2.

<sup>d</sup> 113, 5.

<sup>h</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>m</sup> § 140, 2, & 80, 2.

concederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probabat, tum, quod superioris anni munitioes integræ manebant, ut militem laborem sublevaret.<sup>a</sup> Praesidio<sup>b</sup> impedimentis legiōnem quatuordecimam reliquit, unam ex iis tribus, quas proximè conscriptas ex Italiâ transduxerat. Ei legiōni<sup>c</sup> castisque Quintum Tullium Ciceronem præficit, ducentosque equites attribuit.

33. Partito exercitu, Titum Labiēnum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceānum versus, in eas partes, quæ Menapios attingunt, proficisci jubet: Caium Trebonium cum pari legiōnum numero ad eam regionem, quæ Aduatūcis<sup>d</sup> adjacet, depopulandam<sup>e</sup> mittit: ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Sabim, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennæ partes ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitibus profectum<sup>f</sup> Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdens,<sup>g</sup> post diem septimum sese reversūrum, confirmat; quam ad diem ei legiōni,<sup>g</sup> quæ in praesidio relinquebatur, frumentum debéri sciēbat. Labiēnum Treboniumque hortatur, si reipublīcæ commōdo<sup>h</sup> facere possint, ad eam diein revertantur;<sup>i</sup> ut, rursus communicato consilio, exploratisque hostium rationibus, aliud belli initium capere possent.<sup>k</sup>

34. Erat,<sup>l</sup> ut suprà demonstravimus,<sup>m</sup> manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod<sup>n</sup> se armis defendēret; sed omnes in partes dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique<sup>o</sup> aut vallis abdita, aut locus silvestris, aut palus impedita, spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerēbat, concederat. Hæc loca vicinitatibus<sup>p</sup> erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirēbat, non in summâ exercitûs tuendâ (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quæ tamen<sup>q</sup> ex parte res ad salutem exercitûs pertinēbat. Nam et prædæ cupid-

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>e</sup> 112, 7.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 1, 3d, & Obs. 5, (ut.)

<sup>b</sup> § 114, R.

<sup>f</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>k</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>c</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>g</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>l</sup> § 141, R. I.

<sup>d</sup> § 112, R. IV.

<sup>h</sup> § 129, R.

<sup>m</sup> § 111, Obs. 1, 4th

itas multos longius evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus<sup>a</sup> confertos adire prohibebant. <sup>2</sup> Si negotium confici<sup>a</sup> stirpemque hominum sceleratum interfici<sup>a</sup> vellet, dimittendae<sup>b</sup> plures manus diducendique erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut <sup>3</sup> instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio<sup>c</sup> barbaris,<sup>c</sup> neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis<sup>d</sup> deērat audacia. At in ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum<sup>e</sup> diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur; ut potius<sup>4</sup> in nocendo aliquid omitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardēbant, quām cum aliquo militum detimento noceretur. Cæsar ad finitimas civitates nuncios dimittit, omnes ad se evocat spe prædæ, ad diripendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita, quām <sup>5</sup> legionarius miles, periclitetur;<sup>f</sup> simul ut, magnâ multitidine circumfusa, pro tali facinore, stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur.<sup>f</sup> Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

35. Hæc in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque <sup>6</sup> appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Cæsar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituērat. Hic, quantum<sup>g</sup> in bello fortuna possit<sup>h</sup> et <sup>7</sup> quantos<sup>g</sup> afferat<sup>h</sup> casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, <sup>8</sup> manus erat nulla, quæ parvam modò causam timoris afferret.<sup>i</sup> Trans Rhenum ad Germānos pervenit fama, diripi<sup>k</sup> Eburones, atque ultro omnes ad prædam evocari.<sup>k</sup> Cogunt equitum duo millia Sigambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fugâ Tenchtheros atque Usipetes<sup>g</sup> suprà docuimus: transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque, triginta millibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus præsidiumque ab Cæsare relictum: primos Eburonum fines<sup>l</sup> adeunt, multos ex fugâ dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris

<sup>a</sup> 94, 3.

19, 1.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 5.<sup>b</sup> 108, 2.

• 46, 1.

<sup>i</sup> § 141, R. I.<sup>c</sup> § 114, R.<sup>f</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.<sup>k</sup> 96, 6.<sup>d</sup> § 112, Obs. 1, &

g 48, 4.

<sup>l</sup> § 136, R. LII.

numéro, cuius<sup>a</sup> sunt cupidissimi barbāri, potiuntur. Invitati prædā, longius procēdunt: <sup>1</sup> non hos palus, in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvæ morantur: quibus in locis sit<sup>b</sup> Cæsar, ex captīvis quærunt; profectum longius reperiunt, omnemque exercitū discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captīvis, "Quid vos," inquit, "hanc misēram ac tenuem sectamini prædam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissimis?<sup>c</sup> Tribus horis<sup>d</sup> Aduatūcam<sup>e</sup> venīre potestis: huc omnes suas fortūnas exercitus Romanōrum contūlit: <sup>2</sup> præsidii tantum est, ut ne murus<sup>f</sup> quidem cingi possit,<sup>g</sup> neque quisquam egrēdi extra munitiōnes audeat."<sup>h</sup> Oblatā spe, Germāni, quam<sup>i</sup> nacti erant prædam, in occulto relinquunt, ipsi Aduatūcam<sup>e</sup> contendunt, usi eōdem<sup>j</sup> duce, cuius hæc indicio<sup>k</sup> cognovērant.

36. Cicero, qui per omnes superiores dies præceptis Cæsāris summā diligentia milites in castris continuisset, ac ne calōnem<sup>f</sup> quidem quemquam extra munitiōnem egrēdi passus esset, septimo die, diffidens de numero diērum Cæsarem fidem servatūrum, quod longius eum progressum audiēbat, neque ulla de redītu ejus fama afferebātur; simul eorum permōtus vocibus, <sup>4</sup> qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiōnem appellabant, si quidem ex castris egrēdi non licēret; nullum ejusmōdi casum expectans, quo, novem oppositiis legionibus maximōque equitātu, dispersis ac pæne delētis hostibus, in millibus passuum tribus offendī posset; quinque cohortes frumentātum in proximas segētes misit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complūres erant in castris ex legionibus ægri relictī; ex quibus<sup>5</sup> qui hoc spatio diērum convaluerant, circiter trecenti sub vexillo unā mittuntur: magna præterea multitūdo calōnum, magna vis jumentōrum, quæ in castris<sup>6</sup> subsedērat, factā potestāte, sequitur.

37. Hoc ipso tempore,<sup>7</sup> casu Germāni equites interveniunt, protinusque eōdem illo, quo venērant, cursu ab decu-

<sup>a</sup> § 107, R. IX.

<sup>d</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>b</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>e</sup> § 130, 2.

<sup>h</sup> 37, 4.

<sup>c</sup> § 103, Obs. 7.

<sup>f</sup> 121, Note 2.

<sup>i</sup> § 129, R.

mānā portā in castra irrumpēre conantur: nec priūs sunt visi, objectis ab eā parte silvis, quām castris appropinquārent, usque eo, ut, <sup>1</sup> qui <sup>a</sup> sub vallo tendērent mercatōres, recipiendi sui facultātem non habērent. Inopinantes nostri re novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impētum cohors in statiōne sustīnet. Circumfunduntur<sup>b</sup> ex reliquis hostes partībus, si quem <sup>c</sup> adītum reperīre possent. Ægrē portas nostri tuentur, <sup>2</sup> reliquos adītus locus ipse per se munitiōque defendit. Totis trepidātur castris, atque aliis ex alio causam tumultūs quārit; neque quō signa ferantur,<sup>d</sup> neque quam in partem quisque conveniat,<sup>d</sup> provīdent. Alius capta jam castra <sup>e</sup> pronunciat; aliis, delēto exercitu atque imperatōre, victōres barbāros <sup>e</sup> venisse contendit: <sup>3</sup> plerique novas sibi ex loco religiōnes fingunt, Cottaeque et Titurii calamitātem, qui in eōdem occidērint <sup>f</sup> castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timōre omnībus perterrītis, confirmātur opinio barbāris,<sup>g</sup> ut ex captīvo audiērant, nullum esse intus præsidium. Perrumpēre nituntur, seque ipsi <sup>h</sup> adhortantur, ne tantam fortūnam ex manībus dimittant.<sup>i</sup>

38. Erat æger in præsidio relictus Publius Sextius Bacūlus, <sup>4</sup> qui primum pilum ad Cæsārem duxērat, cujus mentiōnem <sup>5</sup> superioribus præliis fecimus, ac diem <sup>k</sup> jam quintum cibo <sup>l</sup> caruērat. Hic, diffīsus suæ atque omnium salūti,<sup>m</sup> inermis ex tabernaculo prodit: videt imminēre hostes, atque in summo esse rem <sup>e</sup> discriminē: capit arma a proxīmis atque in portā consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriōnes ejus cohortis quæ in statiōne erat: paulisper unā prælium sustīnent. <sup>6</sup> Relinquit anīmus Sextium, gravībus acceptis vulnerībus: ægrē per manus tractus servātur. Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui sese confirmingant tantūm, ut in munitionībus consistēre audeant, speciemque defensōrum præbeant.

<sup>a</sup> 37, 4.

<sup>e</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>i</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>b</sup> 116, 6.

<sup>f</sup> § 141, R. III.

<sup>k</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>c</sup> § 35, (siquis.)

<sup>g</sup> § 110, Obs. 1.

<sup>l</sup> § 121, R. XXV

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>h</sup> 33, 1.

<sup>m</sup> § 112, R. V.

39. Intērim confectā frumentatiōne, milites nostri clamōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equites, quanto sit <sup>a</sup> res in periculo, cognoscunt. Hic verò nulla munitio est, quæ <sup>b</sup> perterritos recipiat: modò conscripti, atque <sup>1</sup> usūs <sup>c</sup> militaris imperiti, ad tribūnum milītum centurionesque ora convertunt: quid ab his præcipiātur, <sup>a</sup> expectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin <sup>d</sup> rei novitāte perturbētur. Barbāri, signa procul conspicāti, oppugnatiōne <sup>e</sup> desistunt: redisse primò legiōnes credunt, quas longiùs discessisse ex captīvis cognovērant: postea, despectā paucitāte, ex omnībus partībus impētum faciunt.

40. Calōnes in proxīmum tumūlum procurrunt: hinc celeriter dejecti se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt: eo magis timīdos perterrent milites. Alii, <sup>2</sup> cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant, <sup>f</sup> censem, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra; et, <sup>3</sup> si pars aliqua circumventa cecidērit, at reliquos servāri posse confidunt: alii, <sup>g</sup> ut in jugo consistant, <sup>f</sup> atque eundem omnes ferant <sup>f</sup> casum. Hoc vetēres non probant milites, quos <sup>h</sup> sub vexillo unā profectos docuīmus. Itaque inter se <sup>i</sup> cohortāti, duce Caio Trebonio, equite Romāno, qui eis erat præpositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt, incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra pervenient. Hos subsecūti calōnes equitesque eōdem impētu milītum virtūte servantur. At ii, qui in jugo constitērant, <sup>4</sup> nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo, quod probavērant, consilio permanēre, ut se loco superiore defendērent, neque eam, quam profuisse aliis <sup>k</sup> vim celeritatemque vidērant, imitāri potuērunt; sed, se in castra recipere conāti, iniquum in locum demisērant. Centuriōnes, quorum <sup>1</sup> non nulli, ex inferioribus ordinib⁹ reliquārum legiōnum, virtutis causā, <sup>m</sup> in superiores erant ordīnes hujus legiōnis trans-

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 5.

<sup>e</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>i</sup> § 28, Obs. 5.

<sup>b</sup> § 141, R. I.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

<sup>k</sup> § 112, R. V. 1st.

<sup>c</sup> § 107, R. IX.

<sup>g</sup> § 101, Obs. 4, censem.

<sup>l</sup> § 107, R. X.

<sup>d</sup> § 140, 3.

<sup>h</sup> § 145, R. & 91, 4.

<sup>m</sup> § 129, R.

ducti ne antè partam rei militaris laudem amittarent,<sup>a</sup> fortissimè pugnantes concidērunt. Milītum pars, horum virtute submōtis hostībus,<sup>b</sup> præter spem incolūmis in castra pervenit; pars a barbāris circumventa periit.

41. Germāni, desperatā expugnatiōne<sup>b</sup> castrōrum, quòd nostros jam constitisse<sup>c</sup> in munitionibus vidēbant, cum eā prædā, quam in silvis deposuērant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ~~et~~<sup>d</sup> nocte,<sup>d</sup> cùm Caius Volusēnus missus cum equitātu ad castra venisset,<sup>e</sup> <sup>1</sup> fidem non faceret,<sup>f</sup> adesse cum incolūmi Cāsārem exercitu. Sic omnium animos timor præoccupaverat, ut, <sup>2</sup> pæne alienātā mente,<sup>b</sup> delētis omnībus copiis equitātum tantū se ex fugā recepisse,<sup>c</sup> dicerent,<sup>f</sup> neque, incolūni exercitu, Germānos castra oppugnatūros fuisse contendērent. Quem<sup>g</sup> timōrem Cāsāris adventus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignōrans, <sup>3</sup> unum, quòd cohortes ex statiōne et præsidio essent<sup>h</sup> emissæ, questus, <sup>4</sup> ne minīmo quidem casu<sup>i</sup> locum relinqu debuisse, multum fortūnam in repenīno hostium adventu potuisse indicāvit; multo etiam ampliūs, quòd pæne ab ipso vallo portisque castrōrum barbāros avertisset. <sup>5</sup> Quarum<sup>g</sup> omnium rerum<sup>k</sup> maximè admirandum videbātur, quòd Germāni, qui eo consilio Rhenum transiērānt, ut Ambiorīgis fines depopularentur,<sup>l</sup> ad castra Romanōrum delāti, <sup>6</sup> optatissimum Ambiorīgi beneficium obtulērint.<sup>l</sup>

43. Cāesar, rursus, <sup>7</sup> ad vexandos hostes profectus, magno coacto numēro<sup>b</sup> ex finitīmis civitatībus, in omnes partes dimitit. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quæ quisque conspexerat, incendebantur: præda ex omnībus locis agebātur: frumenta non solūm a tantā multitudine jumentōrum atque homīnum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque im-

<sup>a</sup> § 140, 1, 2d.

<sup>c</sup> § 140, Obs. 4.

<sup>i</sup> § 126, R. III.

<sup>b</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>f</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>k</sup> § 135, R. XLVII.

<sup>e</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>g</sup> 38.

<sup>l</sup> § 140, 1, 4th.

<sup>d</sup> § 131, R. XLI.

<sup>h</sup> § 140, 1, 3d.

bribus procubuerant; ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen iis,<sup>a</sup> deducto exercitu, rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est,<sup>b</sup> tanto in omnes partes diviso equitatu, ut modò visum<sup>c</sup> ab se Ambiorigem<sup>d</sup> in fugâ captivi, nec planè etiam abisse<sup>e</sup> ex conspectu contendarent, ut, spe consequendi illatâ atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Cæsare gratiam<sup>f</sup> inituros putarent,<sup>g</sup> pene naturam studio vincerent,<sup>g</sup> semperque paulum<sup>h</sup> ad summam felicitatem defuisse videretur,<sup>g</sup> atque<sup>i</sup> ille latibus aut saltibus se eripere,<sup>g</sup> et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque peteret,<sup>g</sup> non majore equitum praesidio, quam quatuor, quibus<sup>h</sup> solis vitam suam committere audebat.

44. Tali modo vastatis regionibus,<sup>i</sup> exercitum Cæsar duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum<sup>k</sup> Remorum reducit, conciliisque in eum locum Galliae indicto,<sup>j</sup> de conjuratiōne Senōnum et Carnūtum quæstiōnem habere instituit; et de Accōne, qui princeps<sup>l</sup> ejus consilii fuera, graviore sententiā<sup>m</sup> pronunciata, more majorum supplicium sumxit. Nonnulli judicium veriti profugērunt; quibus<sup>m</sup> cum aqua<sup>n</sup> atque igni<sup>o</sup> interdixisset, duas legiones ad fines Trevirorum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senōnum finibus Agedici in hibernis collocavit; frumentoque<sup>p</sup> exercitu<sup>q</sup> proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

<sup>a</sup> § 147, R.

<sup>b</sup> 67, Note.

<sup>c</sup> 98, 2.

<sup>d</sup> § 145, R.

<sup>e</sup> § 136, R. LII.

<sup>f</sup> § 141, R. III.

<sup>g</sup> § 140, 1, 1st.

<sup>h</sup> § 123, R.

<sup>i</sup> 109, 2.

<sup>k</sup> § 130, 2.

<sup>l</sup> § 103, R. V.

<sup>m</sup> § 112, R. IV.

<sup>n</sup> § 136, Obs. 5, (ab.)

<sup>o</sup> § 15, 7.

<sup>p</sup> § 126, R. III.

## NOTES ON BOOK I.

**PAGE 53.**—1. *Quarum, supply partium, of these parts.*—2. (Ii) *qui appellantur Celtæ ipsorum lingua, Galli nostrâ (linguâ, incolunt\*) tertiam (partem).*—3. *Institutis, customs.*—4. *Inter se, among themselves; from each other.*—5. *Arrange: Flumen Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitanis, Matrona et Sequana (dividunt Gallos) a Belgis.*—6. *Cultu, civilization, mode of living—humanitatem, refinement, mental culture.*—7. *Minime sæpe, least often, i. e. very seldom.*—8. *Eos, i. e. Germānos.*—9. *Ipsi, i. e. Helvetii.*—10. *Eōrum (finium) of those confines, or territories; of that country.*—11. *Eōrum, of them, i. e. of the three general divisions of Gaul.*—12. *Vergit ad Septentriōnes, it inclines, or extends towards the north.*

**P. 54.**—1. *Ab extrēmis finib⁹, from the remotest, or most distant confines of Gaul; meaning the most northern limit of the division then inhabited by the Celtæ, or Gauls, called Gallia propria, and here called extrēmis, because farthest distant from Rome.*—2. *Spectant, &c., they look towards—the country faces—the northeast.*—3. *Ad Hispaniam, at—next to—Spain, viz: the Bay of Biscay.*—4. *Consules, See Index.*—5. *Civitati, his state.*—*Civitas means all the people living under one government.*—6. *Potiri imperio, to obtain the government.*—7. *Persuāsit id eis facilius hoc, he persuaded them to that measure more easily, on this account.*—8. *Natūrâ loci, by the nature of the place, or, of their situation; by their natural situation.*—9. *Pro multitudine hominum, for, in proportion to, the number of inhabitants; in proportion to the population.*—10. *Belli atque fortitudinis, for war and bravery.*—11. *Qui patēbant, which extended.*—12. *Adducti his rebus, induced by these circumstances.* 13. *Ad proficiscendum, for their departure.* 14. *Carrōrum quām maximum numērum, as great a number of wagons as possible.*—15. *Sementes quām maximas, as great sowings as possible.*

**P. 55.**—1. *In tertium annum, against the third year.*—2. *Occuparet, that he should take possession of:*—The imperfect subjunctive here follows the present (*persuādet*) on the principle stated,

---

\* Latin words not in Italics, or enclosed in parentheses, are not in the text, but are here supplied, to shew the full construction of the sentence.

§ 137, Obs. 1.—3. *Principātum*, the highest power or authority.—4. *Probat illis, perfūcīle esse factu, perficēre conāta*, he (Orgetorix) assures them that the accomplishment of their designs would be easily done; that their designs would be easily accomplished.—5. *Totius Galliæ*, i. e. *civitatibus totius Galliæ*, &c., Of the states of all Gaul the Helvetii,—*possent* (facere) *plurimum*, could do most, i. e. were most powerful.—6. *Inter se*, among themselves, to each other, mutually.—7. *Per tres—popūlos*, viz: the Helvetii, Sequāni, and *Ædui*.—8. Arrange; *Sperant sese posse potiri* (imperio) *totius Galliæ*.—9. *Ea res*, this design.—10. *Per indicium*, by information. 11. *Ex vincūlis*, Out of chains, i. e. in chains.—12. Arrange: *Opportēbat pñnam sequi* (Orgetorīgem) *damnātūm*, *ut cremarētur igni*, it behoved this punishment to follow, overtake, Orgetorix, being condemned, that he should be burned with fire.—13. *Familiam*, household—including domestics, slaves, &c.—14. *Ad milliā decem*, about ten thousand;—*Ad*, with a numeral, signifies about, near, or towards.

P. 56.—1. *Magistrātus cogērent*, the magistrates (of the *Ædui*) were collecting.—2. *Quin ipse*, but that he.—3. *Ad*, about.—4. *Trium mensium*, for three months.—5. *Molita cibaria*, ground provisions, i. e. meal or flour.—6. *Usi eōdem consilio*, following the same counsel or design; adopting the same resolution. 7. *Boiosque*, &c.,—*receptos ad se*, &c., having received the Boii, &c., they join them to themselves as allies; Or, they receive, and join to themselves as allies, the Boii, &c. For this use of the perfect participle see Idioms, 104.—8. *Vix quā*, scil. viā, where, or, by which way. 9. *Provinciam nostrām*, our province; the Roman province in the south of Gaul, afterwards called Gallia Narbonensis.—10. *Propterea quòd*, because; literally, on this account that.—11. *Isque transitur vado*, and it is crossed by a ford, i. e. it is fordable.

P. 57.—1. *Bono animo*, of a good mind, friendly disposition, well affected.—2. *Diem*, see *Dies*, Index.—3. *Ante diem quintum*, &c. The fifth before the Kalends of April, i. e. the 28th March. See Gr. App. I.—4. *Lucio Pisōne*, &c., that was, A. U. C. 696, B. C. 58.—5. *Urbe*, scil. *Romā*.—6. *Galliam ulteriōrem*, farther Gaul, i. e. Gaul beyond the Alps.—7. *Provinciæ toti*, &c. he orders as many soldiers as possible from the whole province, i. e. he levies, &c.:—For explanation of this construction see § 123, Exp.—8. *Ad*, near—9. *Facti sunt certiōres*, were made more certain; were informed. 10. *Esse sibi in animo*, that they had it in design; that it was their intention; literally, that it was in the mind to them.—11. *Voluntāte*, with his consent. 12. *Sub jugum missum*, sent under the yoke:—

Two spears were set upright in the ground, and another was laid across them at top, forming what the Romans called *jugum*. Under this they who were admitted to surrender upon these terms were compelled to pass unarmed, *nudi*.—13. *Concedendum (esse sibi,)* that he ought to yield to their request.—14. *Ante diem Idus Aprilis*, i. e. the 12th April, see App. I.

P. 58.—1. *Qui influmen*—As the Rhone flows through the lake Lemanus, and of course out of it, it is here said that the lake flows into it. 2. *Ad montem Juram*, towards mount Jura.—3. *Millia passuum novem decem*, nineteen miles in length. See App. VI. Table 5.—4. *Castella communīt*, he strongly fortifies castles, or redoubts. § 91, Obs. 1. 5th.—5. *Se invito*, he being unwilling, i. e. against his will, or inclination.—6. *Negat se, more, &c.* he declares that he cannot, consistently with the custom, &c. *Negat* is equivalent to *dicit non*.—7. *Navibus junctis ratibusque, &c.*, some by means of boats joined together, and numerous rafts being made; before *navibus* supply *Alii*.—8. *Quā minima, &c.*, where the depth of the river was least. 9. *Perrumpēre*, break through, force a passage.—10. *Eo deprecatōre*, he being intercessor; by his mediation.—11. *Gratiā et largitiōne*, by his personal influence and liberality—*pot̄rat facere plurimum*, could accomplish a very great deal.—12. *In matrimonium dux̄rat*, had married; literally, had led into matrimony. *Duc̄re uxōrem* (domum) “to marry,” is said of the husband, because a part of the ceremony consisted in leading the wife home to his house. *Nubēre (se) viro*, “to marry,” is said of the wife, (literally, “to veil herself to her husband,”) because during the ceremony she wore a flame-colored veil.—13. *Novis rebus studebat*, desired, wished for, new things; aimed at, plotted, a revolution in the state.

P. 59.—1. *Sequāni* (dent obsides);—*Helvetii* (dent obsides). 2. *Ne prohibeant*, that they would not prevent, or hinder, the Helvetii from (using) this route.—3. *Cæsari renunciātur*, Intelligence is brought to Cæsar; § 126, R. III.—4. *Intelligebat, &c.*—he perceived it would be very dangerous to the province—*ut habēret*, to have; (literally, that it should have).—5. *Proxiūmum*, nearest, i. e. shortest.—6. *Quod est extrēmum* (oppidum) *citeriōris Provinciæ*, which is the most distant town (viz: from Rome,) of the hither province, i. e. of Cisalpine Gaul; See Index.—7. *Rogātum auxilium*, to ask assistance.

P. 60.—1. *Necessarii, &c.*, friends and relations.—2. *Sibi præter agri, &c.* that nothing was left to them except the soil of their land; except a desolate country.—3. *Flumen est Arar*, The Arar

(now the Saone,) is a river.—4. *Incredibili lenitatem*, with surprising smoothness.—5. *In utram partem*, into which part; which way; in which direction.—6. *Id transibant*, were crossing that;—*lintribus*, canoes, small boats.—7. *De tertia vigiliâ*, at the third watch, i. e. midnight; See App. I.—8. *Impeditos*, encumbered with their baggage.—9. *In proximas silvas*, &c., went into the neighboring forests and hid themselves:—This expresses the force of the accusative after *in*.—10. *Princeps pœnas persolvit*, first suffered punishment; § 98, Obs. 10, i. e. was the first to suffer punishment.

P. 61.—1. Arrange: *Tigurini interfecérunt L. Pisōnem legatum, avum L. Pisōnis ejus* (i. e. Cæsaris,) *soc̄ri eōdem prælio quo Tigurini interfecérant Cassium*.—2. *Cons̄qui*, come up with, overtake.—3. *Pontem in Arāri*, &c. that a bridge should be made over the Arar.—4. *Cassiāno bello*, in the war with Cassius; See Index, Cassius.—5. *Ita cum Cæsare agit*, thus speaks with, or addresses Cæsar:—This address of Divico is in the form of oblique narration; See § 140, 6, & § 141, R, VI., with explanation, &c.—6. *Vetēris incommōdi*, the old disaster; alluding to the defeat of Cassius.—7.—*Tribuērat quidquam magnopērè*, &c., should ascribe any thing too greatly to his own bravery.—8. *Ne committēret*, that he should not cause; bring it to pass—*aut prodēret*, &c., or hand down to posterity the memory of such an event.—9.—*Cæsar respondit*, Cæsar replied. All that follows in this chapter is oblique narration; the verb *respondit* being in the perfect indefinite, the leading verb governed by it in the present infinitive is translated as the perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive as the pluperfect indicative; See Idioms, Nos. 96, 98.—10. *Qui si*, if they, viz: the Roman people.

P. 62.—1. *Non fuisse*, &c., it would not have been difficult to guard against it; the subject of *fuisse* is *cavēre*, and strictly rendered is, “that to guard against it would not have been difficult.”—2. *Sed eo deceptum esse*, &c., but that they (the Roman people) had been deceived by this, because they did not think any thing had been done by them;—Supply *quidquam* before *commissum*. 3. *Timendum* (*esse sibi*,) that they should fear.—4. *Quòd si velle*, but if, even although, he were willing.—5. *Num etiam posse*, &c.? Could he also lay aside, &c.?—6. *Eōdem pertinēre*, were to the same effect; *pertinēre* has for its subject the two preceding clauses.—7. *Secundiōres res*, more prosperous things; greater prosperity.—8. *Quum ea sint ita*, although these things are so; although this is the case.—9. *Testem ejus rei*, a proof of that custom.—10. *Cupidiūs*, too eagerly.— *Aliēno loco*, in a disadvantageous, or unfavorable place.

P. 63.—1. *Novissimo agmine*, the rear, i. e. the “last line” met by an opposing enemy.—2. *Satis habebat*, &c., considered it sufficient for the present.—3. *Nostrum primum* (*agmen*), our van.—4. *Quinis aut senis*, &c., five or six miles (each day).—5. *Flagitare* (for *flagitabat*,) continued to importune—*publicè*, in the name of their state.—6. *Frigōra*, the cold; the coldness of the climate.—7. *Sub septentrionibus*, under the north; towards the north.—This must be understood in relation to Italy.—8. *Frumento*, corn:—At this time not meal or bread was served out to the Roman soldiers, but raw corn, which they themselves prepared.—9. *Conferri*, &c., that it was collecting, bringing in, at hand.—10. *Diutius*, too long; See Idioms, 22.—11. *Qui summo*, &c., who was invested with the office of chief magistrate.

P. 64.—1. *Tacuerat*, had concealed.—2. *Valēat plurimūm*, is very powerful; has great influence.—3. *Privati*, though private individuals.—4. *Necessariō coactus*, compelled by necessity, (*Necessariō* for *necessitatē*).—5. *Désignāri*, was meant.—6. *Nolēbat eas res jactāri*, *multis presentibus*, he was unwilling, he did not wish, that these affairs should be discussed, so many being present; in the presence of so many.—7. *Solo*, (*Lisco*,) of him alone.—8. *Redempta habere*, &c., had farmed the customs, and all the other public revenues of the *Ædui*: *Portoria* means duties on exports and imports,—*vectigalia* means every other kind of tax or revenue. Those who “farmed” them bought them at the lowest price they could, from the government, and collected them for their own use.

P. 65.—1. *Facultates magnas comparasse*, &c., had acquired great means for bestowing presents, namely, for the purpose of extending and strengthening his influence.—2. *Largiter posse*, had great influence—*collocasse* (*nuptum*), had given in marriage.—3. *Cupere* (for *bene velle*), wished well to.—4. *Si quid adversi accidat*, if any thing unfortunate should happen; if any calamity befel.—5. *Inquirendo*, by enquiry, on enquiring.—6. *Equitatu* (the old dative for *equitatui*; § 16, Exc. 2) *præcrat*, was over, or commanded the cavalry.—7. *Certissimae res*, most certain; most unquestionable facts.—8. *Injussu suo*, &c without his order and the order of the state (viz: of the *Ædui*).

P. 66.—1. *Voluntatem*, affection.—2. *Commonefecit*, reminds him.—3. *Ostendit*, shews him.—4. *Causā cognitā*, the cause being tried or investigated.—5. *Nequid gravius*, &c. that he (Cæsar) should not determine any thing too severe; that he should not pass too severe a sentence.—6. *Ipse*, he himself (viz: Divitiacus).

7. *Ille*, he (*i. e.* Dumnorix).—8. *Fraterno amōre*, by brotherly love; by love or affection for his brother.

P. 67.—1. *Adh̄bet*, brings in—*propōnit*, lays before him.—2. *Divitiāco fratri*, to his brother, *i. e.* at the request of, and for the sake of his brother, Divitiacus.—3. *Custōdes*, spies.—4. *Conse-disse*, had sat down, *i. e.* had encamped.—5. *Facilem* (ascensum) *esse*, that the ascent was easy.—6. *Vigiliā*; See Index; also Appendix to Gr. I.—7. See Index, *Legātūs*.—8. See Index, *Pr̄etor*—*Legātūm pr̄etōre*, his lieutenant with pr̄etorian powers.—9. *Et iis duc̄bus*, and with those as guides.—10. *In* (exercitu) *M. Crassi*.—11. *Pri-mā luce*, at the first daylight; at the dawn of day.—12. *Ipse*, he himself (*i. e.* Cæsar).—13. *Equo admisso*, his horse being put to it; spurred up, *i. e.* at full gallop.

P. 68.—1. *Multo die acto*, much of the day being past; when much of the day was past.—2. *Pro viso*, literally, for seen, *i. e.* as if it had actually been seen by him.—3. *Quo consuērat intervallo*, at the distance at which he had been accustomed to follow, *i. e.* at the usual distance. 4. *Exercitu* (the old dative for *exercitui*), *fru-men-tum metiri*, to measure out, *i. e.* to serve out corn for the army.—5. *Rei frumentariæ prospiciendum* (*esse sibi*), that he must provide for a supply of corn.—6. *Decurio*, See Index.—7. *Discedēre*, were departing from them.—8. (*Helvetii*) *confidērent* (*Romanos*) *posse*, &c.—9. *Anīmum advertit*, (same as *animadvertisit*,) perceives; § 44, I. 3.—10. *Qui sustinēret impētum*, to sustain the charge.

P. 69.—1. *Citeriōre Galliā*, hither Gaul; the north of Italy. 2. *Complēri*, to be filled, to be covered.—3. *Eum*, it, *i. e.* the place in which the baggage was.—4. *Confertissimā acie*, &c., in very close array—*phalange factā*, a phalanx being made. The German phalanx consisted of a very close body of men with their shields held over their heads, and overlapping so as to form a shed or screen like the Roman testudo, to defend them from the missiles of the enemy. The Macedonian phalanx, on the other hand, consisted of a body of men, sixteen deep and five hundred long.—5. *Sub*, close up to.—6. *Suo* (*equo remōto*).—7. *Pericūlo omnium* (*i. e.* Imperatōris et milītūm) *æquāto*, the danger of all being equal; all being exposed to equal danger.—8. *Scutum*, See Index.—9. *Satis commōdē*, conveniently enough; with sufficient ease or readiness.—10. *Nudo*, naked, unprotected:—Their bodies were exposed to the darts of the enemy, from having thrown down their shields.—11. *Pedem referre*, to retreat; literally, to take back the foot.—12. *Claudebant agmen*, closed up the rear.—13. *Bipartito*, in two parties; in two divisions.

The army was drawn up in three lines, of which the first and second lines, forming one division, made head against those who had been defeated and compelled to retreat, *i. e.* the Helvetians, who were now returning to the attack; and the third line sustained the attack of those advancing (*venientes*), against them, the fresh troops, *i. e.* the Boii and the Tulingi, who were coming up in the rear.

P. 70.—1. *Ancipiū prælio*, in doubtful battle, *i. e.* victory inclining to neither side.—2. *Altéri*, the one, *i. e.* the Helvetii—*altéri*, the other, *i. e.* the Boii and the Tulingi.—3. *Ab septimā horā*, from the seventh hour, *i. e.* onc o'clock p. m.; See Index, *hora*.—4. *Aversum*, turned away; who had turned his back; retreating; flying.—5. *Pugnātum est ad multam noctem*, It was fought till a great part of the night was past; till late at night.—6. *Matāras ac tragūlas*, &c. continued throwing lances and javelins from beneath.—7. *Qui, si juvissent*, for, if they should aid them; See Idioms, 39.—8. Arrange: *Se habitūrum eos (Lingōnas) eōdem loco quo ille, (Cæsar,) habēret Helvetios*.—9. *Qui, cùm convenissent*, and they, when they had met; See Ref.

P. 71.—1. *Occultāri*, be concealed, (viz: from Cæsar).—2. *Omnīno ignorāri*, be altogether unknown; remain altogether unnoticed.—3. *Primā nocte*, at the beginning of the night.—4. Arrange: *Impērat his per quorum fines ierant, uti*, &c.—5. *Habuit*, &c., treated as enemies; *i. e.* either put them to death or sold them as slaves.—6. *Ipos*, them, viz: the Helvetii, Tulingi, and Latobrigi.—7. *Vacāre*, to be empty; to be uninhabited.—8. Arrange, *Concessit Æduis petentibus, ut (Ædui) collocārent Boios in suis finib⁹, quod (Boii) cogniti erant egregiā virtute: quibus (Scil. Boiis) illi (Ædui) dedērunt agros*.—9. *Tabūlæ*, lists; literally, tablets:—These were made of wood covered with wax, on which the Romans were accustomed to write with the stylus.—10. *Confectæ Græcis litēris*, written in Greek letters.—11. *Ratio*, an account.

P. 72.—1. *Capitum*, literally, “of heads,” *i. e.* persons, souls. 2. *Censu habito*, the census having been held; the number having been taken:—This was only a numbering of the army, and consequently very different from the Roman *census*; See Index, *Census*.—3. *Gratulātum*, to congratulate him:—After *gratulātum* supply *dīcentes*, expressing past time; See Idioms, 94, 4, and 1, 2d.—4. *Pro veteribus injuriis*, &c., for the ancient injuries done by the Helvetii to the Roman people. Here two genitives are governed by one noun, the one, (*Helvetiōrum*) in an active sense, and the other (*Popūli Romāni*) in a passive sense; § 106, Obs. 1, & 2.—5. *Ne quis*, &c.

that no one should disclose their deliberations, unless those to whom this charge should be given by the assembly at large.

P. 73.—1. *Non minūs, &c.*; See Note 3, preceding page. The statement of the chiefs, and of Divitiacus who spoke for them, it will be perceived, is given in the form of oblique narration—of course, the leading verbs are in the infinitive mood governed by *dicentes*, or *dicens* expressing past time, because agreeing with the subject of verbs in the perfect tense. Hence the present infinitive, with a subject, will be translated in the perfect indicative; and the perfect infinitive, in the pluperfect, as the references show; and also all the verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive; See § 140, 6, and § 141, R. VI., &c.—2. *Harum (factiōnum) &c.* that the *Ædui* were at the head of one of these factions, and the *Averni* at the head of the other.—3. *Hic cūm contendērent, &c.*; since these (the *Ædui* and *Averni*) had contended for the superiority.—4. *Horūm*, of the latter, (viz: the Germans).—5. *Copias*; *copia* in the singular means “abundance,” in the plural, commonly “forces,” but here, great abundance; the plural form rendering it emphatic.—6. *Neque recusatūros quo minūs essent, &c.* nor refuse to be forever under their sway and government; Idioms, 78, Note, & 7.—7. *Se unum*, that he alone (Divitiacus).

P. 74.—1. *Quibus locus, &c.* for whom a settlement and habitations were to be procured.—2. *Futūrum esse*, that it would be; that the consequence in a few years would be.—3. *Neque enim, &c.*, For neither was the Gallic territory to be compared with that of the Germans.—4. *Ut semel*. when once, i. e. as soon as.—5. *Omnia exempla cruciatusque*, all manner of cruelties: by Hendiadys (§ 150, 2, 2d,) for *exempla cruciatum*.—6. *Nisi si*, same as *nisi*, unless.—7. *Ut*, namely, that.

P. 75.—1. *Habitā*, being delivered.—2. *Exprimēre*, draw, extort.—3. *Hoc*, on this account.—4. *Præ (fortūnā) reliquōrum*, in comparison with the fortune of the rest; or simply, than the rest.—5. *Fugae facultas*, the means of escape.—6. *Omnes cruciātus*, all tortures, i. e. all kinds of torture. 7. *Eam rem futūram (esse) curē sibi*, that that thing would be a care to him; that he would attend to that matter.—8. *Secundum ea, &c.*, besides these things, many circumstances induced him—*quare putāret*, to think; literally, why he should think.

P. 76.—1. *Occurrentum, &c.*, he must meet, or thwart, as early as possible.—2. *Placuit ei*, it pleased him, i. e. he resolved.—3. *Et summis utrisque rebus*, matters of the greatest importance to

both.—4. *Si quid ipsi, &c.* if any thing had been wanted by him from Cæsar, *i. e.* if he had wanted any thing from Cæsar.—5. *Si quid ille se velit,* if he (Cæsar,) wished any thing from him (Ariovistus).—6. *Sine magno commeātu atque emolimento,* (better than *emolumento,)* without great expense and trouble.—7. Arrange: *Quid negotii esset aut Cæsari, &c.*

**P. 77.**—1. *Hanc gratiam referret,* he should make this return —*ut gravaretur,* that he grudged, or, was reluctant.—2. *Neque.* used conjunctively, equivalent to *et non.*—3. *Dicendum sibi et cognoscendum, &c.,* that he should not think it necessary for him to speak, and inform himself about a matter of common-interest.—4. *Ne quam, &c.* (equivalent to *ne aliquam,)* that he should not lead any, &c.—5. *Injuriā* literally, with injury, *i. e.* without just cause.—6. *Quod, i. e. secundum id quod,* according to that which, *i. e.* as far as (equivalent to *quantum*) he could do it consistently with the interest of the republic.—7. *Item,* in like manner.—8. *Non opportere se impediri,* that he ought not to be hindered.

**P. 78.**—1. *Longè iis absutūrum,* would be far from them. *i. e.* would do them no good. 2. *Quod sibi, &c.* as to what Cæsar threatened to him, namely.—3. *Inter,* during.—4. *Virtute (facere) possent,* could effect by valor.—5. *Ædui (veniēbant) questum.*—6. *Treviri autem (veniēbant questum).*—7. *Ne minus facile, &c.,* lest—he (Ariovistus) might be less easily resisted.—8. *Re frumentariā comparatā,* having provided a supply of corn; Idioms, 104.—9. *Tridui viam,* a journey of three days.—10. *Contendere.* was hastening—processisse, had advanced—*ad occupandum Vesontiōnem,* to take possession of Vesontio.—11. *Summa facultas,* the greatest abundance. 12: *Ad ducendum bellum,* for protracting the war.

**P. 79.**—1. *Ut circōno circumductum,* as if traced around it with a pair of compasses.—2. *Non amplius (spatio),* not more than the space.—3. *Continet,* closes, occupies.—4. *Murus, circumdātus hunc (montem,) efficit arcem, et conjungit (montem) cum oppido,* a wall, thrown around, converts this mountain into a citadel, and connects it with the town.—5. *Ex percunctatiōne, &c.,* from the enquiries of our men, and the statements of the Gauls.—6. *Vultum et aciem oculōrum,* their look and the fierceness of their eyes.—7. *Tri-būnis,—præfectis;* See Index.—8. *Quorum aliis, &c.,* of whom one having assigned one reason, another, another reason, which they said was a necessary one, (or rendered it necessary,) for them to return home.—9. *Fingere vultum,* compose their countenance

P. 80.—1. *Qui*, i. e. *ii qui*, those who.—2. *Dicto audiens*, obedient to the order:—*Dicto* is governed in the dative here by *audiens*; § 111, R.: both words together commonly signify obedient, and govern a dative by the same rule; as, *Duci dicto audiens*, obedient to the general.—3. *Consilio convocāto*, a council (of war) being called; or, having called a council of war.—4. *Sibi quærendum*, that they must enquire, i. e. that it was their business to enquire.—5. *Sibi quidem persuadēri*, that he was even persuaded.—6. *Suis postulātis*, &c. his demands being known, and the fairness.—7. *Suā*, their own—*ipsius*, his.—8. *Factum (esse) pericūlum*, that trial had been made.—9. *Servili tumultu*, (equivalent to *servōrum tumultu*) the insurrection of the slaves.

P. 81.—1. *In suis*, in their own, (i. e. the Helvetii)—*illōrum* (i. e. *Germanōrum*) *finibus*, in their territories.—2. *Quos*, for *ali-quos*, any.—3. *Neque sui potestātem fecisset*, and had not given an opportunity of coming to an engagement with him:—*Facere potestātem sui*, means to allow one's self to be approached.—4. *Ratiōne et consilio*, by stratagem and cunning.—5. *Qui*, i. e. *ii qui*, those who.—6. *Quod non fore dicto*, &c., As to this, that it was said the soldiers would not be obedient to orders.—7. *Scire enim quibuscum-que*, &c., for he knew, to whomsoever, (i. e. in all cases in which; § 99, Obs. 7,) an army would not be obedient, that either, &c.—8. *Itāque se, quod*, &c., that he would therefore do immediately that which he was going to put off to a more distant day.

P. 82.—1. *Prætoriam cohortem*, a body-guard:—2. *Confidēbut maxīmē*, trusted most.—3. *Princeps*, first.—4. *Egerunt*, strove—before *se neque*, supply *dicentes* or *dixerunt*; See Idioms, 94, 4.—5. *Satisfactiōne*, their apology, excuse.—6. *Exquisito*, being reconnoitred.—7. (Supply *qui dicērent*,) *quod*, &c., to say that that which, &c.—8. *Fore uti desistēret*, that he would desist; See Ref.

P. 83.—1. *Ne quem peditem*, &c. that Cæsar should not bring any infantry.—2. *Tolli*, should be prevented, thwarted.—3. *Com-modissimum*, most expedient.—4. *Omnibus equis*, &c., All their horses being taken from the Gallic cavalry, to mount on them, (literally, thereon).—5. *Si quid opus*, &c. if there should be any need of action; § 118, R. XXII.—6. *Nunc rescribēre ad equum*, he now enrolled them among the cavalry.—7. *Ex equis*, on horseback—*denos*, ten each.—8. *Ubi ventum est ēō*, when they came to the place appointed; See Ref.

P. 84.—1. *Necessitudinis*, &c., of alliance existed between them and the *Ædui*.—2. *Nihil sui*, nothing of their own.—3. *Aucti-*

*ōres*, encreased, farther advanced.—4. *Quos ampliūs*, any more.—5. *Rogātum et arcessitum*, having been asked and sent for.

P. 85.—1. *Quòd multitudinem transducat*, as to his leading, &c.; literally, as to this that he led; See Idioms, 38, Note.—2. *Defendērit*, had warded it off.—3. *Quid sibi vellet?* (Cæsar) What did he (Cæsar) want?—Here *sibi* refers to Cæsar, *suas* to Ariovistus.—4. *Hanc Galliam*, &c. That this Gaul (viz: Transalpine,) belonged to him (Ariovistus)—*Sicut illam nostram*, just as that Gaul (Cisalpine) belonged to us.—5. *Qui*, Since we.—6. *Quòd dicēret*, as to that which he said; or since he said.—7. *Sese factūrum esse gratum*, that he would do an agreeable thing, a favor; would oblige.

P. 86.—1. *In eam sententiam*, to this effect.—2. *Esse Ariovisti*, &c., belonged to Ariovistus, rather than to the Roman people.—3. *Quodque tempus*, &c., if all ancient time—the most ancient—the most distant period ought to be regarded.—4. *Voluisset*, had decreed. 5. *Propiūs* (ad) *tumūlum*.—6. *Per fidem*, by relying on his faith.—7. *Vulgus militum*, among the common soldiers.—8. *Quā arrogantiā usus*, &c., using what arrogance, or with what arrogance Ariovistus had interdicted the Romans from all Gaul, and his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that affair had broken up the conference:—These subjunctives are all in the same construction, containing an indirect question, the first and second indicated by *quā arrogantiā*, and the third by *ut*; § 140, 5.—9. *Injectum est*, was infused.

P. 87.—1. *Neque perfectæ essent*, and had not been completed; § 93, 1.—2. *Quin conhicērent*, from throwing; See Ref.—3. *In eo peccandi*. &c., and because in him the Germans had no cause of sinning, of committing any act of violence.—4. *Causā speculandi?* for the sake of spying? on purpose to act as spies?

P. 88.—1. *Ei potestas non deesset*, an opportunity might not be wanting to him, i. e. he might have the opportunity.—2. *Quos ex omni*, &c., literally, whom they had selected from the whole army, each horseman one.—3. *Si quòd*, &c. if they had to advance farther than usual in any direction.—4. *Cursum adæquārent*, equalled their speed.—5. *Quo in loco*, &c. in which the Germans had encamped. 6. *Quæ copiæ*, that these forces.

P. 89.—1. *Suo institūto*, according to his custom, or design.—2. *A majoribus* (castris) from the larger camp.—3. *Sortībus et vatricinationibus*, by lots and auguries.—4. *Ex usu esset*, &c., whether or not it would be of advantage that the battle should be joined.—

5. *Non esse fas*, that it was not the will of the gods.—6. *Alarios*, the auxiliaries:—So called from their being in général placed on the wings (*alæ*) of the army when in the order of battle.—7. *Pro*, in front of.—8. *Ad speciem*, for show; for appearance.—9, *Generātim*, by nations.—10. *Rhēdis*, carriages,—*carris*, baggage wagons.—11. *Eò*, on them.

P. 90.—1. *Singūlis legionib⁹*, &c., placed a lieutenant and quæstor over each legion.—2. *Minimè firmam*, least firm, weakest. 3. See Note 4, p. 69.—4. *Expeditior*, more disengaged; more at liberty.—5. *Neque destitérunt fugēre*, nor did they cease to fly; discontinue their flight.—6. *In his*, among these.—7. *Quam duxerat*, whom he had married.—8. *Duæ filiæ*, &c. the two daughters of these,—the one was killed and the other taken captive.

P. 91.—1. *In ipsum Cæsarem*, &c., fell in with Cæsar himself. 2. *Beneficio*, by the favor.—3. *Proximi*, next to; bordering upon.—4. *In citeriōrem Galliam*, into hither Gaul:—The northern part of Italy, or that part of Gaul south of the Alps, was called Cisalpine, or hither Gaul, from being on *this side* of the Alps with regard to Rome.—5. *Ad agendos conventus*, to hold the assizes, or courts of justice:—This was usually attended to in the winter, when military operations could not be carried on.

## NOTES ON BOOK II.

PAGE 92.—1. *Cum esset Cæsar*, &c.:—The time here indicated was in the year of the city 697, and 57 years B. C.—2. *Crebri rūmōres*, frequent reports. 3. *Dixerāmus*, we had said; B. I. Ch. 1.—4. *Conjurandi*, of the conspiracy.—5. *Partim qui*, some of whom; *ut*, as on the one hand—*ita*, so, on the other.—6. *Partim qui*, while others.—7. *Novis imperiis studēbat*, were in favor of a change of government.—8. *Ab nonnullis* (solicitarentur).—9. *Qui ad condūcendos*, &c., who had the means for hiring troops.—10. *Eam rem in imperio nostro cons̄equi potérant*, could accomplish that object under our government.—11. *Inīta æstāte*, in the beginning of summer.—12. *Dat negotium*, he gives a commission, he directs.—13. *Cognoscant*, should learn.

P. 93.—1. *Quin proficisceretur*, but that he should march; about marching.—2. *Celeriusque*, &c., and sooner than the expectation of all, (of any one,) i. e. than all (or any one) expected.—3. *Neque se consensisse*, that they had neither agreed; approved of the design; joined, entered into the confederacy.—4. *Furorem*, infatuation.—5. *Ab his*, from these, viz: the ambassadors from the Remi.—6. *Quantæ*, how powerful.—7. *Omnia se habere explorata*, that they had all things fully examined.

P. 94.—1. *Divitiacum*, Divitiacus—not the Æduan.—2. *Totius belli summam*, the direction of the whole war.—3. *Longissimè absunt*, are very remote.—4. *Qui appellantur uno nomine Germāni*, who are called by one name, Germans—*ad quadraginta millia* about forty thousand.—5. *Liberaliter prosecūtus oratione*, having complimented them highly in a speech.—6. *Ad diem*, by the day appointed.—7. *Magno opere*, i. e. *magnopere*, greatly—*quanto opere*, i. e. *quantopere*, how much it concerned.—8. *Ne configendum sit*, that he might not have to contend.

P. 95.—1. *Quæ res*, this position.—2. *Cohortibus*; See Gr. App. V.—3. *Duodecim pedum*, (in latitudinem) eighteen feet broad.—4. *Gallorum eadem atque*, &c. of the Gauls as well as of the Belgæ.—5. *Quod tum*, &c. this was then easily done. 6. *Potestas consistendi in muro erat nulli*, the power of standing on the wall was to none; no man was able to stand on the wall. 7. *Prærat*, was over; had the command of; was governor of.—8. *De mediâ nocte*, soon after midnight.

P. 96.—1. *Quos*, &c., which, (viz: villages and buildings,) they could reach.—2. *Et ab milibus passuum* &c., at less than two miles distant (viz: *castris*, from the camp).—3. *Prælio supersedēre*, to defer a battle.—4. *Solicitationibus periclitabatur*, trial was made in skirmishes.—5. *Ex utrâque parte*, &c., had a steep descent on both sides; literally, had descents of the side on both sides.—6. *Et frontem leniter fastigatus*, and in front gently sloping.—7. *Ad extremas fossas*, at the extremities, or ends of the ditches.—8. *Tormenta*, military engines, viz: the *Catapulta* and the *Balista*; See Index.—9. *Quod tantum multitudine poterat*, because they could do so much by their great number; were so powerful, or strong, in numbers.—10. *Si quâ opus*, &c. if it should be needful any where.

P. 97.—1. *Non magna palus erat*, there was a small morass.—2. *Expectabant*, continued waiting to see.—3. *Secundiore nostris*, being more favorable to our men.—4. *Demonstratum est*, has been

shewn; See Ch. 5.—5. *Si minūs potuissent*, if they could not do this;—*ad gerendum bellum*, for carrying on the war; for prosecuting the war.—6. *Impeditos*, embarrassed.—7. *Quorum in fines*, into whose soever boundaries, or territory.—8. *Et domesticis copiis*, &c., and enjoy the abundance of provisions which they had at home.

P. 98.—1. *Hæc quoque ratio*, this consideration also.—2. *His persuadēri*,—*non poterat*, these could not be persuaded; See Idioms, 68, 1.—3. *Nullo certo ordīne*, in no fixed, determined, regular order. 4. *Cùm sibi quisque*, &c.:—Since each one sought to be foremost on the route.—5. *Insidias veritus*, fearing a stratagem, an ambuscade,—*qui morarētur*, that they might delay; in order to delay.—6. *Cùm (illi) ab extrēmo*, &c.. when those in the rear, to which they had come.—7.. *Tantam māltitudinem*, quantum, &c., as great a number as the length of the day allowed.

P. 99.—1. *Vacuum ab defensoribus*, empty, unprotected by defenders.—2. *Vineas agere*, to move forward the vineæ; See Index.—3. *Aggere jacto*, a mound being thrown up; See Index.—4. *Turribusque constitūtis*, and towers being erected on it; See Index, *Turris*.—5. *Potentibus Remis*, the Remi requesting it; at the request of the Remi.—6. *Impetrant*, they obtain it; viz: that they should be preserved.—7. *Majores natu*, greater by birth, i. e. older, more advanced in age.—8. *Passim manibus*, with extended hands.—9. *Facit verba*; literally, makes words, i. e. speaks,—present tense for the past; § 44, I. 3:—The pupil may here note the difference between *facere verba*, and *dare verba*,—the first means “to make a speech;” the last, “to put off with words,” i. e. “to deceive.” 10. *In fide*, &c., under the protection, and in the friendship of, &c., i. e. had always been protected and befriended by.

P. 100.—1. *Non solum Bellovācos*, &c., that not only the Bellovaci themselves, but also the Adui for them, entreated that he would use.—2. *Cùm quereret*, when he enquired; on enquiry.—3. *Nihil vini*, no wine.—4. *Increpitare*, &c., that they inveighed against and accused.—5. *Confirmare*, asserted, declared; were determined, it was their fixed resolution.—6. *Conditionem*, offer, proposal.—7. *Expectare*, were expecting, were waiting.—8. *Expectari*, were expected, were waited for.

P. 101.—1. Arrange: *Conjecisse*, mulieres (et homines) qui viderentur inutiles, &c.—2. *Eorum diērum*, &c., the custom of those days in respect of the march:—*Exercitūs* is governed by *itinēris*.—3. *Neque esse quicquam*, &c., literally, and that when the first legion

had come into the camp, &c.,—to attack this legion under its baggage would be a matter of no great difficulty; i. e. there would be no great difficulty in attacking, &c.—4. *Quâ (legiōne) pulsâ, relata quæ (legiōnes)*.—5. *Ei rei*, to this subject, viz. the training of cavalry.—6. *Valeat (efficere)*.—7. *Incisis atque inflexis*, being cut in, and bent over.—8. *Crebris in latitudinem, &c.*, numerous branches, and briars, and thorns, intervening in a lateral direction:—The young trees being gashed but not separated from the root, still continued to grow, and when bent over, their branches stood out in a lateral direction; the interstices were filled with briars and thorns, so that the whole formed a strong and impervious barrier.—9. *Loci quem locum*, of the place which.

P. 102.—1. *Infimâ (parte) apertus, &c.*, open, clear at the bottom, woody towards the top.—2. *Secundum flumen*, along the river,—*Statiōnes equitum*, troops of horse on guard.—3. *Aliter se habēbat ac*, literally, had itself otherwise than; i. e. was different from what.—4. *Expeditas*, free from all encumbrance, i. e. without the load of baggage which the soldier was accustomed to carry, generally amounting in all to sixty pounds besides his arms.—5. *Identidem*, from time to time.—6. *Quām quem ad finem*. i. e., *ad finem ad quem*, to the limit to which; as far as.—7. *Quod tempus, &c.*, which had been agreed upon as the time of joining battle.—8. *In manibus*, close at hand.—9. *Adverso colle*, up the hill, viz: the hill opposite that on which they had stood.

P. 103.—1. *Vexillum proponendum*, the standard had to be displayed.—2. (Ii) *qui processerant paullo longius causâ petendi ageris*, (erant) *arcessendi*, those, who had gone to a greater distance, in order to fetch materials for the rampart were to be recalled.—3. *Successus et incursus*, the near approach and onset.—4. *Erant subsdio*, were of advantage.—5. *Singulisque legionibus*, and from their respective legions,—*singulos legatos*, every lieutenant.—6. *Nihil*, equivalent to *non* or *nullum*;—the construction is *quod ad nihil*, did not now at all wait for any order from Cæsar.—7. *Per se*, of themselves, of their own accord.—8. *Videbantur (illis)*, seemed to them proper; they thought best.—9. *Quam in partem*, into whatever part.—10. *Neu perturbarentur animo*, nor be agitated in their minds. 11. *Exiguitas*, the shortness.

P. 104.—1. *Dejectus*, declivity.—2. *Necessitas*, urgency.—3. *Prospectus impediretur*, and the view in front was obstructed.—*Neque certa*, neither with certainty; § 98, Obs. 10.—4. *In tantâ iniquitate rerum*, in such an unequal situation of affairs.—5. *In sinis-*

*trâ parte acie*, on the left part of the line; (*acie*) an old form of the genitive for *aciei*; § 17, Exc. If *acie* be regarded as the ablative, it will then be rendered “in the line on the left part.”—6. *Exanimatos*, out of breath, panting,—*confectos*, spent, exhausted.—7. *Nam his ea pars obvenérat*, that party had fallen to their lot; had been accidentally opposed to them.—8. *In fugam dedérunt*, put to flight.—9. *Diversæ legiōnes*, other legions, different from those mentioned before.—10. *At tum*, but at this time.—11. *Summum locum castrorum*, literally, the top of the place of the camp, i. e. the summit on which the camp stood.—12. *Levisque armatūræ pedestes*, foot soldiers of the light armor; the light armed infantry.—13. *Quos pulsas (esse)*, who had been routed.—14. *Adversis hostiibus occurrébant*, met the enemy in front, face to face.

P. 105.—1. *Calōnes*, the soldiers’ servants.—2. *Decumānā portâ*, the decuman or rear gate of the Roman camp:—So called because the tenth cohorts were situated there.—3. *Versāri*, were actively engaged.—4. *Mandābant sese præcipītes fugæ*, committed themselves headlong to flight.—5. *Diversos dissipatosque*, scattered in every direction.—6. *Urgēri*, were overpowered.—7. *Primopilo*; See Index, *Primopilus*.—8. *Confecto*, i. e., *ita confecto ut*.—9. *A fronte*.—in front.—10. *Subeuntes*, advancing.

P. 106.—1. *Signa inferre*, to carry forward the standards; i. e. to advance,—*laxāre manipulos*, to extend the maniples.—2. *Cujus adventu*, by his arrival; 38.—3. *Pro se quisque*, they, each one for himself; i. e. to the best of his ability.—4. *Legiōnes sese conjungērent et inferrent conversa signa*, that the legions (viz: the seventh and twelfth,) should advance with the standard turned two ways; i. e. with double front.—5. *Ne aversi*, that when turned away.—6. *Versarētur*, were.—7. *Nihil ad celeritatem*, &c.; Arrange: *fecerunt nihil reliqui esse sibi*, they caused that nothing remaining was to them; they did all they could as to speed; they made all the haste they could.—8. *Omnibus in locis*, &c., in every quarter of the fight they thrust themselves before the legionary soldiers; i. e. they strove to surpass them in valor.—9. *Præstiterunt*, displayed.

P. 107.—1. *Qui superessent*, those who survived.—2. *Uti ex tumulo*, as if from an eminence.—3. *Redegērat*, had rendered.—4. *Prope ad interneciōnem*, almost to extermination.—5. *Æstuaria*, &c., the low grounds and marshes.—6. *Nihil (esse) impeditum*, that nothing was a hindrance.—7. *Quos Cæsar*, &c., Cæsar, that he might appear to have exercised mercy towards the unfortunate and suppliants, preserved them, &c., (39).—8. *Altissimas rupes despec-*

*tusque*, very steep rocks and commanding views of the country below.—9. *Non amplius* (*quam ad mensuram*) *ducentorum pedum*.

P. 108.—1. *Iis impedimentis*, to that baggage.—2. *Cum* (*hi*) *aliis inferrent bellum* (*finitimis*), *aliis defendarent* (*bellum*) *illatum* (*sibi a finitimis*), when they at one time made war on their neighbors, at another time resisted the war made on themselves by their neighbors; when, at one time they acted on the offensive, at another time, on the defensive.—3. *Duodecim pedum*, of twelve feet.—4. *Vineis*; See Index.—5. *Quò*, for what purpose?—6. *Præ*, in comparison of.—7. *Movéri et appropinquāre*, moving and approaching; See Idioms, 89, 1.—8. *Ad hunc modum*, after this manner.—9. *Tantæ altitudinis*, of so great height.—10. *Et ex propinquitate*, &c., and fight close at hand.—11. *Unum petere ac deprecari*, that they begged and earnestly entreated one thing (supply *eum*) from him.

P. 109.—1. *Sibi præstare*, that it was better for them;—*in eum casum*, to that state.—2. *Priùsq; aries*, &c., before the battering ram should touch their wall; See Index, *Aries*.—3. *In Nerviis*, in the case of the Nervii.—4. *Muri aggerisque*, of the wall (of the town) and the agger of the Roman camp; See Index, *Agger*.—5. *Sub vesp̄erūm*, towards evening.—6. *Tertiā vigiliā*; See Appendix I.—7. *Ignibus*, by signal fires.

P. 110.—1. *Ita acriter ut*, &c., as fiercely as it ought to have been fought; See Idioms, 88, 7.—2. *Ad* (used adverbially) about.—3. *Sectiōnem*, booty:—So called, because divided into small sections or portions, to be sold.—4. *Capitum numerus millium*, &c. the number of fifty-three thousand souls.—5. *Oceānum*, the Atlantic.—6. *Certior factus est*, he was informed.—7. *Dies quindēcim supplicatio decreta est*, a thanksgiving of fifteen days was decreed.

### NOTES ON BOOK III.

PAGE 111.—1. *Quo* (*itinēre*) by which (road).—2. *Cum magnis portoriis*, with heavy duties, or imposts:—The duty levied on goods in harbor, (*in portu*) was called *portorium*. This term was afterwards extended, as here, to denote the duty paid for liberty to carry goods through a particular country, or the tax paid at bridges.—3. *Hic vicus*, this village.—4. *Eum locum*, this part, *i. e.* the part of the village in which the cohorts were to pass the winter.

P. 112.—1. *Neque eam plenissimam*, and that not very full: See Index, *Legio*.—2. *Singillatim*, individually.—3. *Decurrerent*, should run down.—4. *Ne primum quidem posse*, &c., they thought that that legion could not withstand even the first onset:—With *posse* supply *illam legiōnem*.—5. *Accedebat*, to this was added; another reason was.—6. *Sibi pērsuāsum habēbat*, literally, they had it persuaded unto themselves; they were firmly persuaded.—7. *Neque satis provisum esset*, nor had it been sufficiently provided; nor had a sufficient supply been provided.—8. *Nihil de bellum timendum*, he had thought that nothing was to be feared, *i. e.* that he had nothing to fear concerning the war.—9. *Neque subsidio venīri*, literally, neither could it be come to them with assistance, *i. e.* neither could assistance come to them.—10. *Placuit majōri parti*, it pleased the greater part; it was the opinion of the majority.

P. 113.—1. *Collocandis atque administrandis* (the dative of the end or design,) for arranging and executing.—2. *Gæsāque*, and javelins (the Gallic iron javelin).—3. *Int̄gris virībus*, with fresh strength.—4. *Frustra*, in vain, without effect.—5. *Sed hoc (nostri) superāri*, but in this they (our men) were overcome, were inferior.—6. *Paucitātem*, their fewness.—7. *Non modo*, &c., an opportunity was not given not only to the wearied.—8. *Perducta ad extrēmum casum*, brought to an extreme case, to the last extremity.—9. *Quem confectum (esse)*, &c., who, we have said, was worn out; See Idioms; 96, 2, & 94, 1st).—10. *Convocātis centurionib⁹ celeriter* (per eos) milites, &c. the centurions being called together, he quickly, through them, directs the soldiers;—*excipērent*, to take up.—11. *Omnib⁹ portis*, from all the gates of the camp:—Of these there were four; See Index, *Castra*.

P. 114.—1. *Ex (numēro) hominū amplius quād millib⁹ tri-ginta*, literally, from a number of men more than thirty thousand; *i. e.* from more than thirty thousand men.—2. (Parte) *plus tertia parte*, &c. literally, a part more than the third part being slain.—3. *Fusis* &c., being routed, and stripped of their arms:—Here *exūtis* agrees with *cōpiis*, and governs *armis* in the ablative, by § 126, R. V.—4. *Alio,—alius*, &c., with one view,—they had encountered things very different.—5. *Cæsar existimāret, de omnib⁹ causis*, Cæsar supposed, from all reasons; Cæsar had every reason to suppose.—6. (Ad) *mare Oceānum*, to the Atlantic Ocean.—7. *Præfectos tribu-nosque militum*; See Index, *Legio*.

P. 115.—1. *Scientiā atque usu*, knowledge and experience.—2. *In magno impētu maris atque aperto*, in the great and open vio-

lence, force, swell (or surge) of the sea.—3. *Ipsi*, (Veneti,) they themselves, (the Veneti).—4. *Consuērunt uti*, are accustomed to use; use to trade in; or usually trade in.—5. *Vectigāles*, tributary. 6. *Ut consilia Gallōrum*, since the designs (resolves) of the Gauls. 7. *Omnis*; Accusative plural for *omnes*, the subject of *latūros* (esse). 8. *Suos*, his (Crassus') countrymen; § 28, Exc.;—*sibi*, to them, (the Veneti) the main subject of discourse.—9. *Naves longas*, ships of war,—so called from their being much longer than the ships of burden (*naves onerariæ*).—10. *Remiges*, rowers,—*institui*, to be raised. 11. *Pro magnitudine*, in proportion to the greatness.—12. *Hoc* (faciunt), this they do.—13. *Pedestria itinera*, roads, or approaches by foot; *i. e.* by land.

P. 116.—1. *Navigatiōnem*, access by sea.—2. *Neque nostros*, &c., and they were confident that our army could not, &c. *Neque* here is copulative, and means “and not.”—3. *Opiniōnem*, the expectation.—4. *Longè aliam atque*, &c. that the navigation was far other in a confined or inland sea (such as the Mediterranean,) than, &c.—5. *Hæ erant difficultātes*, such were the difficulties, &c.—6. *Injuriæ retentōrum equitū* (the genitive passive; § 106, Obs. 1.) 7. *Rebellio*, a renewal of hostilities,—*defectio*, a revolt, a refusal of obedience.—8. *Ne arbitrarentur*, in order that they might not think; § 140, 1, 2d.—9. *Idem* (facere) *sibi licere*, that to do the same thing would be permitted to them.—10. *Novis rebus studēre*, are fond of changes.—11. *Natūrā libertāti studēre*, are naturally fond of liberty. 12. *Conditionem servitūtis*, a state of slavery.

P. 117.—1. *Auxilio* (sibi) &c., who were said to have been sent for by the Belgæ as aid to themselves.—2. *Qui eam manum*, &c., that he should take care that that body should be kept apart.—3. *Situs*, the situations.—4. *In extrēmis lingūlis*, on the extreme points or tongues of land.—5. *Cūm ex alto*, &c., when the tide had flowed in from the deep; *i. e.* when it was full tide, or high water. 6. *Minuente* (sese) *æstu*, the tide ebbing, or when the tide ebbs.—7. *Naves in vadis*, &c., the ships aground on the shallow places would be dashed with the waves.—8. *In utrāque re*, in either case.—9. *Aggēre ac molib⁹*, by a mound and dams.—10. *Appulso*, being brought up.—11. *Magnis æstibus*, &c., on account of the great tides, and there being few or almost no harbors.—12. *Factæ armatæque erant*, were built and equipped.—13. *Aliquanto planiōres*, considerably flatter.

P. 118.—1. *Excip̄re*, withstand, or admit of.—2. *Ad quamvis rim*, for enduring any violence and shock.—3. *Pedalibus*, &c.,

of planks a foot in breadth.—4. *Digiti politicis crassitudine*, of the thickness of one's thumb; *i. e.* an inch thick.—5. *Pelles pro ratis*, &c., for sails there were to them (*i. e.* they had) raw hides and thin dressed skins;—*lini*, of linen, of canvass.—6. *Regi*, to be managed. 7. *Cum his navibus*, &c., the meeting of our fleet with these vessels was of such a nature, that the former had the advantage in swiftness only, and the sweep of the oars.—8. *Reliqua*, other things.—9. *Neque enim his*, &c. for our ships could not hurt them with the beak.—10. *Copulis*, grappling irons.—11. *Sævire*, to blow hard.—12. *Casus*, the chances or dangers.—13. *Neque his nocéri posse*, and that they could not be hurt.—14. *Paratissimæ atque*, &c., in the best order, and equipped in the best manner, with every kind of tackling.

**P. 119.**—1. *Bruto*, &c., nor was it sufficiently clear to Brutus. 2. *Aut quam rationem*, &c., or what mode of fighting they would adopt.—3. *Ut*, so that.—4. *Gravius accidèrent*, fell with greater force. 5. *Falces præacutæ*, hooks with sharpened edges towards the points. 6. *Muralium*, mural hooks; *i. e.* hooks used to pull down the walls in a siege; or their defenders.—7. *Comprehensi adductique*, were grappled and pulled towards us.—8. *Latere posset*, could escape notice; could pass unnoticed, or unobserved.—9. *Cum singulas*, &c., when two or three of our ships had surrounded each one of the enemy's.—10. *Transcendere in naves hostium*, to climb over into the ships of the enemy; to board the enemy's ships.—11. *Quò ventus ferébat (naves)*, where, to which the wind carried them (*the ships*); *Singulas nostri*: &c., our men having pursued, took them one by one.

**P. 120.**—1. *Gravioris ætatis*, of heavier, *i. e.* of more advanced age.—2. *In quos*, &c., on these Cæsar resolved to inflict severer punishment, on this account that, &c.—3. *Vendidit reliquos sub corōnā*, he sold the rest under the crown; *i. e.* he sold the rest for slaves:—Prisoners taken in war wore a chaplet (*corōna*) on their heads when exposed to public sale. At sales by auction a spear was set up; hence, *vendere sub hastâ*, to sell by auction.—4. *Atque his paucis diēbus*, and within these few days.—5. *Perditōrum hominum*, of ruined men; *i. e.* men of desperate fortunes.—6. *Non nihil carparētur*, was in some degree carpèd at, railed at:—*Nihil* and *non nihil* in such sentences may be considered as accusatives governed by *quod ad*; § 128, Exc.

**P. 121.**—1. *Eo absente qui tenēbat summam imperii*, he being absent who held the supreme command; in the absence of the commander in chief.—2. *Hâc confirmatâ opiniōne timoris*, (the enemy's)

opinion of his fear being confirmed.—3. *Propōnit*, he lays before them, tells them of.—4. *Neque longius abesse*, &c.; and that it was not farther off, but that on the next night; i. e. at no greater distance of time than the next night.—5. *Ad castra iri oportere*, literally, that it ought to be gone to the camp; See Idioms, 67.—6. *Perfūgæ confirmatio*, the assertion of the deserter.—7. *Quibus*, with which, i. e. that with these.—8. *Quām minūm spatii*, as little space of time as possible.—9. *Exanimāti*, out of breath.

**P. 122.**—1. *Integris virībus*, with strength still fresh.—2. *Sabinus* (*factus est certior*) *de*, &c.—3. *Minimè resistens*, by no means firm.—4. *Ex tertīâ parte*, as the third part,—an unusual expression, and probably the text is incorrect.—5. *Non mediōcrem*, &c., that more than ordinary diligence must be used by him.—6. *Quo plurimum valēbant*, in which they were very powerful.

**P. 123.**—1. *Cujus rei*, &c., in which art the Aquitani are by far the most expert.—2. *Ærariæ sectūræ* copper mines.—3. *Nihil his rebus profici posse*, that they could be profited nothing by these things.—4. *Quorum hæc est conditio*, the condition of whom (i. e. of whose association) is this.—5. *Sibi mortem consciscant*, or make away with themselves.—6. *Barbāri*, the barbarians (referring to the Vocates and Tarusates).—7. *Et natūrâ loci et manu*, both by natural situation and by art.

**P. 124.**—1. *Citeriōris Hispaniæ*; See Index.—2. *Loca capere*, to select proper ground.—3. *Facilè*, easily; i. e. with safety.—4. *In dies*, every day; literally, from day to day.—5. *Hāc re delatā ad consilium*, this matter or plan being laid before a council (of war).—6. *Sentire idem*, thought the same thing; were of the same opinion, viz: with himself.—7. *Duplici acie*, a double line:—The Romans usually drew up their army in three lines; on the present occasion only two were formed, probably on account of their being inferior in number to the enemy.—8. *Auxiliis*, &c., the auxiliaries being placed in the centre,—their usual place was on the wings.—9. *Cum suā cunctatiōne*, &c.. when the enemy had by their own delay, and the opinion which was now entertained of their cowardice, made our soldiers the more eager for battle.

**P. 125.**—1. *Constanter et non tim'dè*, steadily and boldly. 2. *Decumānā portā*, at the decuman, or rear gate; See Index, *Castra*.—3. *Intritæ*, not worn out, not fatigued.—4. *Longiōre itinēre*, by a longer route than usual.—5. *Posset planē vidēri ab iis*, it could be distinctly seen by them.—6. *Intenderunt*, strove.

P. 126.—1. *Multâ nocte*, late at night,—or *multâ nocte actâ*, much of the night being spent.—2. *Supererant*, (supply *soli*, evidently implied,—hence the subjunctive following *qui*; § 141, R. V.) alone remained.—3. *Qui longè alia ratione ac*, &c., and they resolved to prosecute the war in a very different manner from the rest of the Gauls.—4. *Continentesque silvas*, &c., and because they had extensive, uninterrupted forests:—Before *continentes* supply *quòd*. 5. *Longius*, too far.—6. *Inermibus*, &c., on the soldiers unarmed.—7. *Materiam*, timber.

P. 127.—1. *Conversam*, &c., turned towards, facing, the enemy.—2. *Confecto*, being cleared.—3. *Extrema*, the last of the baggage.—4. *Sub pellibus*, literally, under skins; *i. e.* in their tents:—The tents of the Roman soldiers were covered with skins. It does not appear that they ever used canvass for that purpose.—5. *Quæ proximè*, &c., which had made war upon him last.

#### NOTES ON BOOK IV.

P. 128.—1. *Eâ hieme*, &c.. the winter which followed; the next or following winter.—2. *Cneio Pompeio*, &c.:—Before Christ, 55, A. U. C. 699.—3. *Quo Rhenus*, &c. where the Rhine flows into it: near the mouth of the Rhine.—4. *Qui domi manserint*, since or because they remain at home.—5. *Nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur*, nor are the art and practice of war disused, discontinued, forgotten.—6. *Maximam partem*, for the most part; See Ref.—7. *Nullo officio*, &c., they are trained by no duty or discipline.

P. 129.—1. *Ut quæ bello cepérint*; Arrange: *ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant (ea) quæ cepérint bello*.—2. *Jumentis importatis*, imported cattle.—3. *Quotidiānâ exercitatiōne hæc prava atque deformia (jumenta) quæ sunt nata apud eos*, *ut (hæc jumenta) sint summi labōris*:—*Ut*. &c. that they, (these beasts) are capable of the greatest labor, *i. e.* of enduring the greatest labor.—4. *Audent adire ad quemvis numērum*, they dare to go to any number; they have courage to advance against, to attack, any number.—5. *Publicè*, to the nation.—6. *Significāri*, that proof is given.—7. *Vacāre*, to be empty, desolate, uninhabited.—8. *Ad alteram partem*, on the other side.—9. *Ut est captus Germanōrum*, as the state of the Germans is; *i. e.*—

considering the condition of the Germans.—10. *Amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis*, the extent and populousness of their state (viz: the Ubii).

P. 130.—1. *In eadem causâ*, in a similar case.—2. (In regiones) *quas regiones*, to the regions which.—3. *Clam*, privately, unobserved.—4. *Tridui viam*, a journey of three days.—5. *Reliquam partem hiemis*, the remaining part of the winter; the rest of the winter;—*aluerunt*, maintained, supported.—6. *Infirmitatem*, the fickleness.—7. *Nihil his committendum (esse)*, that nothing should be trusted to them.—8. *Est autem hoc, &c.*, for this belongs to Gallic custom; this is one of the customs of the Gauls.

P. 131.—1. *De summis rebus*, &c., they enter into designs, concert measures, respecting the most important affairs.—2. *E vestigio*, literally, out of the footstep; i. e. speedily, instantly.—3. *Cum incertis rumoribus serviant*, since they are mere slaves to uncertain rumors.—4. *Ne graviori bello occurrere*, that he might not meet with a more formidable war (viz: than he expected).—5. *Facta (esse)*, had been done already.—6. *Dissimulanda sibi*, should be concealed by him.—7. *Resistere (iis)*, to resist them and not to sue for peace.—8. *Suam gratiam*, their (the Germans') favor.—*Sibi*, to them, the Germans.—9. *Eos (agros) quos*, those lands which; i. e. such lands as; See Ref.—10. *Concedere*, yielded, acknowledged themselves inferior to.—11. *In terris*, upon the earth.

P. 132.—1. Arrange: *Cæsar respondit ad hæc, quæ visum est* (ei respondere).—2. *Exitus*, the conclusion.—3. *Verum*, just, reasonable, proper, right:—*Verus* has this sense chiefly when joined to the verb *esse*; as *verum est*, it is proper.—4. *Neque ullos in Galliâ, &c.*, nor were there any lands vacant in Gaul.—5. *Et parte, &c.*:—This is the reading of the Bipont edition. It is adopted by Anthon, and is manifestly better than the common text.—6. *In plures difflit partes*, divides into several branches.—7. *Multis capitibus*, by many heads, or mouths.

P. 133.—1. *Sibi jurejurando, &c.* should give them security by an oath.—2. *Eodem illo pertinere*, tended to the same end:—*Eodem* and *illo*, here used adverbially, are properly old forms of the dative from *idem* and *ille*.—3. *Sustinèrent*, should stand their ground.

P. 134.—1. *Amplissimo genere natus*, descended from a very illustrious family.—2. *Intercluso*, intercepted.—3. *Se obtulit*, presented himself; rushed against.—4. *Summæ dementiæ esse judicabat*, he judged it to be the greatest folly; literally, to belong to, or to be

the part of, the greatest folly.—5. *Ne quem diem, &c.*, not to let a day pass without a battle.—6. *Omnibus principibus, &c.*, all the leading men and elders being brought along; literally, being taken unto them.—7. *Sui purgandi*, for the sake of clearing, excusing themselves.—8. *Contra atque*, otherwise than; contrary to what had been said.—9. *Quos sibi Cæsar, &c.* Cæsar rejoicing that these had been cast in his way.

P. 135.—1. *Perturbantur, &c.*, are thrown into confusion, so that they were at a loss whether it would be best, &c.—2. *Significaretur*, was discovered, was evident.—3. *Pristini diei*, of the day before;—for *pridie*.—4. *Clamōre*, a shout or noise, (either of the Roman cavalry attacking those with whom they came up in the rear,—or the wailing of those attacked.—5. *Ad confluentem*, at the confluence.—6. *Reliquā fugā desperatā*, despairing of making good their flight any farther.—7. *Ex tanti belli timore, &c.*, from the alarm of so great a war, since the number of the enemy had been about four hundred and thirty thousand:—Before *capitum*, supply *ad numerum*.—8. *Discedendi potestātem*, the liberty of departing.

P. 136.—1. *Suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit*, wished they should be alarmed for their own possessions.—2. *Et posse et audere*, had both the power and the courage.—3. *Accessit etiam*, it was added also; i. e. another reason was.—4. *Cur sui quicquam, &c.* why should he (Cæsar) demand that any command or authority should belong to him beyond the Rhine?—5. *Occupationibus reipublicæ*, by the business of the republic.—6. *Neque sui neque Populi Romani*, and thought that it became neither his own dignity nor that of the Roman people.—7. *Proponebatur*, was placed before him, was manifest.

P. 139.—1. *Instituit, &c.*, he determined on this plan of a bridge.—2. He joined together at the distance of two feet, *tigna bina*, beams, or piles, two by two, (or in pairs,) sharpened a little at the lower end, and measured, (or proportioned) to the depth of the river.—3. *Hæc cùm machinationibus, &c.*, when he had fastened these, being let down into the river by machines, and had driven them down with rammers (*fistūcis*).—4. *Non sublīcæ, &c.*, not perpendicularly after the manner of a stake, but bending forward and sloping (downward, or down the stream).—5. *Iis item contraria, &c.*, likewise opposite to these, at the distance of forty feet down the river, (*ab inferiore parte fluminis*), he placed two others joined in the same manner, but turned (up the stream) against the force and current of the river.—6. *Hæc utraque insuper, &c.*, both these

(viz: the pair above and the pair below,) were kept apart (or from falling towards each other,) by beams let in from above, two feet thick, being as much as the joining of these piles was apart, (*i. e.* as the piles, joined by the braces, were apart,)—each having two braces, one on each side near the end.—7. *Quibus disclusis*, &c., these (pairs) being kept apart, and (at the same time,) bound together in the contrary direction.—8. *Ea rerum natūra*, such the nature of the materials.—9. *Quo major vis*, &c., literally, by how much a greater force of water urged itself on; *i. e.* that the more the force of the current pressed on, the more closely were they held bound together.—10. *Hæc* (*tigna*, *i. e.* beams of two feet square, reaching from one pair of piles to the other below it,) *directa materie*, &c., were fastened together with timbers laid lengthwise (*directa*) of the bridge; *i. e.* from beam to beam.—11. *Longuriis*, &c., and covered over with long poles and hurdles.—12. *Ac nihil secuſ*, &c., and besides all this, piles were driven in obliquely at the lower part of the stream.—13. *Pro pariēte*, for a buttress, or support.—14. *Et aliae item*, and likewise others.—15. *Dejiciendi opēris* (*causā*), for the sake of throwing down (destroying) the work,—the bridge.—16. (*Ex*) *Quibus materia*, &c., after the days in which, or, after that the materials had been begun to be brought together:—*Quibus*, *i. e.* *ex diebus quibus*, is here used instead of the more common expression, *postquam*, or *ex (tempore) quo*;—See also B. III. Chap. 23d. and Gr. § 131, Obs. 3d.—17. *Ad utramque partem*, at each end.

P. 140.—1. *Iis hortantibus*, by the advice of those.—2. *In solitudinem ac silvas abdidérant*, had gone into the deserts and forests to conceal themselves;—This rendering gives the force of the accusative after *in*, which is evidently a better reading than *in solitudine*, &c., which excludes the idea of going to;—So also, *in silvas deponeret*, below.—3. *Hunc esse delectum*, that this was selected as nearly the middle, or centre.—4. *Ulcisceretur*, that he might punish.—5. *Satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum*, that enough had been done, both for his honor and for utility, (*profectum* is from *proficio*, and means the same as *perfectum*).—6. *Matūræ*, early.—7. *Inde*, thence, *i. e.* from Britain.

P. 141.—1. *Temérè*, rashly, without good reason.—2. *Neque iis ipsis quicquam notum est*, nor is any thing known even by them. 3. *Quem usum belli*, &c., what experience they had in war, or what customs they followed.—4. *In eâ sententiâ*, in that mind, resolution. 5. *Horteturque*, and that he should urge them.—6. *Fidem sequantur*,

to embrace the alliance; literally, should follow the faith.—7. *Quan-*  
*tum ei facultatis*, &c., as far as opportunity could be given; literally,  
 with so much of opportunity as, &c.; See Idioms, 46, 1.—8. *Qui*,  
 since he.

P. 142.—1. *De superiōris*, &c., for their past conduct.—  
 2. *Has tantulārum*, &c., these engagements in such trifling affairs.  
 3. (*Tot*) *navibus onerariis*, so many ships of burden, &c.,—*quot*, as;  
 See Index, *Naves*.—4. *Tertiā fere vigiliā*, near the third watch, or  
 midnight.—5. *Solvit* (naves), looses his ships, sets sail.—6. *Con-*  
*scendēre naves*, to go on board; to embark.—7. *Horā quartā*, the  
 fourth hour, i. e. 10 o'clock, A. M.; See Gr. App. I.—8. *Exposi-*  
*tas*, drawn out, displayed.

P. 143.—1. *Adeo angustis*, so steep.—2. *Ad egrediendum*, for  
 disembarking, for landing.—3. *Ad nonam horam*, till the ninth hour,  
 i. e. 3 o'clock P. M.—4. *Monuitque*, &c., and warned them that all  
 things should be done at a beck, and in a moment, as the principles,  
 &c.—5. *Et essedariis*, and the essedarii, i. e. those who fought from  
 the essēdum, or two wheeled chariot.—6. *Prohibebant*, attempted  
 to hinder; See § 44. II. 2.—7. *Militibus—desiliendum*, &c. the sol-  
 diers had to leap down from the ships.—8. *Omnibus membris expe-*  
*diti*, having the free use of all their limbs.—9. *Insuetos*, accus-  
 tomed to such exercise.—10. *Quarum et species*, both the appearance  
 of which.

P. 144.—1. *Remis incitāri*, to be pushed on, rowed briskly  
 forward, with the oars.—2. *Tormentis*, engines (for throwing heavy  
 darts or stones, namely, the balista and catapulta).—3. *Quæ res*,  
 this expedient.—4. *Ac paulum modò*, &c. and retreated only a little,  
 a very little.—5. *Qui* (he), who.—6. *Ea res*, that thing (viz: which  
 he was about to do).—7. *Magnā voce*, with a loud voice.—8. *Ex*  
*nave se projecit*, he threw himself out of the ship, overboard.—  
 9. *Singulāres*, one by one, one after another.—10. *Quod cùm ani-*  
*mum, vertisset*, i. e. *Cùm vertisset anīmum ad quod*.—11. *Scaphas lon-*  
*gārum navium*, the boats belonging to the vessels of war.—12. *Specu-*  
*latoria navigia*, spy vessels.

P. 145.—1. *Cursum tenēre*, hold on their course;—*atque insū-*  
*lum cap̄ere*, and reach the island.—2. *Suprà*, viz: Ch. 21.—3. *Modo*  
*oratōris*, in the character of an ambassador.—4. *Culpam contulē-*  
*runt*, laid the blame.—5. *In continentem*, to the continent, i.e. to  
 Gaul.—6. *Imprudentiæ*, their indiscretion.—7. *Arcessitam* (esse),  
 had been sent for.—8. *Post diem quartum*, after the fourth day i. e.,

on the fourth day after.—9. *Suprà*; See Ch. 23,—*sustulerant*, had taken on board.—10. *Quæ cùm appropinquārent*, and when they were drawing near.—11. *Quæ est propiùs solis occāsum*, which is more to the west.—12. *Quæ*, these.—13. *Necessariò adversā nocte in altum proiectæ*, from necessity, being carried out to sea in an unfavorable, stormy, night.

P. 146.—1. (*Dies*) *qui dies*, a day which (viz: the day of the full moon.—2. *Nostris id incognitum erat*, to our men this (viz: the great rising of the tide,) was unknown:—The phenomena of the tides were but little known to the Romans, as the tides in the Mediterranean with which they were most familiar, are scarcely observable.—3. *Quæ diligātæ erant ad anchōras*, which had been tied to the anchors; which had been riding at anchor.—4. *Afflictābat*, dashed violently against; drove from their moorings.—5. *Quòd omnibus constābat*. because it was evident to all.—6. *His in locis*, in these places (viz: in Britain).—7, *Rem producēre*, to prolong the war.—8. *Ex eventu navium*, from what happened to, from the disaster of, the ships (the genitive passive).—9. *Et ex eo quòd*, &c., and from this, because they had intermitted; *i. e.* and from their having intermitted.

P. 147.—1. *Ad omnes casus*, for every emergency; against all contingencies.—2. *Reliquis ut navigāri*, that it could be navigated with the rest.—3. *Dum ea geruntur*, whilst these things are carrying on, doing; during these transactions.—4. *In statiōne*, on guard.—5. *Quām consuetūdo ferret*, than custom brought; *i. e.* than was usual. 6. *In stationib⁹*, on guard.—7. *In statiōne succedēre*, to succeed on guard.—8. *Et, confertā legiōne tela*, &c., and that the legion being crowded together, weapons were hurled upon it from all quarters. 9. *Quòd*, because, inasmuch as.—10. *Incertis ordinib⁹*, on account of not knowing their ranks, (They had been scattered about, reaping, and being attacked while thus employed, they could not find their ranks.—11. *Genus hoc est*, &c., the manner of fighting from the chariots was this.—12. *Ipsō terrōre equōrum*, by the very terror occasioned to the horses (the genitive passive); and the noise, *rotarū*, of the wheels (the genitive active); § 106, Obs. 1.

P. 148.—1. *Insinuavērint*, when they have wrought themselves in.—2. *Aurīgæ*, the charioteers, or drivers:—Each chariot contained a driver called *auriga*, and one who fought, called *essēdarius*.—3. *Atque ita curru se collocant*, and place themselves with the chariot in such a situation.—4. *Præstant mobilitātem equitū*, &c., they perform, unite the swiftness of cavalry and the steadiness

of infantry.—5. *Ac efficiunt tantum*, and they acquire such dexterity.—6. *Incitatos equos sustinere*, to rein in their horses when at full speed.—7. *Et brevi (tempore)*, and in a moment.—8. *Continuos plures dies*, many days in succession.—9. *Suis (civibus)*, to their own countrymen.—10. *Quanta facultas, &c.*, how favorable an opportunity was presented of getting booty, and of regaining their independence forever.

P. 149.—1. *Ante dictum est*, viz: Ch. 21, & 27.—2. *Omnibus afflictis incensisque longè latèque*, having destroyed and burned every thing far and wide; See Idioms, 104, 1.—3. *Die æquinoctii*, the equinox.—4. *Hiëmi navigatiōnem subjiciendam*, that his voyage ought to be exposed to a storm (viz: the equinoctial storm).—5. *Eosdem quos reliquæ portus capere*, to make the same harbor which the rest made.—6. *Quibus ex navibus, &c.*, had been landed from these ships.—7. *Non ita magno*, with not so great. i. e. with no very great number.—8. *Si nollent*, if they did not wish.—9. *Orbe facto*, forming themselves into a circle; See above, Note 2.—10. *Vertérunt terga*, turned their backs; fled.

P. 150.—1. *In densissimas silvas abdidérant*, had gone into the thickest parts of the forests to hide themselves; See Note 2, page 140.

#### NOTES ON BOOK V.

P. 151.—1. *Lucio Domitio*, i. e. A. U. C., 700.; B. C. 54.—2. *Quam plurimas possent, &c.*, that as many new ships as possible should be built, and old ones repaired.—3. *Ad celeritatem onerandi, &c.*, for despatch of lading and drawing them on shore, he builds them a little lower than those which, &c.—4. *Nostro mari*, in our sea, viz: the Mediterranean.—5. *Actuarias*, light, easily driven; See Index, *Naves*.—6. *Adjūvat multùm*, contributes much,—7. *Ad armandas*, for equipping.—8. *Omnibus rationibus*, in every proper way.

P. 152.—1. *Qui litem aestiment*, to estimate the damage (Idioms, 83, 2,) and fix the compensation.—2. *Conventibus*, the assizes. 3. *Instructas*, got ready finished.—4. *Neque multùm abasset, &c.*, nor was much wanting but that they could be launched in a few

days; *i. e.* there was so little to do that they could, &c.—5. *Transmissum*, &c., the passage across into Britain was the most convenient, being a passage of about thirty miles.—6. *Expeditis*, unincumbered with baggage.—7. *Alter*, the one (*viz:* Cingetorix).—8. *In silvam*, &c., having gone and concealed themselves in the forest of Arduenna; See Note 2, p. 240.

P. 153.—1. *Civitati consulere*, take measures for the state; for the common good.—2. *Laberetur*, should fall off, revolt.—3. *Permissum (esse)* would give up.—4. *Suam gratiam*, that his influence.—5. *Exarsit multo gravius hoc dolore*, he was much more exasperated at this affront.—6. *Non potuisse tenere cursum*, could not keep their course; could not proceed on their voyage.

P. 154.—1. *Antea dictum*; B. I. Ch. 3.—2. *Cupidum novarum rerum*, fond of changes, of insurrections, of a revolution in the state.—3. *Id factum*, this fact.—4. *Petere contendit*, endeavored to obtain,—*religionibus*, religious obligations.—5. *Non sine causâ fieri*, that it was not done without some secret motive; that Gaul was stripped of all her nobility.—6. *Fidem reliquis interponere*, that he pledged his word to the rest.—7. *Quod esse ex usu*, &c., whatever they should understand to be for the interest of Gaul.—8. *Quod tantum dignitatis*, because he had always shewn so much respect.—9. *Longius progreedi*, was going too far.—10. *Prospiciendum*, that he ought to take care.

P. 155.—1. *Ne quid sibi*, &c. lest he (Dumnorix) should not be able, have it in his power, to do any injury to him and the state. 2. *Corus*, the northwest wind.—3. (*Ut*) *cognoscere*, that he should find out.—4. *Omnium animis impeditis*, the minds of all being engaged.—5. *Hunc pro sano*, that he, as a man in his senses.—6. *Ille enim*, but, or nevertheless he.—7. *Consiliumque pro tempore*, &c., and that he might take measures, (form his plans,) according to time and circumstances.—8. *Pari numero equitum quem*, &c. with a like number of cavalry which; *i. e.* with a number of cavalry equal to that which he left.—9. *Longius delatus aestu*, being carried down by the tide farther than usual.—10. *Secutus*, taking advantage of.

P. 156.—1. *Virtus*, the valor, *i. e.* the efforts, the exertions, 2. *Vectoriisque navigiis*, in transports and heavy laden vessels.—3. *Accessum est (ab illis) ad*, they (the Romans) reached, arrived at.—4. *Cum annotinis*, with the ships of the previous year.—5. *Veritus navibus*, fearing for the ships,—instead of *de navibus*.—6. *In littore molli atque aperto*, on a smooth and open shore.—

7. *Præclusi*, blocked up.—8. *Testudine factâ, et aggere*, &c., a *tes-*  
*tudo* being erected and a mound thrown up against their fortifi-  
cations.

P. 157.—1. *Tripartitò*, in three divisions,—*milites*, the foot  
soldiers, the infantry.—2. *Superiore nocte*, in the former night.—  
3. *Afflictas atque*, &c.—had been dashed against each other, and  
driven on shore.—4. *Subsistèrent*, could hold out.—5. *Ex eo concur-*  
*su*, from that rencounter of the ships; from the ships running foul  
of one another,—6. *Incommódum*, injury, damage.—7. *Coram*,  
openly, with his own eyes.—8. *Res*, a work.—9. *Subduci*, to be  
drawn on shore.—10. *Summa imperii*, &c. the chief command and  
administration of the war.—11. *Superiore tempore*, at a former  
period.

P. 158.—1. *Quos natos*, &c., “ who, they say it was handed  
down by tradition, were born on the island,”—an opinion prevalent  
among many ancient nations respecting themselves.—2. *Bello illato*,  
the war having been waged, being over.—3. *Creberrima*, very thick,  
close together.—4. *Fere Gallicis consimilia*, almost like; i. e. closely  
resembling those of the Gauls.—5. *Taleis ferreis ad certum pondus*,  
&c , pieces of iron tried by, i. e. of, a certain weight.—6. *Plumbum*  
*album*, tin (literally, white lead).—7. *Copia*, the quantity.—8. *Ma-*  
*teria*, wood, timber.—9. *Causâ animi voluptatisque*, for the sake of  
amusement and pleasure.—10. *Loca*, places, climate.—11. *Remissi-*  
*oribus*, less intense.—12. *Triquetra*, triangular.—13. *Ad Cantium*,  
in Kent:—from Land’s end to the eastern extremity of Kent, is about  
344 British miles, or 356 Roman miles in a straight line. It would  
be much more to follow the irregularities of the coast.—14. *Ad Hispaniam*:—This statement is erroneous, as Spain lies to the south,  
not to the west of Britain.—15. *Dimidio minor*, less by one half:—  
Great Britain is computed at 77,370 square miles,—Ireland at  
30,370.—16. *Sed pari spatio transmissus*, but the passage across to  
Britain is the same distance as from Gaul.—17. *Mona*, the Isle of  
Man.—18. *Dies continuos*, &c., that there is night for thirty suc-  
cessive days at the winter solstice, i. e. the 22d December:—This is  
not true in fact, unless the dark, cloudy, and foggy weather, at that  
season, is here improperly called “ night.”—19. *Nisi certis ex aquâ*,  
&c. but we perceived, by accurate water measures, that the nights  
were shorter than on the continent.—The “ water measure” is the  
*Clypsedra*, or water-clock,—an invention similar to the sand-glass.

P. 159.—1. *Septingentorum millium*, seven hundred miles:—  
The true length of the western coast is 590 British or 610 Roman

miles.—2. *Contra septentriōnes*, opposite the north.—This is not correct; the east is much nearer the truth.—3. *Octinginta millia passuum*, eight hundred miles:—This exceeds the true estimate 230 Roman miles.—4. *Humanissimi*, most civilized.—5. *Se vitro inficiunt*, stain themselves with woad.—6. *Capillōque sunt promisso*, and are with, *i. e.* they have, long hair.—7. *Deni et duodēni*, parties of ten and twelve,—*habent uxōres commūnes inter se*.—8. *quo primum virgo*, &c., by whom each female, when a virgin, was first married. 9. (Ita) *tamen ut*, in such a way however that.—10. *Submissis*, being sent to their aid,—*atque his*, and these.—11. *Constitissent*, had taken their ground.

P. 160.—1. *Cùm*, since, or as; § 140, Obs. 3.—2 *Intellectum est* (a nobis) *nostros*, we perceived (Idioms 67,) that our men.—3. *Cedentes*, those giving way —4. *Cedērent*, gave way, yielded.—5. *Pedibus dispāri prælio*, on foot, in an unequal contest; *i. e.* with great advantage (against us).—6. *Conferti*, close, in a close body; —*rari*, scattered here and there —7. *Alios alii deinceps excipērent*, &c., and they continued one to relieve another in succession, and the vigorous and the fresh succeeded (took the place of) those fatigued.—8. *Leniūs*, with less spirit.—9. *Uti non absistērent ab*, that they kept not far from, *i. e.* close to, &c.—10. *Neque post id tempus*, &c., nor after that time did the enemy ever engage us with all their forces; nor did the enemy, after that time, ever come to a general engagement with us.

P. 161.—1. *Acūtis sudībus præfixis*, with sharp stakes fixed in front.—2. *Cùm capite*, &c., when they (the soldiers) were above the water with the head alone; *i. e.* were up to the neck in the water.—3. *Ut suprà*, &c.; Ch. 17.—4. *Dimissis amplioribꝫ copiis*, the greater part of the forces being dismissed.—5. *Ex viâ excedēbat*, withdrew from the road.—6. *Relinquebātur*, &c., it remained that Cæsar did not suffer;—*discēdi* (ab militibꝫ) that the cavalry should go; Idioms, 67.—7. *Hostībus nocerētur*, &c., that the enemy were injured by laying waste their lands and setting fire to their property, as far as the legionary soldiers could effect it in the midst of labor and on their march, *i. e.* on a laborious march.

P. 162.—1. *Atque mittat* (eum, *i. e.* Mandubratium,) *qui præsit*, &c., and send him (Mandubratius) into the state that he might rule over it, and hold the government.—2. *Ad numērum*, to the number,—*imperātum*, required,—*frumentāque*, and abundance of corn:—“Abundance” is expressed by the plural term, *frumenta*.—3. *Prohibītis*, being protected.—4. *Vocant oppidum*, call it a town

5. *Ad mare*, on the sea shore; Ch. 13.—6. *Adoriantur atque oppugnent*, should attack and storm; take by assault.

P. 163.—1. *Motus*, disturbances, commotions, insurrections.—2. *Refectas*, repaired,—his (*navibus*) *deductis* (in *mare*), these ships being brought down into the sea; *i. e.* being launched.—3. *Captivorum*, of prisoners.—4. *Commeatibus*, embarkations.—5. *Navigatiōbus*, voyages, trips.—6. *Desiderarētur*, was missing, lost.—7. *Et priōris commeātus*, both those of the previous convoy,—*et quas*, and of those which.—8. *Perpaucē locum capērent*, very few reached their destination.—9. *Necessariō angustiūs milites collocavit*, from necessity stowed his soldiers more closely (than usual).—10. *Subductis navībus* (in *aridum*), the ships being drawn on shore.—11. *Frumentum provenērat angustiūs*, corn, grain had (come forth) been produced more scantily; the crop had been less abundant.—12. *In plures civitātes*, among a greater number of states than usual.

P. 164.—1. *Mederi*, cure, remedy.—2. *Millibus passuum*, &c., were contained within the space of a hundred miles:—(Probably an error as to the extent.)—3. *Natus summo loco*, descended from a very noble family; of very noble birth.—4. *Tertium jam annum*, &c. killed him, (*Tasgetius*) now reigning the third year, many belonging to the state being the instigators.—5. *Quòd ad plures*, &c., because it pertained to more than one; *i. e.* more than one were concerned in it.—6. *In hiberna perventum* (*esse*), that they had arrived at winter quarters; literally, it had been come by them to winter quarters.

P. 165.—1. *Qui cùm ad fines*, &c., and when they had met Sabinus and Cotta at the borders of their kingdom.—2. *Desperatā re*, having despaired of success.—3. *De communi re*, concerning their common interests.—4. *Minui posse*, could be adjusted; literally, diminished.—5. *Missu Cæsaris*, by the sending of Cæsar; *i. e.* being sent by Cæsar.—6. *Ad hunc modum*, to this purpose.—7. *Sese*, that he (*Ambiorix*):—This speech is given in oblique narration; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—8. *Plurīmum ei debēre*, that he was under very great obligations to him.—9. *De oppugnatiōne castrōrum*, respecting the attack on the camp.—10. *Suāque esse*, &c., that his authority was of such a nature,—*multitudo*, the people.—11. *Ex humilitate suā*, from his weakness, slender circumstances.—12. *Esse Galliæ commune consilium*, &c., that it was the purpose of the whole of Gaul, that this day had been appointed by them for attacking (at once) all the winter quarters of Cæsar; so that no legion could bring aid to another.

P. 166.—1. *Quibus quoniam pro pietate, &c.*, since he had done justice to them so far as affection (to his country) required, that he now had regard to the claims of duty for the kindnesses of Cæsar to him.—2. *Pro hospitio*, by the ties of friendship.—3. *Ipsorum esse consilium*, it belonged to them (Titurius and Cotta,) to consider,—*velintne*, whether they should.—4. *Quod cum faciat*, since he was doing this, *i. e.* in doing this he consulted, &c.—5. *Existit*, arises.—6. *Sustineri*, could be withstood, resisted.—7. *Rem esse testimonio*, that fact was for proof; *i. e.* that facts proved this.

P. 167.—1. *Levius aut turpius*, weaker or more cowardly.—2. *Auctore hoste*, an enemy being the author; on the information of an enemy.—3. *Clamitabat*, kept crying out; § 44, II. 2.—4. *Cæsarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam*, that he supposed that Cæsar had gone into Italy.—5. *Non hostem auctorem, &c.*, that he did not look at the enemy's being the adviser, but at the thing itself.—6. *Ardere*, burned with resentment.—7. *Sine certâ re*, without certain information.—8. *Si nil sit durius*, if nothing occurred more difficult than ordinary.—9. *Unam salutem*, their only security.—10. *Præsens*, immediate.—11. *Hac in utramque, &c.*, this dispute being maintained on both sides.—12. *Primisque ordinibus*, and the chief centurions.—13. *Vincite*, prevail, carry your point:—This is spoken in the direct discourse; § 141, R. VI. Exp.—14. *Et id, and that, i. e. et dixit id*.—15. *Hi (milites)*, these (referring to the Roman soldiers within hearing,) will understand;—*abs te ratiōnem*, will demand satisfaction from you (Cotta); will call you to account.—16. *Nec rejecti nec relegati, &c.*, and not perish with either the sword or famine, as if forced away and banished far from the rest.

P. 168.—1. *Consurgitur*, they arise, break up.—2. *Utrumque*, both; viz: Cotta and Titurius.—3. *Res disputatiōne ad medium noctem*, the affair is protracted by their dispute; *i. e.* the subject is debated till midnight.—4. *Dat manus*, gives his hands; *i. e.* yields,—a mode of expression borrowed from the form of making a surrender by stretching forth, or holding up the hands.—5. *Pronunciātur*, it is published; orders are given,—*vigiliis*, without sleep.—6. *Quid, i. e. spectans, or visurus quid*, to see what.—7. *Omnia excogitantur*, &c., every reason is suggested to show,—*quare, why*.—8. *Vigiliis*, want of sleep.—9. *Ut quibus persuāsum esset*, since they were persuaded.—10. *Se demississet*, had gone down.—11. *Ut qui*, since he, or because he.—12. *Hac tamen ipsa (fecit)* these very things however (he did),—*atque (ita) ut*, and so that; in such a way that.—13. *In ipso negotio, &c.*, to deliberate in the very moment of action.

P. 169.—1. *Auctor*, an adviser.—2. *Possent minus facile obire omnia per se*, they could less easily perform every thing themselves; every part of their duty could not be performed by them in person (viz: Cotta and Titurius.)—3. *Jussérunt* (duces) *pronunciare* (militibus).—4. *In orbem consistérant*, and form (Idioms, 85,) themselves into a circle.—5. *Incommódè accidit*, it proved unfortunate.—6. *Vulgò*, every where:—7. (Ut) *quæ quisque*, &c. that whatever things any one of them considered the most valuable, these he hastened, &c.—8. *Consilium non defuit barbaris*, prudence was not wanting to the barbarians; the barbarians were not deficient in prudence, skill.—9. *Illorum esse prædam*, &c., that the booty belonged to them, (the Gauls) and that whatever the Romans should leave would be reserved for them; (Idioms, 94, 3.)—10. *Erant et virtute*, &c., both in valor and number, our men were a match for them in fighting.—11. *Cedant*, they should give way before them.—12. *Nihil iis nocéri posse*, that they could not be hurt:—For *nihil* see § 116, Obs. 3.

P. 170.—1. *Locum tenere*, to keep his place (in the circle).—2. *Ad horam octavam*, till the eighth hour (2 o'clock, P. M.)—3. *Utrumque femur tragulâ transigitur Tito Balventio*, each thigh is pierced through with a dart, to T. Balventius, a brave, &c.; a dart transfixes both the thighs of T. Balventius.—4. *Subvenit*, is bringing aid; is endeavoring to rescue.—5. *In adversum os*, full in the mouth.—6. *Ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri*, but that he should not be hurt; that no harm should be done to himself;—*se interponere*, that he pledged.—7. *Atque in eo constitit*, and persisted in it.—8. *In presentia* (tempora), at present.

P. 171.—1. *Victoriam conclamant*, shout victory.—2. *Illi*, they, viz, those who had retreated to the camp.—3. *Ad unum*, to a man.—4. *Sublatos*, being elated.—5. *Nihil esse negotii*, that it was an easy matter.—6. *Se profitetur*, he offers himself.—7. *Huic quoque accedit*, to him, to this officer (Cicero) it happened.

P. 172.—1. *Ægrè is dies sustentatur* (a nostris), that day is maintained by our men with difficulty; *i. e.* our men hold out that day with difficulty.—2. *Propositis*, being offered.—3. *Turres admödum*, &c., one hundred and twenty towers in all, altogether.—4. *Præustaë sudes*, stakes burned at the end.—5. *Turres contabulan tur*, towers of several stories are raised;—*pinnae loricæque*, &c., battlements and parapets are constructed of interwoven hurdles.—6. *Cum esset tenuissimâ valetudine*, though he was in a very feeble state of health.—7. *Sibi parcere*, to spare himself.—8. *Allquem*

*adītum sermōnis*, any intimacy.—9. *Factā potestāte*, leave being given.

P. 173.—1. *Ambiorīgem ostentant*, &c., for the sake of gaining credit, they ostentatiously point to Ambiorix; *i. e.* they tell of his arrival.—2. *Eos*, that they; viz: Cæsar and his army.—3. *Hoc anīmo*, of such a disposition; are so favorably disposed.—4. *Licēre illis*, that it would be permitted to them (the Romans),—*per se*, by them (the Nervii).—5. *Adjutōre*, as an intercessor.—6. *Pro ejus justitiā*, through his regard for justice.—7. *Sed nullā ferramentōrum copiā*; but there being no quantity (or abundance) of iron tools.—8. *Sagūlis* (dim. of *sagum*), short cloaks.—9. *Terram exhaūrire*, to remove the earth.—10. *Millium* (passuum).—11. *Falces testudinesque*, mural hooks and sheds; See Index, *Vineæ* and *Testūdo*.—12. *Ferventes glandes ex fusili argillā*, red hot balls of cast clay.—13. *Fervefacta jacūla*, fiery javelins.—14. *Distulērunt*, spread the flames.—15. *Agēre*, advance.

P. 174.—1. *Demigrandi*, of retiring from the fight, yielding.—2. *Acerrīmē fortissimēque*, with the greatest ardor and bravery.—3. *Recessumque primis*, &c., and the last (the farthest off) did not give a retreat, (an opportunity of retreating,) to the foremost.—4. *Turri*, a tower, (of the enemy,)—*vallum* (our) rampart.—5. *Quorum*, of whom; viz: the enemy;—*progrēdi*, to come forth; viz: from the tower.—6. *Deturbāti*, &c., they were dislodged and the tower set on fire.—7. *Qui jam primis ordinib⁹*, &c., who were advancing (rising) to the first ranks.—8. *Spectas*, do you look for.—9. *Quāque*, and where.—10. *Procurrentem*, running forward (to engage him).—11. *Hunc*, him (the wounded enemy).

P. 175.—1. *In illum*, at him (Pulfio).—2. *Succurrit inimīcus*, &c. Varenus, though his rival, runs up and assists him in danger.—3. *Hunc*, him, (Varenus).—4. *Illum*, that he (Pulfio).—5. *In locum dejectus*, &c., stumbling, he fell; or, he stumbled and fell into a hollow place.—6. *In contentiōne et certamīne*, in this honorable rivalry and contest;—*utrumque versāvit*, &c., employed, directed, both, that the one, though the rival, alternately brought aid and security to the other.—7. *Quanto gravior*, &c., the more severe and difficult,—*tanto crebriōres*, the more frequently; § 98, Obs. 10.—8. *Unus Nervius*, a certain Nervian.—9. *Honesto loco*, of an honorable family.—10. *Servo* (suo) a slave of his.—11. *Pericūlis*; the great danger (literally, the dangers).—12. *Undecimā horā*, the eleventh hour, 5 o'clock, P. M.; see Gr. App. I.

P. 176.—1. *Quà sibi iter faciendum sciēbat*, where he knew he would have to pass.—2. *Si reipublicæ commōdo*, &c. if he could do it with advantage to the state.—3. *Litēras publicas*, the public documents.—4. *Tolerāndæ hiēmis causâ*, for the sake of enduring the winter; for a winter supply.—5. *Rem gestam*, the things done, the course pursued.—6. *Opiniōne dejectus*, disappointed in his expectation; literally, cast down from his expectation.

P. 177.—1. *Si adire non possit*, if he could not gain access (to the camp).—2. *Ad amentum diligātā*, tied to the thong, or strap: The *amentum* was a strap fastened to the middle of a spear or javelin, by means of which it was thrown with greater force.—3. *Casu*, by chance.—4. *Perlectam*, being read over; after he had read it over himself.—5. *Expūlit*, dispelled, put an end to.—6. *Tamen angustiis viārum*, nevertheless, by the narrowness of the ways (or passages) between the tents.

P. 178.—1. *Galli* (hoc faciunt) *Cæsar* (hoc facit).—2. *In suum locum*, to his own ground; i. e. ground favorable to him.—3. *Portasque obstrui*, &c., the gates to be blocked up, and in doing this, that they should run to and fro as much as possible:—This was designed to lead the enemy to believe that there was great trepidation and fear in the camp.—4. *Etiam de vallo deductis*, &c., and being drawn back, even from the rampart, they (the enemy,) approach nearer.—5. *Ad se*, to them, viz: from the Roman camp.—6. *Ac sic nostros contemserunt*, and to such a degree did they show their contempt of us.—7. *Eâ* (viâ), in that way.—8. *Longius*, too far.—9. *Illōrum*, of them, viz: the enemy.

P. 179.—1. *Legiōne productā*, &c., having led forth the legion; having reviewed the legion, he finds; (Idioms, 104,).—2. *Pro ejus merito*, according to his merit; as he deserved;—*appellat*, he addresses by name.—3. *Rem gestam propōnit*, he lays before them (viz: Cotta and Sabinus) the matter as it took place.—4. *Culpā*, by the misconduct.—5. *Hoc*, on this account.—6. *Quād*, seeing, since. 7. *Incommōdo expiāto*, &c., the loss being retrieved; the disaster having been remedied by the kindness, &c.—8. *Post horam nonam*, after 3 o'clock, P. M.; See Gr. App. I.—9. *Trinis hibernis*, in three several winter quarters; i. e. in three different places.—10. *Consultābant*, were consulting, deliberating; § 44, II. 2.—11. *Quid consiliī relīqui capērent*, &c., what measures the rest were adopting, and when a beginning of the war would be made.—12. *Concilia*, assemblies, meetings.

P. 180.—1. *Quin aliquem, &c.*, but he heard, (that he did not hear,) some intelligence.—2. *Armoricae*, states lying along the north of Gaul, now Bretagne.—3. *Dicto audientes*, obedient:—In this phrase *audientes* governs *dicto*, by § 112, R. V.; again, the words *audientes dicto*, together, are equivalent to *obedientes*, and often govern another dative by the same Rule; as, *Nobis dicto obediens*, obedient to us.—4. *Tantum valuit*, prevailed so much; had so much influence.—5. *Attulit*, produced, caused.—6. *Præcipuo semper honore habuit*, treated always with special honor.—7. *Altéros,—altéros*, the former,—the latter.—8. *Nulla fere civitas, &c.*, almost every state was suspected by us.—9. *Idque adeo, &c.*, and I do not know whether this is to be wondered at.—10. *Quàd, qui, &c.*, because they grieved most bitterly that they who were accustomed to be ranked before all nations in valor, had lost so much of that reputation that they should endure the commands of the Roman people.—*Qui* has for its antecedent *se* in the next clause.

P. 181.—1. *Lapsus hâc spe*, having fallen from this hope; *i. e.* being disappointed in this hope.—2. *Ultro ad se ventri* (*ab hominibus*, 67, 7,) that men were coming to him of their own accord.—3. *Omnibus cruciatibus*, by every species of torture.—4. *Alterius factiōnis*, of the opposite faction.—5. *Secūtum fidem Cæsaris*, having put himself under the protection of Cæsar.—6. *Huc*, to them.

P. 182.—1. *Sub castris*, close up to the camp.—2. *Quibuscumque poterat rebus*, by whatever means he could.—3. *Intromissis*, being let in (to the Roman camp).—4. *Quos arcessendos, &c.*, who he had taken care should be sent for.—5. *Nullâ ratiōne*, in no way.—6. *Cum magnâ contumeliâ*, with great insult of words; with most abusive language.—7. *Dispersi ac dissipati* in a dispersed and scattered manner.—8. *Præcipit atque interdicit*, commands and forbids, —*præcipit* has for its object, *unum omnes petant Indutiomārum*; and *interdicit*, the next clause, *neu quis, &c.*—9. *Morā reliquōrum*, by the delay (of pursuing) the rest.—10. *Comprobat*, favors.

## NOTES ON BOOK VI.

P. 183.—1. *Dilectum hab̄re*, to hold a levy; to raise forces.—2. *Quoniam ipse ad urbem, &c.*, since he (Pompey) remained near the city with military command, on account of the republic (The

laws did not allow a person invested with military powers to enter the city,) that he would order those troops which he had raised in Cisalpine Gaul (and had bound) by the oath of fidelity to the consul.—3. *Sarciri*, &c., be repaired, but even be more than compensated by greater forces.—4. *Quod cum Pompeius*, &c., Pompey having granted this.—5. *Ut docūmus*, as we have shewn.—6. *Obsidi-busque de pecuniā carent*, secure the payment of the money by means of hostages.

P. 184.—1. *Ad imperātum*, to the thing commanded; *i. e.* to do the thing commanded.—2. *Nondum hiēme confectā*, the winter being not yet ended, *i. e.* before the end of winter.—3. *Uti institu-ērat*, as he had been accustomed.—4. *Omnia* every thing else.—5. *Sed ab hoc consilio abfuisse existimabantur*, but were supposed to be absent from, (not concerned in) this scheme (plot).—6. *Hāc re*, &c., this thing (the adjournment) being published from the tribunal; (an elevated place formed of turf or other material heaped up together, *suggestus*).—7. *Conantibus*, &c., to them attempting to do this.—8. *Sententiā*, from this design.—9. *Deprecandi*, of excusing their conduct.—10. *Quōd aestivum*, &c., because the summer was the time for prosecuting the war, not for legal investigations.

P. 185.—1. *Totus et mente et animo*, wholly with his mind and soul; *i. e.* with his whole heart and soul.—2. *Ne quis aut ex hujus iracundiā*, &c., that no commotion might arise, either from this man's violent temper, or from that hatred on the part of the state which he had incurred (in consequence of having been made king over it by Cæsar).—3. *Pro explorāto*, for certain.—4. *Circumspiciēbat ejus* (*Ambiorigis*) *reliqua consilia animo*, watched his other plans in his mind (*i. e.* with attention).—5. *Perpetuis paludib⁹*, continued, uninterrupted marshes.—6. *Illi*, from him (*Ambiorix*),—*ipsum*, (*Ambiorix*) himself.—7. *Congrēdi cum Transrhenānis*, to unite with those beyond the Rhine.—8. *Manu*, an army.—9. *Præsidio loci*, to the protection of the place, the strength of their position.—10. *Effectis*, erected, built.—11. *Adit tripartito*, marches against them in three divisions.

P. 186.—1. *Augebātur* (hostib⁹) was increased to the enemy.—2. *Loquitur*, he (*Labienus*) speaks.—3. *In dubium non devocatūrum*, would not endanger, involve in doubt.—4. *Gallīcis rebus*, the interest, the affairs of the Gauls.—5. *Primis ordinib⁹*, the chief centurions:—6. *Longum esse*, that it would be long, too long, too late.

P. 187.—1. *Usus eādem simulatiōne itinēris*, practising the same deception respecting his march.—2. *Facultātem*, opportunity. 3. *Prāstāte*, display.—4. *Præsidio ad impedimenta dimissis*, being detached to the baggage for a guard; *i. e.* to guard the baggage.—5. *Præter spem*, contrary to expectation.—6. *Infestis signis*, with hostile standards.—7. *Cingetorlgi—traditum est*, was conferred on Cingetorix; See B. V. Ch. 3. and 56.—8. *Ne Ambiōrix ad eos recep-tum haberet*, that Ambiorix might not have a retreat to them; a place of refuge among them.

P. 188.—1. *Causâ purgandi sui*, on purpose to clear, to justify themselves.—2. *Neque abs se fidem lāsam*, nor had their promise been violated by them.—3. *Ne commūni odio, &c.*, lest in his common hatred of the Germans.—4. *Causâ cognitâ*, on enquiry.—5. *Imperitos ignorant*.—6. *Refērunt*, report.—7. *Infinītâ*, of vast extent.—8. *Ab Suevis*, on the side of the Suevi.

P. 189.—1. *Aliēnum*, improper, foreign to the purpose.—2. *Proponēre*, to treat of, lay before, to give some account of.—3. *In omnībus pagis parlibusque*, in all the cantons and parts of cantons.—4. *Principes eārum factiōnum, &c.*, the heads of these factions are (persons) who in their opinion are considered to have the greatest interest, on whose will and decision all their most important affairs and resolutions hinge, depend.—5. *Idque ejus rei causâ, &c.*, and this custom seems to have been instituted from early times, for this reason.—6. *Quisque non patītur*,—*neque habent*, each leader (patron),—neither do they have:—The pupil may here notice the transition from the singular, *patītur*, with *quisque*, to the plural, *ha-bent*; § 102, Obs. 5.—7. *Hæc eādem ratio est, &c.*, this same principle exists, prevails. in the government of all Gaul.—8. *Principes*, chief, at the head of.—9. *Jactūris*, expenses, gifts:—This is a pure use of the word, which denotes a present loss in expectation of future benefit.—10. *Tantum potentiâ antecessērant*, they (the Sequani) so far excelled (the *Ædui*) in power.—11. *Re infectâ*, the business, his object, being accomplished.—12. *Eōrum amicitiam* their (the *Ædui's*) friendship.

P. 190.—1. *Rēlīquis rebus, &c.*, here the participle, *amplificatâ*, agrees with the nearest noun; See § 98, Obs. 4.—2. *Dimisē-rant*, (for *amisērant*,) had lost.—3. *Quos quōd adæquāre, &c.*, and because it was understood that they (the Remi) equalled the *Ædui* in Cæsar's favor; *i. e.* had an equal share of Cæsar's favor with the *Ædui*; stood as high in &c.—4. *Vetēres inimicitiās*, ancient feuds.—5. *Dicābant se Remis in clientēlam*, gave up themselves to the Re-

mi for protection; put themselves under the protection of the Remi,  
 6. *Aliquo numero*, of any note;—*genēra*, classes.—7. *Aere aliēno*,  
 by debt, literally, the money of another.—8. *In hos eādem*, &c.,  
 over these the nobles have all the same rights as masters have  
 over their slaves.—9. *Altērum est Druīdum*, one is that of the Drui-  
 dīs (See Index)—the other, that of the knights.—10. *Illi*, the for-  
 mer;—*ad hos*, to the latter.—11. *Procūrant*, have charge of.—  
 12. *Ii (Druīdes) sunt apud eos (adolescentes)* they (the Druids)  
 are in great honor among them, viz: their pupils.—13. *Non stetit decretō*, &c., has not stood by, has violated their decree,—they  
 exclude them from the public rites, excommunicate them.—14. *Si quibus ita interdictum est*, those who are thus excommunicated (Idioms, 66).—15. *Defugiant aditum eōrum*, &c., shun their company  
 and conversation.

P. 191.—1. *Habet summam auctoritātem*, possesses the su-  
 preme authority; whose authority is absolute.—2. Arrange: *Quæ regio habētur media (regio) totius Galliæ*, which is esteemed the middle,  
 or central region of all Gaul.—3. *Parent*, obey, abide by, acquiesce  
 in.—4. *Disciplīna*, &c. this institution is thought to have originated  
 in Britain.—5. *Diligentiūs*, more accurately.—6. *Militiæ vacatiō-  
 nem*, exemption from military service.—7. *Immunitātem omnium re-  
 rum*, immunity, privilege, free use, enjoyment, of all things; all im-  
 munities.—8. *Præmiis*, rewards, advantages, privileges.—9. *Edi-  
 cēre*, to learn by heart; to commit to memory.—10. *Ea litēris man-  
 dāre*, to commit these things to writing.—11. *Instituisse id*, to have  
 instituted this custom.—12. *Disciplinam efferri*, that their doctrine  
 should be spread abroad.—13. *In primis hoc volunt*, &c., they (the  
 Druids) in particular wish to inculcate this idea; it is a favorite  
 maxim of the Druids.—14. *Anīmas nōn interīre*, &c., that souls do  
 not die, but pass from one body to another.—15. *Dispūtant*, &c.,  
 they reason and impart their reflections to the young.

P. 192.—1. *Cūm est usus*, when there is need.—2. *Versantur*,  
 are engaged.—3. *Ambactos*, retainers.—4. *Dedita religionib⁹*, given,  
 addicted to religious rites, to superstitions.—5. *Contexta vimini⁹bus*,  
 interwoven with twigs.—6. *Ejus genēris(nocentium)*, of this class  
 of offenders.—7. *Deum maximē Mercurium colunt*, they (the Gauls)  
 worship chiefly the god Mercury; i. e. Mercury is the chief or favo-  
 rite deity of the Gauls:—Not however the Mercury of the Grecian  
 mythology, but a Gallic deity.—8. (Colunt) *Apollinēm*, &c.—9. *Ini-  
 tia*, the beginnings, the first knowledge.

P. 193.—1. *Quæ superaverint*, &c. they sacrifice the captured animals which remain.—2. *Posita*, deposited (in sacred places).—3. *Spatia omnis temporis*, all their periods or divisions of time.—4. *Ut noctem dies subsequatur*, that the day follows the night; i. e. their day is from sunset to sunset as among the Jews.—5. *Palam*, openly; i. e. publicly, in public.—6. *Conjunctim ratio habetur*, a joint account is kept.—7. *Fructusque servatur*, and the interest is laid up.—8. *Vitæ superarunt*, shall survive the other.—9. *Habent questionem de uxoribus in servilem modum*, they examine their wives by torture, after the manner of slaves; like slaves.—10. *Si competum est*, if any discovery is made.—11. *Pro cultu*, considering their mode of life.—12. *Vivis cordi fuisse*, to have been pleasing to them living.

P. 194.—1. *Commodius*, to greater advantage than others; more judiciously.—2. *Quæ visa sunt*, what seemed proper to them; i. e. what they thought proper.—3. *Per consilium*, through, or during; i. e. in the time of the council.—4. *Neque student*, nor do they pay attention to.—5. *Opibus quorum*, &c., by whose power they are manifestly benefited.—6. *Vulcānum*, fire.—7. *Constitit*, is spent 8. *Impuberes*, chaste.—9. *Rhenōnum*, of deer's hides.—10. *Quantum et quo loco*, &c., as much land as, and where they think proper. 11. *Afférunt multas causas ejus rei*, they produce many reasons for this practice.

P. 195.—1. *Accuratiūs*, with greater care.—2. *Animi æquitātē*, in evenness of mind, contentment.—3. *Proprium virtutis*, peculiar to, or a proof of, their valor.—4. *Dicunt jus, controversiasque minuunt* administer justice and decide controversies.—5. *Qui velint sequi profiteantur*, let those who wish to follow signify it, give their names. 6. *Ac tempus fuit antea*, but there was a time formerly.—7. *Ulro bella inferrent*, they (the Gauls) without provocation brought war:—*Germānis*, upon the Germans.

P. 196.—1. *Summam opinionem*, a very high character, reputation for justice, and military glory.—2. *Gallis autem*, &c., the nearness of the (Roman) province to the Gauls, and their acquaintance with foreign commodities.—3. *Largitur multa ad copiam atque usus*, supplies many articles of luxury and convenience.—4. *Expedito*, to a traveller without baggage; to an expeditious traveller.—5. *Finītri*, be measured.—6. *Sinistrorsus*, to the left hand (viz: of the Danube,) stretches northward from the Danube.—7. *Memoriae prodenda videantur*, seem worthy to be handed down to remembrance.—8. *Bos*, See Index, *Bison*.—9. *Sicut palmæ*, like palms.

P. 197.—1. *Alces*, elk; See *Alce*.—2. *Varietas pellium*, the spots, varied color, of their skins.—3. *Si afflictæ quo casu concidérint*, if, being thrown down by any accident, they have fallen.—4. *Appli-cant se ad eas*, they lean themselves against these.—5. *Infirmas*, being weakened —6. *Uri*; See *Urus*.—7. *Quæ sunt testimonio*, to serve as a proof.—8. *Ne parvuli quidem excepti*, not even those caught young. 9. *Amplissimis*, their most splendid.—10. *Cæsar*:—Cæsar having finished his digression, respecting the manners of the Gauls and Germans, (Ch. 11—28,) here resumes his narrative.

P. 198.—1. *Si quid celeritatem*, &c., to see if he may be able to gain any thing by rapidity of march and favorable opportunity.—2. *Ut imperatum est*, as was ordered.—3. *Fortuna potest* (*facere*) *multum*, &c. fortune can do much; i. e. has great influence, not only, &c.—4. *Magnæ fuit fortunæ*, it was a piece of great good fortune.

P. 199.—1. *Multum fortuna valuit*, fortune can do much, has great power or influence.—2. *Judicio*, from choice, designedly.—3. *Exclusus tempore*, prevented by want of time.—4. *Sed certè*, but it is certain.—5. *Alienissimis* to total strangers.—6. *Omnibus preci-bus*, with every sort of execration.—7. *Taxo*, with yew; i. e. with a decoction of the leaves or berry, both of which were regarded as poisonous.—8. *Causam omnium Germanorum esse unam*, that the cause of all the Germans was one and the same.—9. *Questione cap-tivorum*, from an examination of the captives.

P. 200.—1. *Post diem septimum* (*inchoatum*), after the seventh day was begun; i. e. on the seventh day;—2. *Ut suprà*, Ch. 31.—3. *Nulla certa manus*, no regular force.—4. *Vicinitatibus*, to the neighborhoods; i. e. to the people in the neighborhood:—a very com-mon mode of speech in our own language.—5. *Ex parte*, partly, in a measure.

P. 201.—1. *Confertos*, in large parties.—2. *Si vellet*, if he (Cæsar) wished.—3. *Instituta ratio*, established discipline.—4. *Ut potius in nocendo*, &c., that some opportunity of injuring the enemy should be omitted, rather than that this injury should be inflicted with any danger to his soldiers.—5. *Legionarius miles*, the legionary soldiery; the soldiers of the legion; i. e. the regular troops.—6. *Ap-petebat*, was drawing near —7. *Quantos casus afférat*, how great accidents she brings; i. e. how great changes she brings about.—8. *Manus erat nulla*, there was no collected body.—9. *Suprà docu-mus*, we have shewn above; B. IV. Ch. 16.

P. 202.—1. *Non palus non silvæ morantur hos*, &c., no marsh, no woods hinder these men, &c.—2. *Tantum præsidii ut ne*, &c., so little of garrison that not even the walls could be surrounded with men; *i. e.* could be manned.—3. *Duce*, guide,—*indicio*, information. 4. *Qui illius patientiam pæne obsessiōnem*, &c., who called his forbearance almost a siege, since they were not permitted to go out of the camp.—5. *Qui convaluērant*, &c., those who had recovered during this interval.—6. *Subsidērat*, had remained.—7. *Casu*, by chance, by accident.

P. 203.—1. *Mercatōres qui sub vallo tendērent*, the sutlers who pitched their tents close to the ramparts.—2. *Reliquos aditus*, and other places of entrance.—3. *Plerique novas sibi*, &c., most of them form to themselves strange superstitious notions from the place; and they place before their eyes the disaster of Cotta and Titurius, since they were overthrown in that fort.—4. *Qui primum pilum*, &c., who had led the first rank with Cæsar; *i. e.* who had been his chief centurion.—5. *Superioribus præliis*; See B. II. Ch. 25, and B. III. Ch. 5.—6. *Relinquit anīmus Sextium*, Sextius faints.

P. 204.—1. *Imperiti usus militāris*, not acquainted with the usages of war.—2. *Cuneo facto*, a wedge being made; being drawn up in the form of a wedge.—3. *Si*, if, even if:—*at*, still, yet.—4. *Nullo usu militāris rei percepto*, &c., no experience in military affairs being yet acquired.

P. 205.—1. *Non facēret fidem*, he did not gain credit, was not believed.—2. *Pæne alienātā mente*, with a mind almost alienated; devoid of reason.—3. *Questus unum*, having complained of only one thing.—4. *Locum debuisse relinqui*, ne minīmo quidem casu, that a place, or occasion, ought not to have been left, for even the smallest accident; See § 16; Exc. 2.—5. *Quarum omnium rerum maximē*, &c., of all these things it seemed the most astonishing.—6. *Obtulērint optatissimum beneficium Ambiorigi*, rendered the most acceptable service to Ambiorix.—7. *Ad vexandos hostes*, to annoy the enemy.

P. 206.—1. *Pæne natūram studio vincērent*, they almost overcame nature by exertion.—2. *Ad summam felicitātem*, to complete success.—3. *Ille erip̄ret*, &c., he continued to snatch himself from them; to escape from them by the aid of lurking places and forests: 4. *Sumsit supplicium more majōrum*, he inflicted punishment according to the practice of their ancestors.—5. *Cùm interdixisset quibus aquā atque igni*, when he had interdicted them from water and fire;

i. e. had banished them:—This was the Roman judicial mode of inflicting the sentence of banishment, “To forbid the use of water and fire”—6. *Frumento proviso exercitui*, having provided corn for the army.

[END OF NOTES.]

## INDEX,

HISTORICAL, GEOGRAPHICAL AND ARCHÆOLOGICAL,

FOR THE FIRST SIX BOOKS OF

CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

Acco, ónis, a general of the Gauls, who was at the head of the confederacy formed against the Senônes, Carnûtes, and Treviri. Cæsar, by the rapidity of his marches, prevented the execution of his plans, and ordered a general assembly of Gaul to inquire into the conduct of these nations, in which he pronounced sentence of death on Acco, who was instantly executed; B. VI. Ch. 4, and 44.

Adcantuannus, Adiomâtus, vel, Ádbuâtus, i, the chief man, for many years, among the Allobrogæs.

Aduatûca, æ, f. a fort nearly in the middle of the country possessed by the Eburônes,—a different place from Aduatûcum, the capital of the Aduatûci, now called *Tongres*, with which it appears to have been confounded by Ptolemy;—A small part of the town only may have been built when Cæsar was in that country. Hence he mentioned it as a castle, or fort. It stood near the river Mosa, (*Mæse*,) between Liege and Mæstricht.

Aduatûci, órum, m. a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay on the west bank of the Mosa, (*Mæse*,) between Namur and Liege.

Ædui, órum, (*sing. Æduus*, i.), v. Hedui, órum, one of the most powerful and wealthy nations of Gallia Celtica. Their territory lay on the W. of the Arar, (*Soane*,) between that river and the Ligëris, (*Loire*,) a little to the N. of the junction of the former with the Rhodânus, (*Rhone*.) At an early period they became the allies of Rome, to which, in some degree, their influence among the other nations of Gaul may be attributed. See Sequâni.

Æmilius, i, (Lucius), an officer in Cæsar's army, who commanded a part of the Gallic cavalry.

Æquinoctium, i. n. (from *Æquus*, equal, and *Nox*, night,) the Equinox, or time when the days and nights are equal, all over the globe. This happens twice a year, on 22d March, and 22d September. The former is called the Vernal, the latter the Autumnal Equinox. The circle, which passes through the place of the sun at these two periods of the year, has, from the phenomenon above mentioned, received the name of the Equinoctial, or Equinoctial Line, and is directly over the Equator.

Agendicum, i. n. (now *Sens*,) the chief city of the Senones, a brave and powerful people of Gaul, who inhabited the left bank of the Sequana, (*Seine*). It stood below the confluence of the Vanne and Icauna, vel, Itumna, (*Yonne*,) a southern branch of the Seine.

Agger, is, the name of a mound raised by the Romans in besieging cities. It was composed of earth, wood, hurdles, stone, &c. The agger commenced at a distance from the walls, gradually advanced towards the town, always increasing in height, till it equalled or overtopped the walls. This mound was secured by towers of different stories, (See *Turris*,) from which showers of missiles were discharged on the defenders by means of engines, and from which, when advanced near enough, a temporary platform or bridge was sometimes thrown to the top of the wall, on which the soldiers marched into the city.

Ala, æ, the wing of an army, properly the cavalry, so called from being placed on the right and left of the infantry. In the plural this term is often used to designate the troops of the allies, which (both infantry and cavalry,) were stationed on the right and left of the Roman army.

Alarii, örüm, those belonging to the *Alæ*, or wings.

Allobrœges, um, (sing. Allobroox, ögis,) a people of Gaul, whose country lay between the Isara, (*Isere*,) and the river Rhodanus, (*Rhone*.) They bravely, and for a long time, resisted the power of the Roman legions, but were at last defeated by Pomtinus. Cicero extols them for their fidelity to his countrymen, of which they gave a remarkable proof in Catiline's conspiracy (See Sallust, B. C.) Horace censures them for their love of novelty, which seems characteristic of the inhabitants of that country, both in ancient and modern times. Cæsar De Bel. Gal. IV. 5. The chief town of the Allobrœges was Vienna, (*Vienne*,) on the left bank of the Rhone, 13 miles below Lugdunum, (*Lyon*.)

Alpes, ium, a chain of mountains separating Italy from Gaul and Germany. They are in the form of a crescent, and extend from the Sinus Flanaticus, (the gulf of Quarnero,) at the top of the

gulf of Venice, to Vada Sabatia, (*Savona*,) on the gulf of Genoa, a distance of 600 miles. They have been divided into different portions, the principal of which are the following: 1. *Alpes Maritimæ*, (or Maritime Alps,) extending from the vicinity of Nice to Monte Viso. 2. *Alpes Cottæ*, (or Cottian Alps,) from Monte Viso to Mont Cenis. 3. *Alpes Graiae*, (or Graian Alps,) between Mont Iseran and Little St. Bernard. 4. *Alpes Penninæ*, (or Pennine Alps,) from Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhone and Rhine. To this range belongs Mt. Blanc, 14,676 feet high. 5. *Alpes Rhæticæ*, (or Rhætian Alps,) from St. Gothard to Mount Brenner in the Tyrol. 6. *Alpes Noricæ*, (or Noric Alps,) from Mount Brenner to the head of the river Plavis. 7. *Alpes Carnicæ*, sive *Juliae*, (the Carnic or Julian Alps,) from the head of the river Plavis to the confines of Illyricum. Over these mountains there are several passes, of which the principal are, that over the Great St. Bernard, that over Mont Simplon, and that over Mont St. Gothard.

Ambarri, īrum, a people of Gaul, related to the *Ædui*, supposed to have lived on the Arar, (*Saone*,) a little to the N. of its Junction with the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*.)

Ambiānum, i, n. anciently Samarobrīva, now *Amiens*, a town of the Belgæ.

Ambiāni, īrum, the inhabitants of Ambiānum. They entered into a conspiracy against Cæsar, (B. G. II. 4,) and appear to have held a considerable rank among the Belgic tribes.

Ambiliāti, īrum, m. a nation of Gallia Celtica whose geographical position is not precisely ascertained. They are mentioned (B. G. III. 9,) along with the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannētes, &c., and therefore their country must have been included in the province of Bretagne or Normandy. Some editions have Ambiāni.

Ambiōrix, īgis, king of the Eburōnes, was a great enemy to the Romans. After many narrow escapes, he at last evaded the pursuit of Cæsar's men who followed him too closely, when only four of his attendants remained.

Ambivarīti, īrum, a nation of Gaul, between the Mosa, (*Mase*,) and the Rhēnus, (*Rhine*,) who were subject to the *Ædui*. B. IV. Ch. 9.)

Anartes, ium; et Anarti, v. Anartii, īrum, a people of Dacia, who inhabited the east bank of the river Tibiscus, (*Teissk*, or *Teyss*,) one of the northern branches of the Danube. Their country now forms part of Hungary.

Ancalītes, ium, a people of South Britain, who were neighbors to

the Trinobantes. Some have thought the Atrebates of Ptolemy and Antonine's Itinerary, the same with the Ancalites of Cæsar. See Horsley's *Brittania Romana*, p. 17, and Gale's *Anton. Itiner.* p. 105, 106.

Andes, ium, ībus, a nation of the Celteæ in Gaul. Their territory lay on the north bank, and near the mouth, of the river Ligēris, (*Loir..*)

Annus, i, m. a year. See Gr. App. I.

Antebrogius, i, m. a man of great influence amongst the Rhemi, who was sent ambassador to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Antesignāni, ūrum, (*Ante* and *signum*,) a name given to the soldiers who fought before the standards, or in the first line, as those who were stationed behind the standards were called *Postsignāni*, or *Subsignāni*.

Antistius, i, (Caius A. R̄hegīnus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. Cæsar, in consequence of his expecting greater commotions in that country, gave orders in the sixth year of the war, to Marcus Silānus, C. Antistius R̄hegīnus, and T. Sextius, to levy troops. We find him, at other times, appointing this lieutenant to honorable commissions.

Antistius, (See Turpio.)

Apollo, īnis, the son of Jupīter and Latōna, the god of music, medicine, augury, painting, poetry, and all the fine arts. He was born at the same birth with his sister Diāna, near the foot of Cynthus, a mountain in Delos, an island in Mare Ægeum, (*Archipelago*.) Hence he was called Cynthius and Delius; and Diana, Cynthia and Delia. Among beasts, the wolf; among insects, the grass-hopper; among birds, the cock, the crow, the swan, and the hawk; and among trees, the palm, the olive, and the laurel, were sacred to Apollo. He was represented as a tall beardless young man, of handsome shape, holding in his hand a bow, hence called *Deus Arcitēnens*, or a lyre, and his head surrounded with rays of light.

Aquila, æ, m. an eagle, also the standard of a Roman Legion. From the second consulship of Marius, and under the Emperors, the standards were most commonly of silver, seldom of gold, in the form of an eagle, from which the name is derived. The preference was given to the former metal, according to Pliny, because it is seen at a greater distance than the latter. But though the figure of the Roman ensigns was always that of an eagle, they were not always precisely alike. Sometimes they resembled an

eagle in a standing posture, at others, with outstretched wings, which was the most common form, and not unfrequently with a turret on their backs. The Roman standard, at first, was a bundle of hay fixed to a pole, *Manipulus*,—a term afterward used to denote the third part of a cohort, then of wood, sometimes of silver, and more rarely of gold, in different forms. Marius, during his second consulship, introduced into the Roman army the eagle, which continued to be ensign till the destruction of the empire. The merit of originality does not belong to the Romans, for we have the authority of Xenophon to maintain, that it was first used as a military standard by the Persians.

Aquilifer, *féri*, m. standard-bearer, whose office seems, in some degree, to correspond to that of ensign with us. His place was in the first line. To allow the standard to fall into the hands of the enemy was reckoned highly disgraceful to the whole legion, which is still the case in modern times, but particularly to the person who carried it. In one instance recorded by Livy, the standard-bearer was, for this crime, put to death. But the centurions suffered the same punishment at that time, and the army was decimated for cowardice and treachery.—It does not appear from Roman history, that recourse was had to such severity, unless in instances of wilful dereliction of duty, proceeding either from unmanly timidity or treacherous intention.

Aquileia, æ, f. a famous seaport belonging to the Veneti on Mare Hadriaticum, (*Gulf of Venice*.) Strabo says it was built by the Romans, to repel the inroads of the barbarians, when their territory on that coast did not extend farther north. The name has been thought to be derived from an eagle, *Aquila*, flying over the site at the time the foundation was laid; but more probably from the Roman standard, in consequence of two legions having been long stationed in that place. From its splendor and magnificence, it was sometimes called *Roma Secunda*. Altilia, king of the Huns, after a long and obstinate siege, plundered it, A. D. 452, and so completely was the city destroyed, that the next generation could scarcely discover its ruins. Since that time, a few fishermen's huts point out the place near which it stood. Aquileia, according to Pliny, was at the distance of 1500 paces from the coast.

Aquitania, æ, f. one of the three principal divisions of Gallia, (*France*,) bounded on the east by Provincia, (*Languedoc, Provence*, and *Dauphiné*;) on the north by the river Garumna, (*Garonne*,) which separates it from Gallia Celtica, on the west by Oceanus Cantabricus, (*Bay of Biscay*,) and on the south by Py-

renæi Montes, (*Pyrenees, or Pyrenean Mountains,*) which divide Gallia from Hispania, (*Spain.*) As Aquitania was much less than either of the other two divisions, Augustus extended its northern boundary to the river Ligĕris, (*Loire.*)

Aquitāni, ūrum, (sing. Aquitānus, i.) the inhabitants of Aquitania. Arar, āris, m. (*Saone,*) a smooth flowing river of Gaul, which takes its rise near Mount Vosĕgus, (*Vosge,*) runs southward, and after receiving several streams, falls into the river Rhodānus, (*Rhone,*) at Lugdūnum, (*Lyon, or Lyons.*) B. I. Ch. 12.

Arduenna, æ, f. *Ardennes*, a forest of Gaul, the largest in that country, reaching, according to Cæsar, from the Rhenus, (*Rhine,*) to the territory of the Remi, upwards of fifty miles in length. Others make the extent of this forest much larger. If it reached from the territory of the Treviri to that of the Remi, it would greatly exceed fifty miles. The ground is now in many places cleared, and cities built upon it. Strabo says, the trees of this forest were not of a great height, and its length did not exceed forty miles.

Arecomīci, ūrum, a people of Gaul, who lived on the Gallīcus Sinus, (*Gulf of Lyons,*) to the west of the river Rhodānus, (*Rhone.*) See Volcæ.

Aries, ētis, m. a ram:—also a military engine for battering down walls. It is said to have been first used by the Carthaginians at the siege of Gades, (*Cadiz.*) This instrument was originally very simple. To the end of a beam, varying in length and thickness according to circumstances, was affixed a piece of iron in the form of a ram's head, to which it owes its name. This powerful engine of war rested on the arms of the soldiers who worked it. The first improvement made on the battering ram, was to suspend it by a chain or a rope from the top of two logs of wood, having the lower ends fixed firmly in the ground at a considerable distance from each other, and terminating in a point at the upper, by which contrivance the men who wrought it were wholly relieved of its weight. To protect them from the destructive weapons thrown by the besieged, a shed or mantlet, with a strong roof, was formed around it. The whole stood on wheels, so that the besiegers easily moved the engine at pleasure. It does not appear from ancient history, that the battering ram received any important improvement after the one just stated. The discovery of gunpowder and introduction of artillery have quite superseded the use of this military engine, which the Romans long held in great esteem.

The number of men employed at once in working the ram, and the length of time they continued, would vary according to the number of the troops, the magnitude of the beam, the thickness of the wall, &c. It is certain that in some instances, upwards of fifty men plied on each side, and from the severity of the labor, they must, in ordinary cases, have been frequently relieved. The following wood cut represents the battering ram protected by the *Testudo*, or *vineæ*, under which the men employed in working it were protected from the missiles of the enemy.

## ARIES.



Ariovistus, i, king of the Germans, who invaded Gallia, (*France*), conquered a considerable part of that country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Cæsar marched up to his very camp, compelled him to fight, and gained such a complete victory, that a very few only, among whom was

Ariovistus himself, escaped. These continued their flight, until they reached the banks of the Rhine, which they crossed, some by swimming, others by boats. Ariovistus, in a little vessel, got safely to the other side. From this period nothing of his history is known.

Armoricæ civitæ, Armoric States, namely, those of the Rhedones Namnetes, Veneti, Curiosolites, Osismii, Corisopiti, Unelli, Ambrincatui, Bajocasses, Viducasses, and Lexovii, who inhabited the western part of the countries, between the Ligëris, (*Loire*,) and the Sequana, (*Seine*.) They had this name from their situation on the sea coast; *Armor* signifying, in the language of the ancient Gauls, *on the sea*.

Armorici, òrum, the inhabitants of Armoricæ.

Arpinius, i, (Caius,) a Roman knight whom Cæsar sent along with Quintus Junius to Ambiorix, after he himself had declined an interview with that prince.

Arverni, òrum, a people of Gallia Celtica, whose territories lay between the sources of the Eleaver, (*Allier*,) and Duranius, (*Dordogne*,) branches of the Ligëris and Garumna. From the numerous wars which they had carried on against the Romans, Strabo infers their power and resources must, in former ages, have been very great. Like the Romans, they boasted of being descended from the Trojans.

Atrebates, ium, a people of Gallia Belgica, the neighbors of the Morini whose country lay along the English Channel, opposite to Dover.

Atrius, i, (Quintus,) an officer to whom Cæsar gave the command of the shipping, which had carried him and his army to the coast of Britain.

Atuatuci, v. Aduatuci. òrum, a people of Belgic Gaul, whose territories lay between the rivers Mosa, (*Mæse*,) and the Scaldis, (*Scheld*,) adjoining to those of the Nervii and Toxarii. Their capital was Atuatûca, æ, f. *Tongres*, in Brabant.

Aulerci, òrum; of this name Cæsar mentions four nations of Gaul. *Aulerci Brannovices*, whose territories, (*Morienne*,) were adjoining to those of the Ædui, Segusiâni, and Ambivariti; *Aulerci Cenomanni*, whose country, (*Mans*,) lay between the rivers Sarta (*Sarte*,) and Lædus, two of the northern branches of the Loire. *Suidinum*, vel, *Subdinum*, afterwards *Cenomanni*, on the Sarte was their chief city; *Aulerci Eburovices* inhabited the left bank of the Sequana, (*Seine*,) below Lutetia, (*Paris*.) Their chief town was *Mediolanum*, afterwards *Eburovices*, (*Evreux*.)

The *Aulerçii Diablantes, Diablitæ, et Diaulitæ*, lived between the two last mentioned nations. Neodūnum, afterwards Diablantes, (*Jublens,*) was their largest town. These three, probably, formed but one people, and might, with more propriety, have been denominated tribes, than separate or distinct nations.

**Aurunculeius**, i, (Lucius A. Cotta) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic War. He opposed the rash measure of his colleague, in wishing to leave their winter quarters, at the deeeitful suggestion of Ambiorix, but at last yielded to the timidity of Titurius, which cost him his life. He is frequently called L. Cotta, and sometimes Cotta.

**Ausci, örüm**, a people of Aquitania in Gaul. Their capital was *Climberris*, v. *Climberrum, Augusta*, and at a latter period, *Auci*, (*Auch,*) which stood on the west branch of the *Ger*, one of the southern branches of the river *Garumna*, (*Garonne.*)

**Auxilia, örüm**, troops sent by foreign kings and states. They usually received pay and clothing from the republic, although sometimes they were supported by those who sent them.

**Axöna, æ, m.** (*Aine, or Aisne,*) a river of Gaul, which Ausonius calls *Præcps*, from its rapidity. Its source was in the territories of the Rhemi, which form the department of the Meuse. It runs in a southwest direction, joins the *Isära*, (*Isere,*) a little below *Campaigne*, and both fall into the *Sequana*, (*Seine,*) about five miles south of Pointoise.

## B.

**BACENIS, is, f.** a forest of Germany, forming part of the Hercynia Silva, or *Black Forest*. Cæsar says it was of prodigious extent, (*infinítæ magnitudinis,*) and like a natural wall, prevented the mutual incursions of the *Suëvi* and *Cherusci*.

**Baculus; See Sextius.**

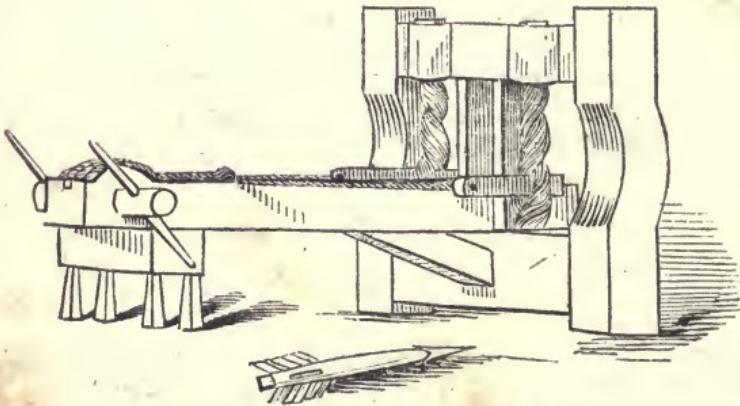
**Baleàres, ium**, a name anciently given to the islands of *Majorca* and *Minorca* off the coast of Spain, the inhabitants of which were celebrated for their skill in the use of the sling.

**Baleàris, e, adj.** of or belonging to the Balearic isles.

**Balista, æ**, (from the Greek *έλλω* to throw,) a species of military engine used by the Romans for throwing darts, arrows, and stones. These were of different sizes, and were used with great effect both in battles and sieges. Stones of great weight were often

thrown by these engines to a great distance, by which battlements were thrown down and whole files of men swept from the deepest phalanx. Their effect is said to have been little inferior in sieges to that of artillery. The balista used for throwing darts or javelins, represented in the following wood cut, taken from Folard's commentary on Polybius, resembled in its operation an immense crossbow, the two ends of which consisted of two levers so twisted in coils of ropes as to acquire a powerful spring. The extreme ends were united by a strong rope which was drawn back by means of a windlass after the manner of a bowstring, bringing the ends of the lever back and closer together, thereby twisting the coils of ropes to their greatest tension. When thus drawn back, the javelin or dart was placed in the shaft, directed to the object aimed at, and, at the pleasure of the operator, letting go the rope, was hurled with prodigious force from the engine by the recoil of the levers.

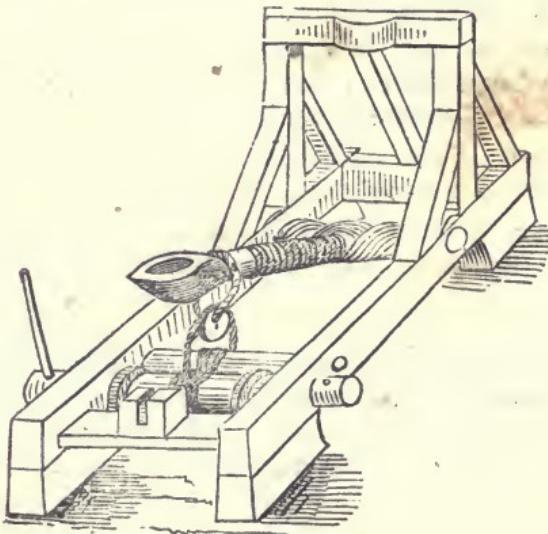
#### BALISTA FOR THROWING DARTS AND JAVELINS.



The balista for throwing stones, (represented in the following wood cut,) consisted of a strong lever, one end of which was made fast in a twist of ropes, and the other scooped out in the form of a spoon, for containing the stone &c. to be thrown. When unbent the lever stood perpendicular. In working it, the end of the lever was brought down, by means of a windlass, to a horizontal position, by which the ropes were twisted to their greatest tension; the stone or missile was laid on in its proper place and thrown by the recoil of the lever to a great distance, often with tremendous effect. Engines of both kinds, of a larger size, were

more commonly called *Balistæ*, those of a smaller size, *Catapultæ*, which see

BALISTA FOR THROWING STONES OR OTHER HEAVY BODIES.



Balventius, i, (Titus, i,) a man of distinguished courage, who had both his thighs pierced with a dart, in the attack which Ambiorix made upon the legions which he had deceitfully persuaded to leave their camp.

Basilius; See Minucius.

Batavia, æ, f. v. Insula Batavorum, (*United Provinces*,) often called *Holland*, from its being the largest of them; a country at the mouth of the Rhine. It was denominated an island, from being bounded on two sides, by the southern and northern branches of the Rhine, and on the third by the sea. B. IV. Ch. 10.

Batavi, örüm, the people of Batavia, originally a branch of the Catti, a German nation.

Belgæ, ärum, a people originally of German extraction, who inhabited the third division of Gaul, which was bounded on the south by the Matrona, (*Marne*,) and the Sequana, (*Seine*;) on the east and north by the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and on the west by Fretum Britannicum, (*English Channel*.) Strictly speaking, Fretum Britannicum, v. Gallicum, was confined to the *Straits of Dover*, but seems generally to have had a more extended signification, and to have nearly corresponded to the modern appellation, the English Channel. Cæsar calls it Oceanus, i. e. Atlanticus, of which the

English Channel and the German Sea form only a very small part. In the division of Gaul made by Augustus, whose object was to render the different provinces more equal in point of extent, the countries of the Helvetii and Sequāni, which till that time were included in Gallia Cel̄tica, were added to Gallia Belgica. According to Cæsar, the Belgæ were, of all the Gauls, the most warlike; and he attributes their superiority in arms to their being strangers to luxury and refinement. B. I. Ch. 1.

Belgium, i. n. is, in general, used by Cæsar to denote a part of Gallia Belgica, not the whole country. See Belgæ.

Bellovāci, ūrum, a numerous and powerful tribe of the Belgæ, adjoining the Bellocassi. Calēti, Ambiāni, Veromandui, and Silvanectes.

Bibracte, is, n. afterwards Angustodūnum, i. n. (*Autun*,) a town of the Ædui, upon the Arroux, one of the northern branches of the Ligēris, (*Loire*,) towards the source of that river. At this town in the 7th year of the Gallic war a general assembly of the whole country was held, to choose a commander in chief, on whom the uncontrolled direction of all their military operations should be conferred. The Ædui, who claimed that honor, had to submit to the unanimous election of Vercingetōrix, q. v.

Bibrax, acis, f. (*Bievre*,) a town of the Remi on the Axōna, (*Aisne*.)

Bibrōci, ūrum, a British nation, inhabiting what now forms the N. W. part of Berkshire. Their chief town was Bibracte, (*Bray*.) At the time Cæsar invaded Britain, they, with the Cenomāgni, Ancalites, and Cassii, seem to have been subject to Cassivel-launus.

Bigerriōnes, v. Bigerrōnes, ium, a people of Aquitania, who, with several other adjoining tribes, surrendered to Crassus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Their territory was bounded on the south by the Pyrenees, and was nearly at equal distances from the Mediterranean and the Bay of Biscay.

Bison, ontis, v. ūnis, m. a buffalo, a kind of wild ox, of which Cæsar has given the best description to be found in the writings of the ancients, (B. G. VI. 25.) The natural history of this animal is unknown.

Biturīges, um, a nation of Gallia Cel̄tica, on the west side of the river Ligēris, (*Loire*.) Their chief city, Avaricūm, was afterwards called by the name of its inhabitants, (now Bourges.)

Boduognātus, i, the commander of the Nervi, at the time they attacked the Roman army under Cæsar.

Boii, orum, a people of Gallia Celtica, who came originally from beyond the Rhine and settled in the country south and west of the Adui on the banks of the Liger and Elaver,—a territory originally belonging to the Adui, but which they gave up to the Boii with the consent of Cæsar; B. I. Ch. 28. There were several tribes of the Boii, who lived in different parts of Gaul and Germany. In the latter country their name is still recognized in the districts, *Bavaria*, and *Bohemia*, in the German language, *Boierheim*, i. e. the residence of the Boii.

Bratuspantium, i. n. a town of the Bellovaci. It is supposed to have stood between Cæsareomagnus, afterwards Belvacus, or Belvacum, (*Beauvais,*) and Samarobriva, (*Amiens.*) This town is not mentioned by any writer after the commencement of the Christian Era.

Britannia, æ, f. *Britain*, or *Great Britain*, (anciently called Albion,) is the largest island in Mare Atlanticum, (*Atlantic Ocean,*) belonging to Eurōpa, (*Europe.*) That part of the Atlantic which separates Britain from France, was called Fretum Britannicum, (strictly speaking, *Strait of Dover,*) but its signification seems often to have been more extensive, and to have corresponded nearly with the modern appellation, English Channel. Oceanus Verginius, (*St. George's Channel,*) lies between Britain and Hibernia, (*Ireland.*) On the west, Oceanus Calydonicus, (*Scottish Sea,*) washed the west and northwest parts of Scotland, Oceanus Hyperboreus, (*Northern Sea,*) the northern coast, and Oceanus Germanicus, (the *German Ocean*,—which is more properly called a sea,)—formed its boundary on the east. Cæsar's account, both of the form and extent of this island, is not very far from the truth. But of the characters, manners and customs, of the Britons, a very general description only is to be found in the writings of the ancients. Little was known, to the Romans, of this island until the invasion of Cæsar. This commander endeavored, although ineffectually, to reduce it. After a long interval, Ostorius, in the reign of Claudius, subjugated the southern part; and Agricola, subsequently, in the reign of Domitian, extended the Roman dominion to the Frith of Forth and Clyde. The whole force of the empire, although exerted to the utmost under Severus, could not, however, reduce to subjection the hardy natives of the highlands. Britain continued a Roman province, until A. D. 426, when the troops were in a great measure withdrawn, to assist Valentinian III. against the Huns, and never returned. The Britons had become so enervated under the Roman yoke, as to be unable to repel

the incursions of the inhabitants of the north. They invoked, therefore, the aid of the Saxons, by whom they were themselves subjugated, and compelled at last to take refuge among the mountains of Wales.

**Britanni**, ūrum, (sing. *Britannus*, i,) et *Britōnes*, v. *Brittōnes*, um, (sing. *Britto*, ūnis, v. ūnis,) the people of Britania.

**Britannus**, et, *Britannicus*, a um, adj. of, or belonging to Britain.

**Brutus**, i, (*Decimus*, i,) one of Cæsar's officers, to whom he gave the command of his fleet in the Gallic war, with which he defeated the Venetians, (B. G. III. 15,) and afterwards the people of Marseilles, in two engagements during the civil war.

## C.

**Cæræsi**, ūrum, a nation of Gallia Belgica, who, with the *Condrūsi*, *Eburōnes*, and *Pæmāni*, went under the general appellation of Germans, and were supposed to send 40,000 men to the Belgic army, which was raised against the Roman dominion in Gaul, (B. G. II. 4.) Their country was situated between that of the *Treviri* and the river *Mosa*, (*Meuse*.)

**Cæsar**, āris, (*Caius Julius*,) the first distinguished character of the Cæsars, was the son of *Caius Cæsar* and *Aurelia* the daughter of *Cotta*. He was born in the sixth consulship of *Marius*, 99 years B. C. He lost his father in the 16th year of his age, and the following year obtained the office of *Flamen Dialis*, (*High Priest of Jupiter*.) He procured many friends by his eloquence, and after passing through the different offices of *Quæstor*, *Edile*, *High Priest*, (*Pontifex Maximus*,) &c., he was sent as governor into Spain, and upon his return, being elected *Consul*, he entered into an agreement with *Pompey* and *Crassus*, that nothing should be done in the state without their joint concurrence. This was called the First *Triumvirate*, and was in fact a conspiracy against the liberties of Rome.

Previous to the expiration of his consulship, he obtained from the people the province of *Cisalpine Gaul* and *Illyricum*, with three legions for five years; and the Senate, at the desire of Cæsar, added *Transalpine Gaul* and another legion. These legions were gradually increased to thirteen.

Cæsar set out for *Transalpine Gaul* in the end of March, B. C. 57, in the 42d year of his age. With wonderful conduct and

bravery he subdued this country in about ten years, and carried the terror of his arms into Germany and Britain, till then unknown to the Romans. The account of these wars is given by Cæsar himself, in his Commentaries on the Gallic war, in seven books. These Commentaries, or Journals, were composed on the spot where his battles were fought. The purity and neatness of his style, notwithstanding the rapidity with which they must have been written, have not been surpassed by any Roman writer. His narrative is perspicuous, simple, and natural. It is at once chaste and animated. His lucid and picturesque description places the whole scene distinctly before the reader, who accompanies him in all his marches, and is a witness of every engagement. No passage occurs in all his writings, which the most illiterate do not understand, and the most polished do not approve. To compose a simple narrative of his campaigns, for the amusement of himself and his friends, seems rather to have been his object, than to give a specimen of his talents as a profound historian, or deep politician. Hence, it were absurd to expect in the Commentaries, a finished history. They are mere outlines, which he perhaps entertained the hope of seeing filled up, either by himself, or by some other hand.

These Commentaries in seven books, and three books concerning the civil war, are the only genuine writings of Cæsar which now remain. Of the character of Cæsar as a general and historian, Dunlop, in his History of Roman Literature, Vol. II. p. 171, &c., speaks thus:

"Though the Commentaries on the Gallic War comprehend but a small extent of time, and are not the general history of a nation, they embrace events of the highest importance, and detail, perhaps, the greatest military operations to be found in ancient story. We see in them all that is great and consummate in the art of war. The ablest commander of the most warlike people on earth records the history of his own campaigns. Placed at the head of the finest army ever formed in the world, and one devoted to his fortunes, but opposed by prowess only second to their own, he and the soldiers he commanded may be praised almost in the words in which Nestor praised the heroes who had gone before him; for the Gauls and Germans were among the bravest and most warlike nations then on earth. In his clear and scientific details of military operations, Cæsar is reckoned superior to every one, except, perhaps, Polybius. In general, too, when he speaks of himself, it is without affectation or arrogance. He talks

of Cæsar as of an indifferent person, and always maintains the character which he has thus assumed; indeed, it can hardly be conceived that he had so small a share in the great actions he describes, as would appear from his own representations. With the exception of the false colors with which he disguises his ambitious projects against the liberties of his country, every thing seems to be told with fidelity and candor."

Respecting the future history of this illustrious man the following notices may here suffice. After the conquest of Gaul, Pompey, having become jealous of Cæsar's power, induced the Senate to order him to lay down his command; upon which Cæsar crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province, and led his army to Rome, Pompey and all the friends of liberty fleeing before him. Having subdued Italy in sixty days, Cæsar entered Rome, and seized upon the money in the public treasury. He then went to Spain, where he conquered the partizans of Pompey, and at his return was created Dictator, and soon after Consul. Leaving Rome and going in search of Pompey, the two hostile generals engaged on the plains of Pharsalia. The army of Cæsar amounted to 22,000 men, while that of Pompey amounted to 45,000; but the superior generalship of Cæsar prevailed, and he was victorious. Making a generous use of his victory, Cæsar followed Pompey into Egypt, where he heard of his murder, and making the country tributary to his power, he hastened to suppress the remainder of Pompey's party in Africa and Spain. Thus triumphing over all his enemies, he was created perpetual Dictator, received the names of *Imperator* and *Pater Patriæ*, and governed the people with justice. The consequence, however, of his engrossing all the powers of the state and ruling with absolute authority, engendered a spirit of opposition and general disgust; a conspiracy was formed against him by more than sixty senators, the chief of whom were Brutus and Cassius. Accordingly, on the 15th of March, 44 years B. C., and in the 56th year of his age, on his entrance into the Senate house, he was stabbed, and fell, pierced with twenty-three wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue.

Of Cæsar's intrepidity as a soldier, and abilities as a commander, the armies which he defeated and the countries which he conquered are sufficient proofs. To the talents of a consummate general he added those of an elegant historian and a persuasive orator. He spoke with the same spirit with which he fought,

and had he devoted himself to the bar, he would have been the only man capable of rivalling Cicero.

Calētes, ium, v. Calēti, īrum, a people of Gaul, whose country lay a little to the north of the mouth of the Sequāna, (*Seine.*)

Cantābri, īrum, (sing. Cantāber, ri,) a very brave and warlike people, who inhabited the northern part of Spain. They seem to have extended from the mouths of Ibērus, (*Ebro,*) to the shores of the Bay of Biscay, which was, from them, called *Oceānus Cantabričus.* The term is often used to denote the Spaniards in general.

Cantium, i, n. (*Kent,*) a district of England which, in modern times, is bounded by the Strait of Dover, (*Fretum Gallīcum, vel, Britanīcum*) on the east, by Sussex on the south, on the west by Surry, and on the north by the Thames, (*Tamesis,*) which separates it from Essex. But the ancient boundaries of Kent are not precisely ascertained.

Carcāso, īnis, f. *Carcasonne*, a town of that part of Provincia, now called Languedoc, on the river Atax, (*Aude.*) Here are preserved some records of the place, written upon the bark of trees.

Carfulēnus, i, an officer of Cæsar, who was dispatched to attack the highest part of the camp of the Alexandrians, which he carried. He was afterwards killed in an engagement at Mutīna, fighting against Anthony.

Carnūtes, um, v. ti, īrum, a powerful nation of Gaul, between the rivers Sequāna, (*Seine,*) and Ligēris, (*Loire,*) south of Lutetia, (*Paris.*)

Carvilius, i, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent,*) who, at the command of Cassivelaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp, in which they were repulsed, and lost a great number of men.

Cassi, īrum, *thē hundred of Caishow*, a British nation, supposed to be subject to Cassivelaunus at the time Cæsar invaded Britain, who submitted to that conqueror.

Cassius, i, (Lucius, i,) a Roman consul, who was killed by the Helvetii, who defeated his army and obliged it to pass under the yoke.

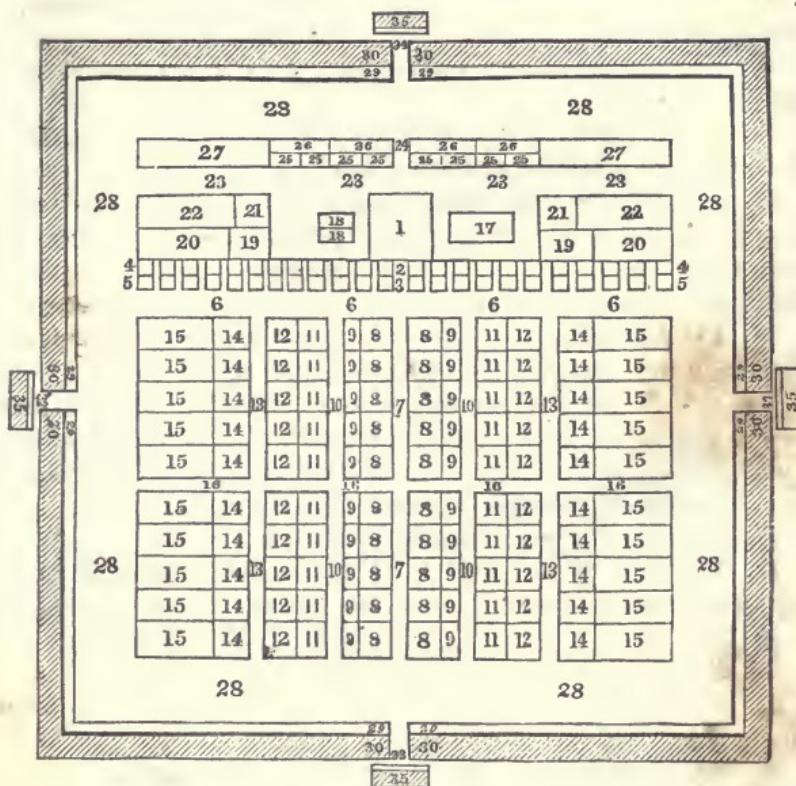
Cassivelaunus, i, one of the British kings, whose territories lay on the north bank of the Tamēsis, (*Thames,*) towards the mouth of that river. On the arrival of the Roman forces in Britain under Cæsar, he was, by common consent, appointed Commander-in-chief. After making some attempts to check the progress of the

enemy, he was obliged to submit, and accept of such terms as Cæsar chose to offer.

Casticus, i., one of the Sequani, the son of Catamantalëdis, whom Orgetörix persuaded to seize on the sovereignty of the state, which his father had formerly held.

Castra, òrum, a camp. The discipline of the Romans was chiefly conspicuous in their marches and encampments. They never passed a night, even in the longest marches, without pitching a camp, and fortifying it with a rampart and ditch. The form of the Roman camp, till later ages, was square, and was always of the same figure. It was surrounded by a ditch, usually nine feet deep, and twelve feet broad, and by a rampart or *vallum*, composed of the earth dug from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it. The camp had four gates, one on each side. They were called *porta PRÆTORIA*, next the enemy; *DEGUMANA*, opposite to the former; *porta PRINCIPALIS DEXTRA*, on the right side of the camp, at one end of the main street called *PRINCPIA*; and *PRINCIPALIS SINISTRA*, on the left side, at the other end. The camp was divided into two parts, called the upper and lower, by the main street just mentioned. In the lower part the troops were disposed in the following order. The cavalry were in the middle; on both sides of them were the *triarii*, *principes*, and *hastati*, or the third, second, and first Roman ranks; and next to these, on both sides, were the cavalry and foot of the allies, who were always posted in separate places, lest they should form any plots by being united. The *velites* commonly occupied the empty space between the ramparts and tents, which was 200 feet broad. The tents were covered with leather or skins, extended by means of ropes. In each tent were usually ten soldiers, with their *decanus* or petty officer who commanded them. The different divisions of the troops were separated by intervals called *VIAE*. Of these there were five longwise, i. e. running from the *decuman* towards the *prætorian* side; and three across, one in the lower part of the camp, called *quintana*, and two in the upper, namely, the *principia*, and another between the *prætorium* and the *prætorian* gate. The following wood cut and illustration will give a good idea of its shape and arrangements.

### GROUND PLAN OF THE ROMAN CAMP.



1. The *Prætorium*, or general's tent, with a sufficient space around for the tents of his suite.
  2. Ground behind the tents of the *Tribunes*, for their horses, baggage, &c.
  3. The tents of the *Tribunes*.
  4. Ground behind the tents of the *Præfектs of the Allies*, for their horses, baggage, &c.
  5. The tents of the *Præfектs of the Allies*.
  6. A cross street, one hundred feet wide, called *Principia*.  
(*Vid. PRINCPIA.*)
  7. A cross street, fifty feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the *Roman horse*.
  8. The *Horse* of two Roman legions, in ten turmæ or troops each.
  9. The *Triarii* of two Roman legions (*Vid. TRIARII*), in ten maniples each, facing on two different streets.

10. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the *Triarii* and *Principes* of two legions.
11. The *Principes* of two Roman legions (*Vid. PRINCIPES*), in ten maniples each.
12. The *Hastati* of two Roman legions (*Vid. HASTATI*), in ten maniples each.
13. Two streets, each fifty feet wide, between the *Hastati* of the two Roman legions and the Horse of the Allies.
14. The *Horse of the Allies*, wanting the *Extraordinarii* (*Vid. No. 25*), and placed in two different parts of the camp. The forces of the allies, both cavalry and infantry, were always separated in this manner, to prevent plotting, as remarked above.
15. The *Infantry of the Allies*, wanting the *Extraordinarii*, and, like the horse, placed in two different parts of the camp.
16. The *Quintana* (scil. *via*), a street fifty feet wide, running across the camp, between the fifth and sixth maniples of each line. Hence, as it comes after the fifth maniple, reckoned from the *Principia*, it received the name of *Quintana*.
17. The *Quæstorium*, or *Quæstor's tent*.
18. The tents of the *Legati*. The space in front of these and the *Quæstorium* was called the *Forum*, where things were sold, &c.
19. *Evocati Equites*, or Veteran Horse. (*Vid. EVOCATI.*)
20. *Evocati Pedites*, or Veteran Foot.
21. *Ablecti Equites* (*Vid. No. 25*), or Horse of the Consular life-guards.
22. *Ablecti Pedites*, or foot of the Consular life-guards.
23. A cross street one hundred feet wide.
24. A street fifty feet wide.
25. *Extraordinarii Equites*. A third part of the allied horse, and a fifth part of the allied foot, were selected, and posted near the consul, under the name of *Extraordinarii*, and one troop of horse, and maniple of foot, called *ABLECTI*, or *Selecti*, to serve as his life-guard.
26. *Extraordinarii Pedites*.
27. Quarters for strangers coming to the camp.
28. A space two hundred feet broad, between the outermost tents and the rampart.
29. Rampart, or *Vallum*.
30. Ditch, usually nine feet deep and twelve feet broad.
31. *Porta Principalis Dextra*.
32. *Porta Principalis Sinistra*.

33. *Porta Decumāna* (i. e. *Decimāna*, from *decem*, ten,) so called because all the *tens* of the maniples end here.

34. *Porta Prætoria.*

35. A traverse breastwork, with a ditch, opposite to, and protecting, each of the gates. (*Anthon's Cæsar.*)

Catapulta, a military engine for discharging stones, arrows, and other missiles. (*Vid. BALISTA.*)

Catamantalēdes, is, a nobleman of the nation of the Sequāni, who, for many years, enjoyed the supreme authority over that people.

Cativolcus, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Eburōnes. He and Ambiōrix, at the instigation of Indutiomārus, excited the people to take up arms against the Romans. Having made an unsuccessful attack upon the Roman camp under the lieutenants, Titurius Sabīnus, and L. Aurunculēius Cotta, they demanded a conference, in which Ambiōrix stated, that from gratitude to Cæsar, he considered himself bound to inform his lieutenant, that all the states of Gaul had agreed to attack the Roman camp in one day, that a great body of Germans had passed the Rhine, and that no time was to be lost in joining Cicēro or Labiēnus, neither of whom were fifty miles distant. At the same time, he gave his solemn promise, that they should have a secure retreat through his territories. This artifice, through the folly or cowardice of Sabīnus, succeeded. They left their camp, were attacked by a powerful army under Ambiōrix and Cativolcus, and were almost to a man cut in pieces. Cæsar afterwards completely routed them; and Cativolcus, from his great age, being unable to bear the fatigues of war, poisoned himself by drinking the juice of the yew-tree.

Caturīges, gum, a people of Gaul, who lived near the Alpes Maritīmæ, at the S. E. extremity of Dauphiné.

Cavarīnus, i, a nobleman whom Cæsar, in prejudice of his brother Moritasgus, the reigning sovereign, appointed king over his countrymen, the Senōnes, an honor which his ancestors had long enjoyed. The Senōnes formed the design of publicly assassinating him, but having received intelligence of the plot, he saved his life by fleeing to the camp of Cæsar.

Celtæ, ārum, the most powerful and numerous of all the nations of Gaul, who occupied nearly one-half of the country, and from whom that division was called *Celtica*. Their territories were bounded by the river Garumna, (*Garonne,*) on the south; the Sequāna, (*Seine,*) and the Matrōna, (*Marne,*) on the north; by Mount Jura on the east; and Mare Atlantičum, (*Atlantic Ocean,*) on the west.

Cenimagni, orum, an ancient people of Britain, who, with the Segontiæci, Ancalites, Bibröci, and Cassi, followed the example of the Trinobantes, and submitted to Cæsar. These nations are supposed to have inhabited the counties of *Essex, Middlesex, Norfolk, Hertford, Buckingham, Oxford, and Berkshire*.

Censor, is, a Censor, a Roman magistrate whose number from first to last was uniformly two. They were appointed (A. U. 312,) to take an account of the number of the people, and the value of their fortunes, and superintend the public morals. They were chosen from the most reputable persons of consular rank, at first only from the patricians but afterwards likewise from the plebians. They were chosen every five years, but continued in office only a year and a half. For any dishonorable action they had the power to erase the name of a Senator from the list, deprive an eques of his horse and ring, and any other citizen they could degrade and deprive of all the privileges of a Roman citizen, except liberty.

The title of Censor was even more honorable than that of Consul, though attended with less power. No one could be elected a second time, and those who filled it were remarkable for leading an irreproachable life; so that to be descended from a censorian family was considered a distinguished ornament of nobility.

Census, us, m. was a general review of the people, estimating their estates, and proportioning their share of the public taxes. Every man was obliged to give in to the Censors his own name, residence and occupation, his wife's name, and the names of his children with their ages, the number of his slaves, and a minute and accurate account of his property. The goods of the person, who made a false return, were confiscated, and he himself, after being scourged, was sold for a slave. By that act he had, in the opinion of the state, deemed himself unworthy of the privileges and honors of a Roman citizen. Servius Tullius, the 6th king of Rome, appointed the Census, in order to ascertain the number of men able to bear arms, and the amount of the whole wealth possessed by the citizens, and consequently what sums could be levied from them. It was held in the Campus Martius, where the Censors, seated in curule chairs, attended by their clerks and public officers, commanded the citizens to be called before them, each in his own tribe. If nothing immoral or improper could be charged against a senator or knight, they passed without remark; but if otherwise, the senators were expelled the senate, and the public horse taken from the knight. The other citizens were raised to a higher tribe, if their wealth had increased, or sunk to a lower

tribe, if diminished; improper conduct deprived them of their right of voting, or subjected them to be taxed like strangers. A minute register of the whole was kept, and must have been of great advantage to the whole community, as determining with precision not only their number, but also their wealth. It ought to have been held at the end of every five years; but it is manifest from Roman history, that this period was not pointedly observed. At the end of this survey of the people they were ordered to attend a lustration, called, from sacrificing, a sow, a sheep, and a bull, *Suovetaurilia*. The precedence at this sacrifice was decided by lot, and he on whom the lot fell was at the conclusion said “*lustrum condere*.”

**Centurio**, ūnis, f, (from *centum*, a hundred,) a centurion or commander of a *hundred* men. The constitution of the Roman legion admitted of a gradation from the lowest centurion of the *Hastati*, up to the first of the *Triarii*, who was called *Primipilus*, q. v. To the first captaincy, the meanest common soldier might aspire. Promotion in the Roman army could be obtained only by merit; appointments by purchase were unknown. This wise regulation produced the happiest effects. Besides each cohort having six centurions, and consequently each legion sixty, opened a wide field for promotion, and suggested numerous excitements to valor and heroism.

**Centrōnes**, um (B. G. I. 5,) a nation of Gaul in the *Alpes Graiae*, who, along with the *Garocēli* and *Caturigēs*, were defeated by Cæsar in several engagements. There was another tribe, or horde, of this name, who were subject to the *Nervii*, a nation of *Gallia Belgica*, (B. G. Ch. V. 38.)

**Cherusci**, ūrum, m. a nation of Germany, between the rivers *Albis*, (*Elbe*,) and the *Visurgis*, (*Weser*.)

**Cicēro**, ūnis, (Quintus Tullius,) the brother of Marcus Tullius Cicēro, the celebrated orator, was, after the expiration of his prætorship, proconsul of Asia for three years. He gained considerable reputation as one of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. At the commencement of the civil war, he, in opposition to the advice of his brother, attached himself to Pompey. After Cæsar had defeated the republicans at Pharsalia, both Quintus and his son solicited the favor of the conqueror, by unjustly imputing their misconduct to the orator. So far was Cicero from resenting this injustice, that he used his utmost efforts for their safety and interest. Both perished in the proscription of the second triumvirate.

Cimberius, i, the brother of Nasua, who headed the 100 cantons of the Suēvi, who had left their native country, and encamped on the banks of the river Rhenus, (*Rhine,*) with the view of crossing that river, and settling in Gaul.

Cimbri, īrum, (sing. Cimber, ri,) a German nation, supposed to be descended from the Asiatic Cimmerians, whose country was, from them, called the Chersonēsus Cimbrīca, (*Jutland,*) which now forms part of the kingdom of Denmark. About 113, B. C. the Cimbri, leaving their territories, which were both narrow and barren, and being joined by the Teutōnes, a neighboring people, defeated several German nations, and a Roman consul with his army, who had been sent against them. They invaded, and seem to have overrun, a great part of Gaul; and being strengthened by the accession of many of the tribes who inhabited that country, marched against Rome. After slaughtering the whole army of Cæpio and Mallius, except ten men and two generals, C. Marius marched against them, slew 120,000 and took 60,000 prisoners. Though only an inconsiderable people in the days of Tacitus, it is manifest, that the sagacity of that profound historian was apprehensive of the final destruction of the Roman state by the hordes of Germany, which actually happened about 300 years after his death.

Cingetōrix, īgis, a nobleman who headed that party in the state of the Treviri, which was formerly attached to Cæsar. In consequence of his fidelity to the Romans, he was, by means of his father-in-law, Indutiomārus, declared a public enemy, and his estate confiscated.

Cingetōrix, īgis, one of the four kings of Cantium, (*Kent,*) who, by order of Cassivelaunus, made an attack on Cæsar's naval camp.

Clepsydra, æ, f. an instrument contrived to measure time by water. The merit of this invention belongs to the Egyptians, as well as the discovery of the sun-dial.

There were different kinds of Clepsydræ among the ancients; which, however, were all constructed on this principle, that the water ran through a narrow passage from one vessel to another, and that on the surface of the water in the lower vessel, to the side of which a scale of hours was affixed, floated a piece of cork, which shewed the hour. It is manifest the water would be discharged with a rapidity proportioned to the quantity, and that, of course, it ran fastest when the vessel was full, and gradually became slower as the less water remained. Hence if the upper vessel discharged its water in twelve hours, and the under one

was an exact cylinder having its height divided into 144 equal parts, the water in the first hour would rise twenty-three of these parts, in the second hour, twenty-one, in the third, nineteen, &c., and the last or twelfth hour only one part. The state of the atmosphere would have considerable influence on the clepsydra, a defect which the ingenuity of a modern French philosopher, William Amontons, has completely remedied. By means of several important inventions he also freed it from other less inconveniences to which it was subject; and rendered it a very accurate divisor of time.

Cocosates, um, a people of Aquitania in Gaul, whose country lay along the coast of Oceanus Cantabrius, (*Bay of Biscay.*) to the north of the territories of the Tarbelli. Their chief town was Cocosa.

Clypeus, i. a round shield of a smaller size than the *Scutum*, which see.

Cohors, tis, a division of the Roman legion. See *Legio*.

Comius, i, one of the nation of the Atrebates, hence called Comius Atrébas, whom Cæsar appointed king over that people in return for his important services. He afterwards fell under the suspicion of Labiēnus, who employed C. Volüsēnus Quadrātus to kill him in an interview. This perfidious design did not succeed. But in the scuffle, Comius was wounded in the head. He was, from that period, a violent enemy to the Romans. Being at last defeated, he was obliged to submit to Antony, which he did, on condition that he should not appear before any Roman. On these terms, Antony granted him peace.

Condrusi, örüm, a people of Belgic Gaul, who lived on the river Mosa, (*Mæse*, or *Meuse.*) north of Silva Arduenna.

Considius Longus, (Caius, i,) a partisan of Pompey, who was at one time the governor of Adrumétum. He committed several acts of enormous cruelty. Considius afterwards commanded at Tisdra a garrison of Gætulians, and, on hearing of the defeat of his party, fled from that town with his treasures. Escaping from these barbarians and taking the road for Numidia, he was pursued by them, and to obtain possession of his money, they put him to death.

Consul, ülis, a consul; the official title of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state. They were first created after the expulsion of the kings, A. U. 244. They had the same badges as the kings, except the crown, and nearly the same power. In time of war they had supreme command; one accompanied the army as com-

mander-in-chief, and the other remained at Rome; or, if necessary, commanded another army, leaving the government in charge of the *Prætor*. They levied soldiers, appointed the greater part of the officers, and provided what was necessary for their support.

When any dangerous conjuncture arose, the consuls were armed with absolute power by the Senate, which solemnly decreed that they should take care that the republic received no harm. If any serious tumult or sedition occurred, they called the citizens to arms by proclaiming “Let those who wish to save the republic follow me;” and this was usually sufficient to check it.

The authority of the consuls was first impaired by the creation of Tribunes of the people, and afterwards by the Emperors. The office however was retained, and the consuls, after their power was gone, were still employed in consulting the Senate, administering justice, managing the public games and the like; and the year was usually characterized by their names.

At first the consuls were chosen from the Patricians only, but afterwards from the Plebians also. They were elected annually, and to be a candidate it was necessary to be forty-three years of age,—to have gone through the inferior offices of *Quæstor*, *Ædile*, and *Prætor*,—and to be present in a private station.

Proconsul, *ūlis*, a proconsul, a person invested with consular authority for the government of a conquered country. The consuls, at the expiration of their offices, were generally appointed proconsuls, and soon after quitted the city to take charge of their province. Their powers, though subject to the will of the senate and authority of the people, were very extensive. They had the appointment of the taxes and of the contributions imposed on the country, and it cannot be denied, that avarice and rapacity too often trampled on the principles of justice and humanity. To the honor of the Senate it must be mentioned, that they frequently punished acts both of extortion and cruelty. These crimes, however, were generally very flagrant before they became the subject of prosecution.

Proconsularis, is, e, of or belonging to a proconsul, or the proconsulship, proconsular.

Consularis, e, adj. of or belonging to a consul; consular; one who had been a consul; a man of consular rank.

Cotta, *æ*, (Lucius Aurunculēius,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, who suspected the stratagem of Ambiorix, and therefore endeavored to convince his colleague Sabinus of the impropriety of following the treacherous advice of that crafty Gaul, but without

effect. Unwilling that any enmity, from difference of opinion, should exist between them, he at last yielded, and his compliance cost him his life. Ambiorix, at the distance of two miles from the camp, lay in ambuscade, and when crossing a large valley, made a furious attack on the Roman forces, in which Cotta, after displaying singular bravery, was killed, and almost the whole of the two legions.

Crassus, i, (Marcus Licinius,) surnamed *Dives*, on account of his prodigious wealth, was, in early life, very poor, but by trafficking in slaves, and by other dishonorable practices, soon acquired great riches. To escape the cruelties of Cinna, he fled to Spain, where he had formerly passed some years with his father, when governor of that country; and remained eight months concealed in a cave. On hearing of Cinna's death, he raised 2,500 men, for whom he procured shipping, sailed to Africa, and attached himself to Metellus Pius. The friendship of Crassus with Metellus was not of long continuance. He then formed an alliance with Sulla, and was of great service to him in the civil war. The military talents of Crassus were greatly inferior to those of Pompey, who, on that account, necessarily stood higher in the favor of Sulla. Hence the enmity of these two powerful citizens, which all the address and eloquence of Cæsar could scarcely subdue. The great object of Crassus seems to have been the accumulation of wealth. Besides buying the estates of the proscribed, he had recourse to other base and scandalous means in order to increase his overgrown fortune.

Crassus was not however, destitute of bravery or generosity. He was honored with an ovation for putting an end to the war with Spartacus by a decisive engagement, in which 12,000 of the slaves were killed. He used frequently to lend money to his friends without interest. After entertaining the populace at 10,000 tables, giving to every citizen corn to support him for three months, and consecrating the tenth part of his property to Hercules, he was worth 7,100 talents. He used to say that no man, who could not maintain an army ought to be called rich. His slaves whom he had ingenuity enough to employ so profitably that they not only defrayed their own expenses, but added greatly to the wealth of their master, were, in number, equal to an army.

A reconciliation between Crassus and Pompey was, at last, effected by Cæsar. The iniquitous combination of these three men to destroy the liberties of their fellow-citizens, was called the first triumvirate. Less solicitous for honor than riches, Crassus,

in this division of the empire, chose Syria for his province, in expectation of making large additions to his fortune. Without the authority of the senate, he crossed the Euphrates and advanced against that country. But he was deceived by Agbārus, an Arabian, defeated by the Parthians, and his army nearly annihilated. He then fled with a small number of his soldiers to Carræ, a town of Mesopotamia, and was prevailed on to meet Surēna, on pretence of negotiating a peace, where he was treacherously put to death. The Parthians cut off his head, and, in contempt of his avarice, poured melted gold into his mouth. The bond of union between Pompey and Cæsar, which had been greatly weakened by the death of Julia, was finally dissolved by that of Crassus. They had now recourse to arms, and their struggles for the superiority terminated in the final extinction of Roman liberty.

Cretenses, ium, the inhabitants of Crete, æ. vel, Crete, es, f. a large island in the Mediterranean Sea, opposite to Mare Ægeum, (*Archipelago*.) From its principal city, it is now called *Candia*. Cres, Cretis, m. et Cressa, æ, f. a native of Crete or Candia. Cretis, īdis, of Crete or Candia, with relation to a female, or to a noun feminine.

Curiosolitæ, īrum, and Curiosolites, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, among Armoricas Civitates, whose country was afterwards called *Bretagne*

## D.

Daci, īrum, the inhabitants of Dacia a country corresponding to the modern Wallachia, Transylvania, Moldavia, and that part of Hungary which lies to the east of the Tibiscus or *Teiss*; B. VI. Ch. 25.

Danubius, i, the *Danube*, the largest river in Europe, rises in the black forest in Germany, (according to Strabo and Pliny, in the mountain Abnōba,) runs in an easterly direction, through Austria, Germany, Hungary, part of Turkey in Europe, and discharges itself into Pontus Euxīnus, (the *Black Sea*.) The ancients gave the name of Ister to the eastern part of this river, after its junction with the Savus, (*Save*.) Though of great breadth and depth in many places, it is not generally navigable on account of the cataracts. Strabo, Diodōrus Sicūlus, Tacītus, and Pliny, have given descriptions of this river in many respects different, and all

exceedingly inaccurate. With the whole course of the Danube the Greeks and Romans were very imperfectly acquainted. Their knowledge of the countries to the north of this large river, was almost wholly obtained by vague report from unlettered barbarians, and, of course, very incorrect.

In the decline of the Roman empire, it became better known to that people, in consequence of almost all the barbarous nations, who assailed that state, commencing hostilities by ravaging the country on the banks of the Danube. But learning had sunk with the state, and no minute or accurate account of this river is found in classic authors.

*Decumāna (porta)*, the rear gate of the Roman camp, (See *Castra*) so called because the tens of the maniples were stationed there. *Decurio, īnis, m.* (from *decem*, ten,) an officer of the cavalry among the Romans, who commanded ten men. Each *Turma*, or troop of horse, had three *Decuriōnes*, and each Decurio chose a subaltern, who was, on that account, called *Optio*.

*Delectus, ūs, (from deligo, to choose.)* a military term to denote the levying or enrolment of soldiers. The consuls, after they entered on their office, appointed a day, on which all who were of the military age (from 17 to 46,) should be present in the capitol. On the day appointed, the consuls seated in their curule chairs, assisted by the military or legionary tribunes, held a levy, unless hindered by the tribunes of the commons. It was determined by lot in what order the tribes should be called. The consuls ordered such as they pleased to be cited out of each tribe; and every one was obliged to answer to his name under a severe penalty. They were careful to choose those first who had what were thought lucky names; as, *Valerius, Sabinus, Statorius, &c.* Their names were written down on tables, hence, *Scribēre milites*, to enlist, to levy, or to raise soldiers.

*Diablīntes, ium, et Diablītæ, et Dianlītæ, ārum, a people of Gallia Celtīca, on the river Meduāna, (Māine.)* Their chief town was *Neodūnum*, afterwards *Diablīntes*, now *Jublēns*.

*Dictātor, īris, m.* a Dictator, an extraordinary Magistrate at Rome, who possessed absolute authority over not only the lives and fortunes of his fellow citizens, but even over the laws themselves. A free government could admit of such an officer being appointed only on important and alarming conjunctures. We find from Roman history that the first Dictator was chosen during the wars with the Latins, (499 B. C.) and that his appointment was a consequence of the plebeians refusing to enlist, and of the consuls

being unable to protect the state. Unless when threatened with imminent danger, either from domestic sedition or foreign wars, the consuls held the highest office, and the laws set bounds to their powers; but the Dictator knew no restriction. Twenty-four Lictors preceded him, and, whilst he remained in office, the functions of the other magistrates, with the exception of that of Tribunes of the people, were suspended. He proclaimed war, levied forces, and marched against the enemy; or made peace or disbanded them whenever he pleased. Execution followed his decision, and from his judgment lay no appeal. At the expiration of his office, which could not exceed six months, he might be called to an account for his conduct; but few instances of it occur in the annals of Rome. Bravery does not extirpate credulity, nor does greatness of mind obliterate the fictions of ignorance. Though a nation of intrepid warriors, the Romans were credulous and superstitious. Hence to avert a plague, to remove some dreadful calamity, or to stop the progress of an invading enemy, they sometimes named a Dictator to drive a nail into the temple of Jupiter, which trivial and absurd ceremony they thought possessed these virtues. They sometimes too appointed a Dictator to hold the comitia, or to celebrate public festivals, and once to choose Senators. But for these purposes, except on particular occasions, the state had seldom recourse to the election of that magistrate.

Dies, ei, m. & f. a day, or that space of time which elapses from the first appearance of light in the morning, till the return of darkness at night. It is more generally used to denote the time the sun is visible, or above the horizon, which strictly speaking constitutes a solar day. The term has frequently a more extended signification, and includes the night. This forms the Astronomical day, and has also been called the Natural or Civil day. It exceeds the Siderial day, or a complete revolution of the earth on its axis, by three minutes and fifty-six seconds. Different nations begin the day at different times. Among the Romans the natural day began when the sun first appeared above the horizon, which was called the first hour, and ended with that luminary disappearing, which was the twelfth hour. This mode of dividing that space of time during which the sun is visible into twelve parts, though still followed in Turkey, must have been attended with great inconvenience. The hours thus varied with the length of the day and those of the night were subject to the same alteration. Besides, the hours of these two portions of time could be equal only twice a year, viz: at the Equinoxes, (See Hora.) The civil day

began at midnight, when the third watch commenced. With us, and most of the nations of Europe, the day is reckoned from midnight to midnight. The Jews began their day at sun-setting, and like the Romans divided it into twelve hours; and the night with them also consisted of twelve hours. It may not be improper to observe that astronomers generally compute from noon to noon, reckoning in a numeral succession from one to twenty-four hours, and not by two twelves agreeably to common usage.

Dis, itis, the god of riches, Pluto.

Divīco, ūnis, a nobleman of great influence among the Helvetii, who commanded the army in the war against Cassius, and was at the head of the embassy sent by that state to Cæsar, after three-fourths of their forces had crossed the Arar, (*Saohe,*) and he had attacked and killed a great part of the other fourth.

Divitiācus, i, a nobleman of the Ædui, who had great influence with Cæsar, in consequence of his steady attachment to the Romans.

Druïdes, um, v. Druïdæ, ārum, (a term of doubtful etymology), Druids, the priests of the ancient Britons, Gauls, and Germans. Besides supreme authority in all matters of religion, their power extended to all public and private differences, and what is of much greater consequence, to making, explaining, and executing the laws. This exorbitant jurisdiction was necessarily attended with every mark of power. They were exempted from taxes and military service, and their persons were held sacred and inviolable. Among the Gauls there were only two classes of any note, the Druids and Equites, of which that of the Druids was the more illustrious. Their authority in many instances, surpassing that of the nobles, it is not surprising that they were, in general, sons of the first families. The worship and sacrifices of these priests were performed in deep groves, chiefly under an oak, which was their favorite tree. It was reckoned unlawful to commit any of their doctrines to writing; hence, many of their peculiar tenets are now unknown. It is generally supposed they believed in the immortality of the soul, and also the metempsychosis. Of natural philosophy, astronomy, arithmetic, and botany, it cannot be doubted their knowledge was very considerable. To the study of rhetoric they paid great attention, and to the charms of their eloquence, much of the admiration and power which they enjoyed, may be justly ascribed. Britain was, according to Cæsar, the great school of the Druids, whose chief settlement was Anglesey, called *Mona* by Tacitus. The natives of Gaul and Germany, who wished to be thoroughly versant in the mysteries of

Druidism, resorted to this island to complete their studies. At what time the Druids were wholly suppressed in Britain, is uncertain. But from the introduction of Christianity, their power and influence began to decline. It is worthy of remark, that some of their superstitious doctrines, and modes of predicting future events, are not, at this day, entirely forgotten in many parts of the island.

Dubis, is, m. the *Doux*, a river of Gallia, (*France*,) which originates in a small lake near mount Jura, and after a southwest course of sixty leagues, falls into the Arar, (*Saone*,) near to *Ca-billōnum*, (*Chalons*.)

Dumnōrix, īgis, one of the *Ædui*, and brother of *Divitiācus*. He persuaded the noblemen of Gallia, (*France*,) not to go with Cæsar into Britain, withdrew privately from the Roman camp, and was killed by the soldiers who were sent in pursuit of him, in consequence of his obstinacy in refusing to return. His character will be found in B. G. I. 18.

Durocortōrum, i, n. the capital of the *Remi*, now called *Rheims*, on the *Vesle*, one of the branches of the river *Axōna*, (*Aisne*.)

## E.

**E**BURÖNES, um, (*Eburōnes*, in Greek), a people of Gallia Belgica, whose territories lay on both sides of the river *Mosa*, (*Mæse*, or *Meuse*,) at its junction with the *Sabis*, (*Sambre*.) On their being dispossessed, they were succeeded by the *Tungri*. They were under the vassalage of the *Treviri*. Cæsar attempted to extirpate this nation; but this barbarous design, even from his own account, he was unable to carry into full effect.

Eburovīces, um, a people of Gallia, (*France*,) on the left bank of the *Sequāna*, (*Seine*.) The *Lexovii* were between them and the sea. Their chief city was at first called *Mediolānum*, and afterwards *Eburovīces*, now *Evreux*.

Elusātes, ium, a people of Aquitania, who lived on the river *Atur*, (*Adour*,) whose principal city was *Elūsa*, æ, f. (*Euse*.)

Equitēs, (from *equus* and *eo*,) cavalry. Of these the number belonging to each legion was 300, called *justus equitātus*, or *ala*. They were divided into ten *turmæ*, or troops of thirty each; and each *turma* into three *decuriæ*, or bodies of ten men. The office of the Equites at first was to serve in the army. They were se-

lected both from the patricians and plebians; they were required, when chosen, to be 18 years of age, and to possess a fortune of 400 sestertia, (\$15,472.) See Gr. App. V.

Eratosthenes, is, a native of Cyrène, (Cyrenæus,) the scholar of Callimachus, and of Aristo of Chios, and the second who was intrusted with the Alexandrian library, devoted his time to criticism and philosophy. He was eminent as a poet and mathematician, but more distinguished as an astronomer and geographer. He died in the year 194 B. C. in the 82d year of his age. B. VI. Ch. 24.

Essui, ōrum, supposed to be also called Saïi, ōrum, a people of Gallia, whose territories lay on the Olēna, (Orne,) adjoining to the Diablintes and Aulerci Eburōnes.

Esubii, ōrum. This word occurs only in B. G. III. 7, where the readings are very different. Some copies have Esubios, or Eusubios, and others Lexuvios. The Greek has Unellos, to which Dr. Clarke, in a note, seems to give the preference, although he has retained Esubios in the text.

Evocāti, (from *evōco*, to call out,) veteran soldiers, who had served out their time and received their discharge, but who were sometimes again *called out* into public service. This class were highly respected, and were exempted from the drudgery of military service to which the other soldiers were subjected.

Excubiæ, arum, watches either by day or night. Vigiliæ, watches by night only. These were relieved at the end of every three hours; hence the night, from sunset till sunrise, was divided into four watches, called the *first, second, third, and fourth*. See Gr. App. I.

Exercitus, ūs, (from *exerceo*, to exercise,) an army, a body of men trained to, or *exercised* in military service. (*Agmen*, from *ago*, an army on the march, or in marching order. *Acies*, an army drawn up in a *line*, or in battle array.) A consular army consisted of two Roman legions, (See *Legio*,) with the proper number of cavalry, and two legions of the allies with their cavalry, making in all about 20,000 men, or in the time of Polybius, 18,600.

## F.

Fabius, i, (Caius,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Fabius, i, (Quintus Fabius Maximus) a Roman consul who defeated the Averni and Rutēni.

Funditores, um, (from *funda*, a sling.) Slingers, a class of warriors usually joined with the *Velites*, but not properly a part of them. They were armed with slings and stones, or bullets of lead, which from practice they threw with great precision and with so much force that neither buckler nor head-piece could resist their impiety. They were generally obtained from the Balearic Isles, Achaia, Crete, Arabia, &c., the Balearians being considered the best. See *Velites*.

## G.

**GALBA**, æ, the name of a branch of the Sulpicii, v. Sulpitii, or, according to others, the surname of the founder of that tribe.

Galba, æ, the king of the Suessiones at the time Cæsar invaded Gaul. On account of his knowledge and love of justice, he was appointed commander-in-chief of the forces raised by the Belgian states, against the power of Rome, in the second year of the Gallic war.

Galba, æ, (Sergius) was the son of C. Galba, and grandson of Servius, or Sergius Galba, a celebrated orator and the first distinguished character of that family. He held the rank of lieutenant in Cæsar's army during the Gallic war, and afterwards joined the conspiracy, which the Republican party formed against the life of that ambitious and unprincipled general.

Galea, a helmet, a defensive piece of armor, made of brass or iron, which came down to the shoulders but left the face uncovered.

Gallia,\* æ, now France, (See the map,) was an extensive and populous country of Europe, bounded on the north by the British Channel, on the east by the Rhine, Mount Jura and the Alps; on the south by the Mediterranean and Spain; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. In the time of Cæsar it was divided into three parts; Gallia Belgica, or the country of the BELGÆ (now Belgium) occupying the northern part; Gallia Celtica, or the country of the CELTÆ, or Celts, by far the largest, and occupying the middle portion; and AQUITANIA, lying between the Garumna (Garonne,) and the Pyrenees,—much smaller than either of the others. Adjoining Gaul on the east, and separated from it by Mount Jura,

---

\* Cæsar does not use this term always in precisely the same sense. In B. I. Ch. 1, it means the whole of Gaul not then subject to the Romans; and in the same chapter it is used to denote the central division, or that possessed by the Celts. It is used in the same restricted sense, B. III. Ch. 2.

lay HELVETIA, (now part of *Switzerland*,) extending from Mount Jura to the Rhine, on the east; and from Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*) and the Rhone on the south, to the Rhine on the north. On the south and eastern border of Gallia lay what was called PROVINCIA, the Roman Province. (See *Provincia*.) Each of these great divisions contained within them numerous nations or tribes, all living under their respective kings or chiefs, all of which were finally brought under subjection to the Romans. The whole of this extensive country was called by the Romans *Gallia Transalpina*, Gaul beyond the Alps, to distinguish it from the northern part of Italy, which they called *Gallia Cisalpina*.

In the 27th year before the Christian æra, and twenty years after the conquest of Gaul was completed by C. Julius Cæsar, Augustus Cæsar made a new division of the whole, including Provincia Romana and Helvetia, into four grand divisions, in which more attention was paid to equality in the extent of the provinces than to the nations that inhabited them. Aquitania was extended northward and eastward to the Liger, (*Loire*,) Gallia Belgica on its eastern border was extended southward, taking in part of Gallia Celtica, and the whole country of the Helvetii. These four divisions were Gallia Belgica, Gallia Celtica, Aquitania, and Gallia Narbonensis (formerly Provincia, or Provincia Romana). These four divisions were again subdivided into seventeen provinces in all. And it is this division which is exhibited in the maps of ancient geography commonly in use. In the map accompanying this work, the division of the country in the time of Cæsar, and the names by which these divisions were then known, have been preferred as more suitable for such a work as this.

The whole country of Gaul from the time of its conquest by Cæsar, 47 years B. C., remained subject to the Romans, and a part of their vast empire for five hundred and fifty years. On the final dismemberment of that empire, Gaul being conquered by the Franks, (or Freemen,) a confederacy of warlike nations bordering on the Rhine, was from them called France about the beginning of the sixth century.

Galli, ὄρυμ, the Gauls, or the inhabitants of Gaul. Gallus, i, a Gaul; one of the inhabitants of Gaul.

Gallus, i, (Marcus Trebius.) a prefect or Tribune of the soldiers, sent by P. Crassus, to forage among the Curiosolitæ.

Garites, ὄμ, a people of Aquitania, to the north of the Ausci.

**Garumna**, æ, m. the *Garonne*, a river of France, which rises in the valley of Arran, to the south of St. Bernard, runs with rapidity N. N. E. to Tolōsa, (*Toulouse*,) afterwards N. N. W. to Guienne, and falls into Oceānus Cantabričus, vel, Mare Aquitanicum, (the *Bay of Biscay*.) The general course of this river, which extends to about 250 miles, is northwest. After its junction with the Duranius, (*Dordogne*,) below Burdegalia, (*Bordeaux*,) it assumes the name of *Gironde*. According to Julius Cæsar's division of Gaul, the Garonne was the boundary of Aquitania, and separated that district from Gallia Celtica. It is navigable to Toulouse, and communicates with the Mediterranean by means of the Royal Canal, about 180 miles long, made through Languedoc by Louis XIV.

**Genēva**, æ, f. *Geneva*, a town at the western extremity of Lacus Lemānnus, (the *Lake of Geneva*,) on the south bank of the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*.) From Genevā towards Mount Jura, Cæsar raised a mole or rampart of earth, nineteen miles in length.

In modern times, Geneva is a considerable city, nearly two miles in circumference, and contains thirty thousand inhabitants. Besides being neatly built, it is strongly fortified, and remarkable for its beautiful situation, fine walks, and delightful prospects. Calvin spent the latter part of his life at Geneva, and his followers have, ever since, held the government of the city.

**Germania**, æ, f. *Germany*, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by the Danubius, (*Danube*;) on the east by the Vistula, (*Vistula*;) on the north by Codanus Sinus, vel, Mare Suevicum, (the *Baltic Sea*;) and on the west by the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) and Oceānus Germanicus, (the *German Sea*.)

**Germānus**, i, pl. i, örum, the people of Germany; Germans.

**Getūli**, örum, (sing. *Getulus*, i,) the inhabitants of Getulia, or Gætulia, æ, f. *Biledulgerid*, a large country of Africa, to the south of Mauritania and Numidia. It formed part of the kingdom of Massinissa. Sallust, from books written in the Punic language which belonged to Hiempsal, gives the following character of the Getūli and Libyes:—"Africa was at first possessed by the Getilians and Libyans, a savage and untutored people, who lived on the flesh of wild beasts, or grass of the field, like cattle; subject to no established customs, laws or government, a race of wanderers, who had no settled habitation, and who lay down to rest wherever night overtook them."—Sal. Bel. Jug. 18.

**Gladius**, i, a sword. The Roman sword was short, straight, and heavy, both for cutting and thrusting. It was worn on the right

side, so as in drawing not to interfere with the shield. The long sword of the cavalry was curved, and was worn on the left side. Gordūni, ūrum, a people of the northern part of Gallia Belgica, subject to the Nervii, whose territories lay along the sea-coast, to the north of the Morīni.

Graiocēli, ūrum, an ancient nation of Gaul, whose territories seem to have been adjacent to those of the Centrōnes and Caturīges, a people who lived among the Alps.

Grudii, ūrum, a neighboring nation to the Gordūni. Their country was bounded on the north by the mouths of the Scaldis, (*Scheldt.*)

## H.

Harūdes, um, a people of Germania, (*Germany,*) on the north bank of the Danubius, (*Danube,*) towards the source of that river.

Hastāti, ūrum, the name given to the first rank of the Roman legion (See *Légio.*)

Helvetia, æ, f. *Switzerland*, a country of a triangular form, bounded on the north by the river Rhenus, (*Rhine,*) and Lacus Brigantinus, (*Lake of Constance,*) which separate it from Vindelicia and Germania, *Germany*; on the south by the Rhodānus, (*Rhone,*) and Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva,*) which divides it from Provincia Romāna; and on the west by Mount Jura which protected them from the Gauls. Hence it is manifest that Helvetia was of less extent than Switzerland. Cæsar (B. G. I. 1,) seems to consider the Helvetii as Gauls. In Lib. I. cap 24, he says, *Helvetii—phalange factâ*, by which is to be understood simply, that they fought in closé order, not that they drew up their troops precisely in the form of the Macedonian Phalanx, so celebrated in ancient history.

Helvetii, ūrum, the people of Helvetia; the Helvetians.

Hercynia, æ, f. a very extensive forest of Germany, the breadth of which, according to Cæsar, was nine days journey, and its length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Namnētes, and Raurāci, along the Danubius, (*Danube,*) to the country of the Daci and Anartes; then turning to the north, it spread over many large tracts of land, and is said to have contained many different animals, unknown in other countries, of which Cæsar describes two or three kinds. Since the other forests of Germany were only branches of the Hercynian, some writers have considered it as covering nearly the whole of that

extensive territory. As the country became more inhabited, the grounds were gradually cleared, and few vestiges of the ancient forest remain in modern times.

Hiberna, ὄρυμ, winter quarters. The wars of the Romans were prosecuted chiefly in the summer. When the weather and the state of the country became unfavorable to military operations the troops were withdrawn from the field, and led into winter quarters, (*hiberna.*) These were strongly fortified and furnished with every accommodation, like a city, containing storehouses, (*armaria,*) workshops, (*fabricæ,*) an infirmary, (*valetudinarium,*) &c. Hence, from them many towns in Europe, and particularly in England, are supposed to have had their origin. This appears to be indicated by the terminations *chester*, or *chester*, from *castra*.

Hibernia, æ, f. *Ireland*, a considerable island in Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*). It is washed on the east by Oceanus Verginius, (*St. George's Channel,*) which separates it from England; on the north by Mare Hibernicum, (*Irish Sea,*) which divides it from Scotland; and on all other parts by Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*), of which St. George's Channel, and the Irish Sea, form but very small parts.

Hiberni, ὄρυμ, the inhabitants of Hibernia.

Hispania, æ, f. *Spain*, a large country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Gaditanum, or Herculeum, (the *Strait of Gibraltar;*) on the east by the Mediterranean, which was known among the Romans by the appellation of *Nostrum Mare*, and among the Greeks, of *Mare Internum*; on the north by the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees,*) which separate it from Gallia, (*France,*) and Oceanus Cantabriæ, (the *Bay of Biscay;*) on the west by Lusitania, (*Portugal*, included in Hispania Ulterior,) and Mare Atlanticum, (the *Atlantic Ocean*), which the Greeks called *Mare Externum*. Its greatest length, from east to west, is 600 miles, and its greatest breadth 550. The superficial contents of this country are about 148,000 square miles. Spain, including Portugal, was, by the Romans, divided into two parts, Hispania Citerior, (*Hither Spain,*) and Hispania Ulterior, (*Farther Spain;*) hence, *duæ Hispaniæ*, the two Spains, or *Hispaniæ*, Spains. The former, or northern, comprehending an extent of country equal to three-fourths of modern Spain, the latter, or southern, the rest of the country. These two divisions were sometimes governed by proconsuls, but more commonly by prætors.

In the reign of Augustus, Hispania Citerior was, from Tarraco, its principal city, called *Tarragonensis*, and Hispania Ulterior

was divided into *Lusitania* and *Bætica*. The former appellation was derived from the *Lusitani*, the most powerful of the nations who inhabited that country, and the latter, from *Bætis*, the *Guadalquivir*, a very large river, which watered that province.

*Hispani, örūm, the people of Hispania.*

*Hora, æ, f. an hour.* Among the Romans it was the twelfth part of the day. The first hour commenced with the rising of the sun, and the twelfth ended with his setting. It is manifest that the portion of time denominated an hour by them, was constantly changing, and was of equal length to our hour only at the equinoxes. At these two periods of the year, and at them only, their first hour corresponded to our 7 o'clock in the morning; the second to eight, third to 9, fourth to 10, and fifth to 11; but their sixth hour or noon (meridies) coincided exactly with our 12 o'clock noon, or mid-day throughout the whole year. Their 7th then answered to our 1 in the afternoon, 8th to 2, 9th to 3, 10th to 4, 11th to 5, and 12th to 6. At the summer solstice, or longest day, the sun rises at Rome a few minutes past 4 o'clock, and sets the same number of minutes before 8, consequently their hour is, at that time, nearly  $\frac{1}{4}$  longer than ours, and at the winter solstice it will be as much shorter.

## I.

*Iccius, i, m. one of the ambassadors whom the Rhemi sent to Cæsar in the second year of the Gallic war.*

*Iccius, i, (sc. portus,) a harbor in the country of the Morini, in Gallia Belgica, which, according to some, was *Boulogne*, and, according to others, *Vissant*, or *Calais*. Ptolemy mentions it as a promontory, although it cannot be doubted that there was likewise a cognominal harbor. From his description, this seems to be the place which he had in view. It could not be *Calais*. Cæsar set out from Iccius Portus, when he sailed the second time for Britain.*

*Idus, uum, f. the Ides, one of the divisions of the Roman month. In March, July, and October, the Ides were on the 15th, and in the other months, on the 13th. Like the Kalends, and Nones, the Ides were reckoned backwards. (See Gr. App. I.)*

*Illyricum, (Croatia, Bosnia, and Slavonia,) a country opposite to Italy, bordering on the Adriatic. It was bounded on the south by Macedonia; on the east by Mœsia and Pannonia; on the north by*

Noricum; and on the west by Histia and Mare Adriaticum, vel. Supērum, (the *Gulf of Venice*.)

**Imanuentius**, i, m. a Briton, the father of Mandubratius, and king of the Trinobantes. He was killed by Cassivellaunus.

**Impedimenta**, ūrum, baggage; (from *impedio*, to hinder.) The heavier baggage of the Romans, such as tents, mills, &c. was carried on beasts of burden; sometimes, though more seldom, on baggage wagons, (*carri*.) Every thing else was carried by the soldiers themselves, each of whom usually carried provisions for fifteen days, usually corn, sometimes dressed food, a saw, a basket, a mattock or axe, a reaper's hook and leathern thong, a chain, a pot, usually three or four stakes, sometimes more, for the *vallum*, amounting in all, exclusive of armor, to 60 pounds; and under this load they commonly marched 20 miles a day, sometimes more.

**Indutiomārus**, i, a chief man among the Treviri, father-in-law to **Cingetōrix**, who attacked Labiēnus, but was repulsed, and slain. **Italia**, æ, f. *Italy*, a large and celebrated country of Europe, bounded on the south by Fretum Siçūlum, (the *Strait of Messina*,) which separates it from Sicily; on the northeast by Mare Adriaticum, or Supērum, (the *Gulf of Venice*,) which divides it from Græcia, (Greece,) now part of *Turkey in Europe*. The Alpes, (*Alps*,) form the boundary between Italy and Germany on the north; and on the southwest it is washed by that part of the Mediterranean, formerly called Mare Tyrrhēnum, Tuscum, or Infērum, now the *Tuscan Sea*. The Appenīnus, (*Appenines*,) forms a ridge of mountains which extends from the Alps to Rhegium, (*Reggio*,) the whole length of the country. The sources of all the rivers in Italy are found in these mountains. Roma, (*Rome*,) for many years the seat of universal empire, was the capital of Italy. From it, the inhabitants of Italy were frequently called Romāni, a name originally given only to the natives of that city and its territory, which was long very small.

**Itāli**, ūrum, the people of Italia; Italians.

**Itius Portus**, a harbor in the country of the Morīni, from which Cæsar sailed on his second expedition against Britain. See *Iccius*.

## J.

**JUGUM**, i, a yoke. This consisted of two spears or pieces of wood set upright in the ground, a little space apart, over which a third was laid across the top, the whole resembling the Greek Π.

Under this frame the soldiers of conquered armies were often obliged to pass naked, (*nudi*,) *i. e.* without their armor, which was previously laid down.

Jumenta, ὄρυμ, beasts of burden, (horses, mules, asses, &c.) used by the Romans for carrying their heavier baggage. (See *Impedimenta*.)

Junius, *i.* (*Quintus, i.*) a Spaniard who was frequently sent by Cæsar to converse with Ambiorix.

Jura, æ, m. a chain of mountains which, extending from the Rhodanus, (*Rhone*,) to the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) separated Helvetia, (*Switzerland*,) from that part of Gallia Celtica which the Sequāni possessed, now called *Franche Compte*. Vosēgus, (*Vauge*,) is a branch, or an extension of Mount Jūra.

Justus equitatus, the complement of cavalry attached to a Legion; three hundred in number, exclusive of the horsemen of the allies

## K.

KALENDÆ, or Calendæ, ἄρυμ, f. the Kalends, the name given by the Romans to the first day of every month. A priest was appointed to give notice to the people of the change of the moon, or when the new moon was first visible. This term appears to be derived from the Greek verb *καλέω*, *I call*. (See Gr. App. I.)

## L.

LABERIUS, (*Quintus, L. Durus*,) a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army. He was killed in Britain, B. G. V. 15.

Labienus, *i.* (*Titus, i.*) one of Cæsar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the Civil war he deserted to Pompey, escaped from the battle of Pharsalia, and was killed in that of Munda.

Latobrigi, ὄρυμ, a people who appear to have been neighbors of the Helvetii Rauraci and Tulingi, but of whom little is known with certainty.

Legatus, *i.* m. a lieutenant-general, who was both appointed by, and acted immediately under, the consul, or Commander-in-chief. The number of these officers varied in proportion to the greatness or importance of the war. Each legion had at least one, often two. When separated from the main army, sent into win-

ter quarters, &c. the lieutenant-general, being the deputy of the commander, had the honor to be the highest officer.

At their first institution, the Legati were counsellors to the governors of provinces, and decided all causes of minor importance; but held no military rank. Hence the word primarily denoted an Ambassador. Their admission into the army naturally resulted from that place of intimacy and confidence. Under the emperors the term became a common appellation for all invested with the highest military command in foreign countries.

Legio, ōnis, f. a legion, or body of soldiers consisting of different numbers at different times. In the early part of the reign of Romulus, the legion contained 3,000 foot, and 300 horse, which he, on the increase of the citizens by the admission of the Sabines, raised to 4,000. To that number 1,000 was added during the war which Hannibal carried on in Italia, (*Italy,*) about 216 years B. C. but a reduction of 500 had taken place before the time Polybius wrote his history. Livy states that the legion consisted of 5,000 foot, and Vegetius, of 6,000 foot. It cannot be doubted that these historians recorded the exact number, which constituted a complete legion in their respective times. The legion consisted of ten cohorts, each cohort of three maniples, and each maniple of two centuries; and in the order of battle the troops were drawn up in three lines, first the *Hastati*; second, the *Principes*; and third, the *Triarii*. Those who formed the first line were called *Hastati*, from their fighting with *Hasta*, a long spear, which was afterwards laid aside on account of its being inconvenient. They were the flower of the Roman youth. The second line consisted of the same number of maniples, but of men more advanced in life, and of greater military experience, who were called *Principes*, probably from their being at one time the *first* line. Their arms were heavy. The *Triarii* made up the third line, and seem to have been a body of reserve. They were frequently, from *Pilum*, a javelin, called *Pilani*, and the *Hastati* and *Principes*, *Antepilani*, from being stationed before them. The *Velites* generally skirmished before the lines, sometimes between them, and appear to have been what the moderns call Irregulars. They had light armor, hence called *expediti*, *levis armaturæ*, &c. The archers and slingers were attached to this body. According to that historian, twenty *Velites* seem to have belonged to each maniple. They were, in battle, not formed into cohorts, or maniples, but fought in such parties and in such places as the commander judged most advantageous.

In the early ages of the Roman state, their army in battle order was drawn up, like the Macedonian phalanx, in a continued line. This fact rests on the authority of Livy. The disposition into three lines, and arranging in maniples at some distance from each other seems an improvement of later times. When the *Hastati* yielded to the superior force or bravery of the enemy, they fell back to the *Principes*, who filled up the spaces between the maniples, and with them they renewed the charge. If both were forced to give way, the *Triarii* came up, and a third attack was made on the enemy. Hence, *ad triarios ventum est*, it is come to the last push; matters are in the utmost danger. The cavalry fought on the wings, but their exact form or position is not certainly known. It probably did not differ very much from the practice of the moderns. If after the whole force was brought into action the enemy still prevailed, they of necessity submitted to a defeat.

All the cohorts of the legion were manifestly on an equal footing in the army of Cæsar, and no preference seems to have been either acknowledged or claimed. The only vestige of the ancient division was the officers retaining their former appellations, as *Primus hastatus*, *Primus pilus*, &c. Cæsar frequently kept the third line as a body of reserve.

Lemānus (Lacus), the *Lake of Geneva*, is a most beautiful expanse of water, in the form of a crescent, the convex side of which is upwards of fifty-four miles long. Its hollow side is towards Switzerland, and its greatest breadth measures about twelve miles. The Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) descending from the Alps, traverses the whole length of the lake, and renders the water at its entrance turbid, on account of the quantity of earth and mud brought down from these steep mountains. Like the other waters and lakes of Switzerland, for nearly an hour in the evening, after the sun is hid behind Mount Jura, it shines with a splendor resembling burnished gold, by the reflection of the solar rays from the Glaciers.

Leponti, īrum, a people of the Alps, near the source of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) on the south of that river.

Levāci, īrum, a people in the northern part of Gallia Belgica, on the Scaldiš, (*Scheldt*,) between the Nervii and Grudii. The Centrōnes, Grudii, Levāci, Pleumosii, and Gordūni. were vassals of the Nervii. B. G. V. 39.

Leuci, īrum, a Belgic nation who lived between the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) and the Mosella, (*Moselle*,) near the source of that river.

**L**exovii, īrum, a people of Gallia Celtīca, whose country was bounded on the north by the Sequāna, (*Seine*,) and on the west by Fretum Gallīcum, or, Britannīcum, (*the English Channel*.)

**L**iger, īris, or Ligēris, is, m. the *Loire*, a large river of Gaul, which takes its rise in the country of the Helvii, runs N. N. W. and after a course of 200 miles, falls into Oceānus Cantabričus, (*Bay of Biscay*.) According to the division of Gaul made by Augustus, the Loire was the northern boundary of Aquitania.

**L**ingōnes, um, a people of Gaul whose territories included Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge*,) consequently the sources of the rivers Mosa, (*Meuse*,) and Matrōna, (*Marne*.) Their chief town was Andomadūnum, or Andomatūnum, afterwards Lingōnes, now *Langres*.

**L**iscus, i, one of the Supreme magistrates of the Ædui, who along with Divitiācus and other chiefs of that nation, was in Cæsar's camp in the Gallic war, and informed him of the conduct and plans of Dumnořix.

**L**ituus, i, a clarion, bent a little at the end like an augur's staff. It was used for the cavalry. The *tuba* was straight and employed by the infantry. The *cornu* was bent almost round. The *buccina* was commonly used for changing the watches.

**L**orīca, æ, a coat of mail, generally made of leather, covered with plates of iron in the form of scales, or iron rings twisted within one another like chains. It is also used to denote a battlement, or defence of towers and walls, constructed of stone or of hurdles.

**L**ucinius, i, (Quintus, i,) a centurion of the first rank, who was killed in attempting to rescue his son when surrounded by some of the troops of Ambiorix, after that king had treacherously persuaded Aurunculeius Cotta and Q. Titurius Sabinus, lieutenants, with the army which they commanded, consisting of one legion and five cohorts, to leave their winter-quarters among the Eburōnes.

**L**ugotōrix, īgis, one of the four kings of Kantium, (*Kent*;) some copies read Cingetōrix (B. G. V. 22).

**L**utetia, æ, f. Lutetia the capital of the Parisii, (*Paris*, now the capital of France,) was originally a fortress on a small island in the Sequāna, (*Seine*.) There are two other islands in the Seine at Paris covered with buildings, and connected with each other and the town, by means of bridges. Paris, situated in a plain on both sides of the Seine, is of a circular form, and upwards of eleven miles in circumference. It contains many stately edifices, and the finest collections of medals, statues, and paintings, in the

world. Every thing excellent in Rome, and in the other cities of Italy, has been conveyed to Paris to enrich these collections and to adorn the city.

## M.

MAGETOBRIA, æ, f. a city of Gallia, (*France,*) at which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces of the Gauls. This victory put the country under his dominion.

Mandubratius, i, one of the nation of Trinobantes, who, on his father's being killed by Cassivellaunus, fled from Britain to Cæsar then in Gaul, who took him and the state under his protection.

Manilius, (Lucius, i,) a proconsul, who was obliged to fly from Aquitania, with the loss of all his baggage.

Manilius, i, (Tusculus,) one of the conspirators against Cassius Longinus, Proprætor of Farther Spain.

Manipulus, i, (See *Legio.*)

Marcomāni, or Marcomanni, òrum, a people of Germania, (*Germany,*) whose territories were bounded on the west by the Rhenus, (*Rhine,*) and on the south by the Danubius, (*Danube,*) corresponding to part of the modern *Circle of Swabia*. They afterwards expelled the Boii, and took possession of their country, now called *Bohemia*.

Mare Nostrum, the *Mediterranean Sea*, to which the Romans gave this name, from its bounding their native country, Italia, (*Italy,*) on three sides. By the Greeks it was called *Mare Internum*; and the *Atlantic Ocean*, *Mare Externum*. In Scripture, this collection of water is denominated the *Great Sea*, which, though of small extent, when compared with the *Pacific Océan*, &c. is the largest inland sea in the world. The modern appellation is manifestly derived from its situation, being wholly surrounded by land, except the narrow strait of *Gibraltar*, which connects it with the *Atlantic Ocean*.

The length of the Mediterranean is about 2,300 miles, and its breadth varies from 900 to 300 miles. Tides are scarcely known in this sea, except in the *Gulf of Venice*, and on the coast of *Tripoli*. There is a constant influx into the Mediterranean, both from the *Atlantic* and *Pontus Euxinus*, (the *Black Sea.*) That part of it which is east of the *Archipelago*, or of the island *Candia*, is called the *Levant*.

The principal islands in the Mediterranean, are the *Baleares*,

(*Majorca* and *Minorca*,) *Sardinia*, (*Sardinia*,) *Corsica*, (*Corsica*,) *Sicilia*, (*Sicily*,) separated from *Italia*, (*Italy*,) by *Fretum Siculum*, (the *Strait of Messina*,) *Melita*, (*Malta*,) and *Creta*, (*Candia*.) In the Levant, besides some other islands of less extent, are *Rhodos*, (*Rhodes*,) and *Cyprus*, (*Cyprus*.)

*Matrōna*, æ, f. the *Marne*, a river of *Gallia*, (*France*,) which formed part of the ancient boundary between *Gallia Belgica* and *Gallia Celtica*. It takes its rise at *Sangres*, runs northwest to *Châlons*, then westward, passes by *Meaux*, becomes navigable at *Vitry*, and at *Charenton*, a little above *Paris*, falls into the *Sequāna*, (*Seine*,) after a course of about ninety-two leagues.

*Mediomatrices*, um, vel. i, ūrum, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, between the *Mosella*, (*Moselle*,) and the *Rhenus*, (*Rhine*.) The *Treviri* were their neighbors on the north. Their chief town was *Divodūrum*, afterwards *Mediomatrici*, now *Metz*. At one period they were a powerful nation, and possessed a very extensive country. But the conquest of *Gallia*, (*France*,) by the Romans, destroyed their power, and confined them to a narrow territory.

*Meldi*, ūrum, a people whose country was included between the rivers *Matrōna*, (*Marne*,) and *Sequāna*, (*Seine*.) The modern town, *Meaux*, is of some note, and contains 6,000 inhabitants. The *Meldi* mentioned B. V. 5, were a *Belgic* tribe living on the *Scaldis* (*Scheldt*.)

*Menapii*, ūrum, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, whose territory was separated from *Insula Batavōrum*, (*Holland*,) by the *Mosa*, (*Meuse*.) The *Toxandri* were their neighbors on the south.

*Mensis*, is, m. a month; a term originally employed to denote that portion of time which elapses between two successive changes of the moon. (See Gr. App. I.)

*Messāla*, æ, (*Marcus*,) a noble Roman who was consul with *Marcus Puppius Piso*, in the 60th year B. C.

*Mettius*, i, (*Marcus*, i,) a man allied to *Ariovistus* by the rights of hospitality, whom *Cæsar* joined in commission with *C. Valerius Procillus*, on an embassy to that king. As soon as they entered his camp, without suffering them to speak, *Ariovistus* commanded both to be put in irons. He thrice drew lots to determine whether they should be burned alive upon the spot, or reserved for another time. The lots being always favorable, their lives were preserved. After the defeat of *Ariovistus*, *Cæsar* himself in the pursuit fell in with *Procillus*, and *Mettius* was likewise recovered and brought back to the Roman camp.

Minucius, i, (Lucius M. Basilius,) one of Cæsar's officers. To C. Fabius, and L. Minucius Basilius, he gave the joint command of two legions, which were stationed among the Rhemi.

Mona, æ, f. the *Isle of Man*, an island in the Irish Sea, nearly equidistant from England, Scotland, and Ireland. It is thirty miles long, and eight broad. The soil is fertile, the air salubrious, and the inhabitants live in general to a great age. The sovereignty of this island formerly belonged to the Dukes of Athol; but it was sold in 1765 to the crown. Tacitus and others call Anglesy, Mona, but Cæsar is more correct.

Morini, ūrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay along the coast opposite to Cantium, (*Kent.*)

Moritasgus, i, the king of the Senones, at Cæsar's arrival in Gallia, (*France.*)

Mosa, æ, f. the *Mæse*, or *Meuse*, a river of Gallia, (*France,*) rising a little to the west of Mount Vosegus, (*Vauge,*) runs north, passes a number of celebrated towns, receives, at Namur, the Sabis, (*Sambre,*) joins the Vahalis, (*Wahal, or, Waal,*) below the island of Bommel, and falls into the German Sea. The course of this river, which extends to 160 leagues, is north.

Munatius, i, (Lucius M. Plancus), one of Cæsar's lieutenants, who, with Caius Trebonius, had the command of three legions which were settled in Belgium, during the winter.

Muscūlus, a species of moveable shed or pent-house on wheels, shaped like an arched wagon, usually sent before the large towers to prepare the way for their advance, by cutting down trees, filling up ditches, removing obstructions, and making a smooth and solid road even up to the enemy's walls.

## N.

NAMEIUS, i, a nobleman of the Helvetii, who, with Verudoctius, was at the head of the embassy which that nation sent to Cæsar, to request permission to march through the Roman province.

Namnētes, or, Nannētes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica, who lived on the north bank of the Ligēris, (*Loire,*) where it falls into the sea.

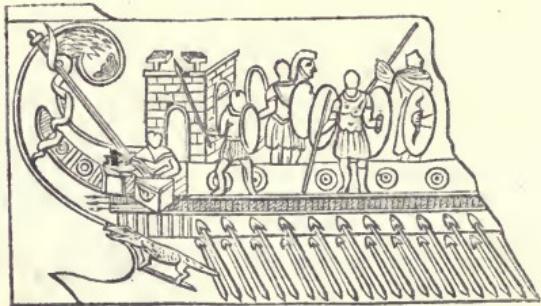
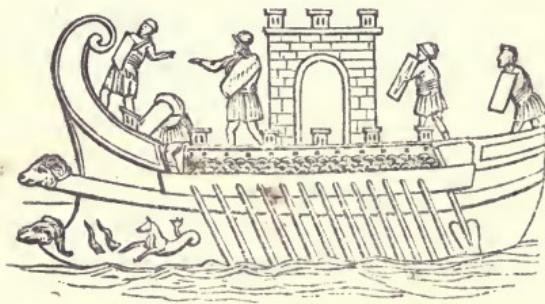
Nantuātes, um, a people, whose country lay on the south of Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva.*)

Narbo, ēnis. f. Narbonne, a town of Provincia, to the south of the river Atax, (the *Aude,*) near the sea-coast, which afterwards gave name to that division of Gallia, (*France,*) called Narbonensis.

Nasua, æ, the brother of Cimberius, who commanded the 100 Cantons of the Suevi, who had encamped on the bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine,*) with the design of crossing that river.

Naves, ium, (sing. *navigis*,) ships. The kind of ships used by the Romans were chiefly two, viz: *Naves Longæ*, ships of war, and *Naves Onerariæ*, ships of burden. The *Naves longæ* were so called because they were of a longer shape than the others. They were commonly impelled by oars, and were distinguished by a helmet at the mast head. They were also ranked as *birēmes*, *tri-rēmes*, *quadrēmes*, and *quinquirēmes*, according as they had two, three, four, or five rows or tiers of oars. According to the generally received opinion, these rows or tiers ran from the prow to the stern, as exhibited in the following wood cuts, taken from antiques, the first of which has one row and the second two. Over these were erected decks on which sometimes towers were constructed, from which the enemy might be more conveniently and successfully assailed.

#### NAVES LONGÆ.



The *Naves Onerariæ*, or ships of burden, were broader and rounder than the vessels of war. They were impelled by sails

and distinguished by a basket, (*corbis*,) suspended from the mast head; whence they were sometimes called *corbitæ*.

*Naves Actuariae* were ships contrived for lightness and expedition. They had but one bank of oars, or at most two, on each side. They were of different kinds, distinguished by different names; as, *Celōces*, *Lembi*, *Phasēli*, &c., but the most remarkable were the *Naves Liburnæ*, a kind of light gallies used by the Liburni.

Nemētes, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, probably a tribe of the Germans, on the west bank of the river Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) between the Tribōci and Vangiōnes. Their principal city was Noviomagus, (*Spire*.)

Nervii, ūrum, a powerful and warlike nation of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay on both sides of the Scaldis, (*Scheldt*, near the source of that river, afterwards *Hainault*, and *Nord*. They revolted and attacked the Roman troops under Cæsar; but were totally routed. Their mode of defence against the attacks of cavalry was simple and effectual. The different readings B. G. Lib. II. 17, are numerous, yet the idea conveyed by all is not very materially different. In the place where the Nervii wished to raise a barrier, they, probably at a considerable distance from each other, half cut two rows of young trees, so that they continued to grow, bent them longitudinally, and gave their branches a lateral direction. The middle space between these rows was planted or filled up with briars and thorns, which intermixing with the trees that formed the outside of the fence, rendered the whole so close and impervious, that it not only stopped the progress, but even the view of the invaders.

After *ramis* the common text has *enatis*, which Oudendorp and others reject as a mere gloss, unnecessary to the sense. It is also wanting in the best MSS.

Nonæ, ārum, f. the Nones, the second division of the Roman month; so called, it is supposed, because from that day to the Ides nine days intervened. In the months of March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the seventh, and in the other months on the fifth. (See Gr. App. I.)

Noreia, æ, f. a city of Noricum, the capital of the Taurisci. B. I. 5.

Norīcum, i, n. or Noricus ager, a large country of Germany, between Italia, (*Italy*,) and the Danubius, (*Danube*). It comprehended the greater part of Austria, all Saltzburg, Stiria, and Carinthia. Their chief city was Noreia, which was besieged by the

Boii, in the inroad which they had made upon Noricum, before they entered into alliance with the Helvetii.

Norici, īrum, the people of Noricum.

Noviodūnum, i, n. (B. G. II. 15,) a town of the Suessiōnes, (*Sons*, or *Noyons*.) Another of the Ædui, (B. G. VII. 55,) now *Nevers*, on the banks of the Ligēris, (*Loire*). And a third belonged to the Biturīges, (B. G. VII. 14,) now *Neuvy* or, *Neufry*, about twenty miles west from *Nevers*.

Numidia, æ, f. *Algiers*, a country of Africa, bounded on the north by the Mediterranean; on the west by Mauritania, (*Morocco* and *Fez*;) on the south by Gætūlia; and on the east by Afrīca Propria, (*Tunis*.)

Numidæ, īrum, and, Nomādes, um, the inhabitants of Numidia, described by Sallust, in the Jugurthan war, as faithless, unsteady, and fond of revolutions in the state.

## O.

OCELUM, i, n. *Oux*, or *Exilles*, a town on the frontiers of Gallia Cisalpīna, Citerior, or Togāta, in Alpes Graiae.

Octodūrus, i, (Octodōrus, in Greek,) *Martigny*, a town, or village, of the Verāgri, (*Vicus Veragrōrum*, Cæsar, B. G. III. 1,) on the *Drance*, near its junction with the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) at a considerable distance above the entrance of the latter into Lacus Lemānus, (*the Lake of Geneva*.)

Orcynia, æ, f. a name given by Eratosthenes, and some other Greeks, to Hercynia Silva; which see.

Orgetōrix, īgis, was, according to Cæsar, the richest and most noble of the Helvetii. Prompted by a love of power, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles, and persuaded the people to quit their country. When his ambitious views were discovered by the state, he was obliged to answer to the charges preferred against him. Orgetōrix, by means of his vassals and debtors, rescued himself, from the hands of his judges, and escaped. But whilst the state was endeavoring to support its authority by force, he died, as was suspected, by his own hands.

Osismii, īrum, a people of Gallia Celtīca, one of the nations which went under the general name of *Civitātes Armoricæ*. Their country afterwards formed part of the province of *Bretagne*. It is now called *Finisterre*.

## P.

PADUS, i. m. the *Po*, the largest river of Italy, anciently called Eridanus. The northern branches of the Po, descending from the Alps, render it largest in the warmest months of summer, by the melting of the snow towards the summit of these lofty mountains. It disembogues into Mare Adriaticum, or Hadriaticum, (the *Gulf of Venice*,) by seven mouths, of which two were formed by nature, the other five by art.

Pæmani, īrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the east bank of the Mosa, (*Meuse*.) They had the Cæræsi on the south, the Treviri on the east, and Silva Arduenna on the north.

Paludamentum, i., the military robe or cloak of the Roman commander; sometimes also worn by the chief officers. It was of a scarlet color, bordered with purple. The elevation of this upon a spear above the Prætorium, or general's tent, was often the signal given for commencing battle.

Parisii, īrum, the inhabitants of Lutetia, from whom it was afterwards called Parisii, now *Paris*, the capital of France. (See *Lutetia*.)

Passus, ūs, a pace, (two steps,) was reckoned nearly equal to five feet. (See Gr. App. VI. 5,) Of these 125 made a stadium, and 1000 made a mile; hence, *mille passuum*, a mile.

Pedius, i., (Quintus) a grandson of one of Julius Cæsar's sisters, was one of his lieutenant-generals in the Gallic war, and appointed in his will co-heir with Octavius, who had Pedius for his colleague in his first consulship. He passed a law, from him called *Lex Pedia*, declaring the death of Julius Cæsar to have been murder, and subjecting the assassin to capital punishment.

Peligni, īrum, a people of Italy, whose country lay between the sources of the rivers Sagrus, (*Sangro*,) and Aternus, (*Pescara*,) both of which fall into the Gulf of Venice.

Petrosidius, i., (Lucius, i,) a standard bearer of the army which, under the command of Q. Titurius Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, wintered among the Eburones. These troops were, in consequence of a stratagem of Ambiorix, attacked by him on disadvantageous ground two miles from the camp, and almost wholly cut off. Petrosidius having, with a few of his men, returned to the camp, threw his standard within the rampart, and was killed fighting with great bravery before the fortifications.

Pictōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtīca, on the south bank of the Ligēris, (*Loire,*) where it falls into the sea.

Pilāni. (See *Legio.*)

Pirustæ, ārum, a people of Illyrīcum, on the east coast of Mare Hadriatīcum, (*the Gulf of Venice.*)

Piso, ūnis, (Lucius Calpurnius, i,) Cæsar's father-in-law, who was consul with A. Gabinius Paulus, in the year of the city 696. In their consulship, Cicero was banished from Rome, and Clodius was supported by Piso, in procuring that disgraceful sentence, (B. G. I. 6.)

Piso, ūnis, (Lucius, i,) the grandfather of Piso above mentioned, was a lieutenant of Cassius, both of whom fell in an engagement with the Helvetii, (B. G. I. 12.)

Piso, ūnis, surnamed from his country, Aquitanus, a nobleman of Aquitania, whose father had been supreme magistrate in that country, and called *Friend* by the Romans, (B. G. IV. 12.)

Plancus, i, (L. Munatius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army, to whom he gave the joint command with C. Trebonius, of three legions cantoned in Gallia Belgica. After the death of Julius Cæsar, L. Munatius Plancus joined Antony and Lepidus. With the latter he was consul. He is said to have founded Lugdūnum, (*Lyons.*)

Pleumosii, ūrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, supposed to have lived on the Scaldis, (*Scheldt,*) near the place where the city *Tournay* now stands.

Pluteus, i, a kind of moveable gallery on wheels, in form resembling the Muscūlus, (which see,) but used chiefly to protect the archers stationed in it, in order to clear the walls with their arrows, and so facilitate the approach of storming parties and the erection of scaling ladders.

Pompeius, i, (Cneius,) a Roman who was well skilled in the language of the Gauls, and acted as interpreter to Quintus Titurius. After the credulity of that lieutenant had placed himself and his men at the mercy of Ambiorix, he sent Cneius Pompeius to the king of the Eburōnes, begging him to spare their lives. (See *Titurius.*)

Præconīnus, i, a lieutenant who was himself killed, and his army defeated at Apollōnia.

Præfector, i, an officer who commanded the allies, and who in the extent of his command resembled the legionary tribune. The commander of the cavalry of a legion was called *præfector alæ.*

Prætor, ūris, m. a Prætor; (from *Præ* and *eo,*) literally, one who goes before. In the early ages of the Roman State, this term is

supposed by some to have been a general appellation of all the Roman Magistrates, afterwards of the general of the army; even the Emperors were ambitious to include it among their other titles. But the word commonly denoted a Roman judge who administered justice both among his fellow-citizens, and also among the foreigners who resided in Rome. In dignity the Prætor ranked next to the Consul. He had power to alter laws, repeal them, and enact new at pleasure.

**Prætoria cohors**, **Prætorian cohort**, a select band of troops forming the general's body guard.

**Preciāni**, ūrum, a people of Aquitania, who are supposed to have lived at the foot of the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees*,) near Mare Cantabriūm, (*the Bay of Biscay*.)

**Primopilus**, i., (sometimes primus pilus,) the chief centurion of the legion. This name belonged to the first centurion of the first maniple of the Triarii. He was entrusted with the eagle or main standard of the legion; in pay he ranked among the equites, and had a place in the council of war with the consul and tribunes.

**Provincia Romāna**, the Roman Province; that part of Transalpine Gaul in the possession of the Romans previous to the conquests of Cæsar. It extended along the shore of the Mediterranean, from the Pyrenees to the Alps, and was bounded on its northwest side by the Mount Cebenna, (or *Cevennes*,) and on the north, eastward, by the Ambāni, Sequāri, and Helvetii. In the new division of Gaul afterwards made by Augustus, its boundaries remained as before, but as all Gaul was now become a Roman Province it ceased to be distinguished by that name, and was called Narbonensis, from Narbo its principal city. (See *Narbo*.)

**Pulfio**, ūnis, (Titus, i,) a Roman centurion of distinguished valor, who, to decide a dispute with L. Varēnus respecting superiority of courage, rushed forth from the camp, when attacked by the Nervii, and displayed great bravery without the fortifications. Nor was his rival for military fame, inferior to him either in bravery or generosity; B. V. Ch. 44. (See *Varenus*.)

## R.

**RAURACI**, ūrum, a people of Gallia Celtica. on the northern extremity of Mount Jura. The Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) was their boundary on the east.

**Remi**, ūrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country lay to the north of the Matrōna, (*Marne*). Their chief town was Durocortrum, now *Rheims*.

Rhedōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtica. The Rhedōnes were one of those nations reckoned among the *Civitātes Armorīcæ*. Their country is now called *Bretagne*.

Rhenus, i. m. the *Rhine*, a celebrated river of Europe, which takes its rise in Mount Adūla, (*St. Gothard.*) in the country of the Grissons, passes *Lacus Brigantinus*, (*Lake of Constance*,) and continues to run nearly west about 75 miles, when it reaches *Basti*. On leaving this city, it takes a northerly direction and becomes the boundary between France, or the Netherlands, and Germany, till it divides into two branches, which, with the German Sea, formed, what was anciently called, *Insula Batavorum*, (*Holland*, or the *United Provinces*.) After a course of 600 miles, and receiving several rivers on both banks, the Rhine discharges itself into that part of *Mare Atlanticum*, (*the Atlantic Ocean*,) called *Oceānus Germanicus*, (*the German Sea*.)

Rhodānus, i. m. the *Rhone*, a large and rapid river of Europe, which has its source in Mount la Fourche, near St. Gothard, in the canton of Uri, not more than two leagues south from that of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*,) passes *Lacus Lemānus*, (*the Lake of Geneva*,) five leagues below which it disappears between two rocks for a considerable way, rises again, flows with great rapidity in a southern direction, and discharges itself by three mouths into that part of the Mediterranean formerly called *Gallicus Sinus*, (*the Gulf of Lyons*.) The course of the Rhone is about 400 miles, during which it falls 5,400 feet. In Strabo's time it was navigable a good way up; but its mouths are now so full of rocks brought down from the mountain by its impetuous current, that no ship can enter them. The Rhone is largest in summer, and is at its greatest height soon after the longest day. This is most probably occasioned by the heat of the sun melting part of the snow on the Alps during the summer months.

Roma, æ, f. *Rome*, one of the most celebrated cities of antiquity, stood on the banks of the Tiber, about fifteen miles from the sea. Romūlus, from whom the name is derived, laid the foundation of this city on *Mons Palatīnus*, 15th April, 753 B. C. From a very small beginning it gradually increased, until its circumference, according to Pliny, was not less than twenty miles. After the lapse of many years, Rome became the capital of Italia. (*Italy*,) and, at the commencement of the Christian Era, the known world was in subjection to that gigantic power. It was divided into twenty-four regions or wards, had seven great, and thirteen smaller aqueducts, thirty-seven gates, and six hundred and forty-four tow-

ers on the walls. To ascertain its population when in the height of power, is perhaps impossible; but it could not fall much below four millions.

Roscius, i, (Lucius, i,) a lieutenant, to whom Cæsar gave the command of the third legion, which he was to march into the territories of the Essui.

Rufus, i, (P. Sulpicius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, to whom he gave the charge of the port in Gallia, (*France*), from which he sailed for Britannia, (*Britain*), and a garrison sufficient to protect it during his absence.

Rutēni, örüm, a people of Aquitania, on the river Tarnis, (*Tarne*.)

Rutīlus, i, (M. Sempronius, i,) an officer of Cæsar, who had, with T. Labiēnus, the joint command of the two legions which that general ordered to march into the territories of the Sequāni.

## S.

SABINUS, i, (Caius Calvisius,) an officer in Cæsar's army, whom he sent into Ætolia, in Græcia, (*Greece*), with five cohorts and a few men.

Sabinus, i, (Q. Titurius, i,) a lieutenant in Cæsar's army. He, and L. Aurunculeius Cotta, had the command of the troops which were stationed among the Menapii, and in other parts of Gallia Belgica. When in their quarters on the frontiers of the Eburōnes, the artful stratagem of Ambiorix, king of that tribe, to cut off these lieutenants and their two legions succeeded, through the credulity and obstinacy of Sabinus. A few of the private soldiers escaped the sword of the Gauls. (See *Cotta*.) This officer is sometimes called simply Titurius, or, Sabinus.

Sabis, is, m. the *Sambre*, a river of Gallia Belgica, which has its rise in what is now called *Picardy*, runs northeast and falls into the Mosa, (*Meuse*), near *Namur*.

Sagittarii, örüm, archers; men who fought with bows and arrows, attached to the *velites*. (See *Legio*.) The best archers were the Cretans. The Romans did not use the bow in the early times of the republic, and when introduced they had scarcely any archers except those of the auxiliary troops.

Samarobrīva, æ, f. (*i. e.* the bridge of the Samāra,) *Amiens*, a town of Gallia Belgica, on the south bank of the river Samāra, (*Somme*.) It was afterwards called Ambiānum, from its inhabitants; hence the present name

Santōnes, um, a people of Gallia Celtīca, to the north of the river Carantōnus, (*Charente.*) Their chief town was Mediolānum, afterwards Santones, now *Saintes*.

Scaldis, is, the *Scheld*, or the *Scheldt*, a river of Gallia Belgīca, which takes its rise about fifteen miles south of Cambrācum, (*Cambray,*) in the province of Picardy, runs north, and dividing into two branches, falls into the German Sea. Cæsar erroneously makes it a branch of the Mosa, (*Meuse,*) (B. G. VI. 33.)

Scorpiōnes, a species of military engine for throwing darts and javelins, similar to the *Balista*, or probably only another name for the same. (See *Balista*.)

Scutum, i. m. a shield; a part of the defensive armor of the Roman infantry, which they wore on their left arms to protect their bodies against the arrows, darts, and other missile weapons thrown by the enemy. It consisted of thin pieces of wood joined by plates of iron, and covered with thick skin or hide. The most common form was oval, extending to four feet in length and two and a half in breadth. When a soldier had not his shield he was said to fight *nudo corpore*.

Sedūni, ūrum, a nation of Helvetia, (*Switzerland,*) on the north bank of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone,*) above Lacus Lemānus, (the *Lake of Geneva.*)

Sedusii, ūrum, a nation of Germany, on the northeast bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine.*) Their country was watered by the Mœnus, (*Maine.*)

Segōnax, ācis, one of the four kings who reigned in Cantium, (*Kent,*) at the time Cæsar invaded Britain.

Segontiāci, ūrum, a British nation on the south of the river Tamēsis, (*Thames.*) They appear to have been subject to Cassivellaunus, at the time Cæsar attempted to add this island to the Roman empire. (B. V. Ch. 21.)

Segusiāni, ūrum, a people of Gallia Celtīca, to the west of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone.*) Their country was traversed by the Ligēris, (*Loire,*) towards the source of that river.

Senōnes, um, a warlike nation of Gallia Celtīca, who lived on the Sequāna, (*Seine.*) about 70 miles above Paris.

Septimius, i, (Lucius, i,) a tribune of the soldiers, sent along with Achillas, by Ptolemæus king of Egypt, to murder Pompey, in whose army he had formerly been a centurion.

Sequāna, æ, the *Seine*, a river of Gallia, (*France,*) has its source near Nevers in Bourgogne, runs in a northwest direction, and falls into that part of the Atlantic called Fretum Britannicum, (the *British Channel,*) at Havre de Grace. The course of this beautiful and picturesque river extends to 250 miles. Paris, the capital of France, originally a fort on a small island in the Seine, above 120 miles from the sea, now stands on both sides of this river, over which there are, in that city, 12 bridges.

Sequāna, æ, f. a district of Gallia, (*France,*) bounded on the east by Mons Jura, (*Mount Jura,*) which separated it from the country of the Helvetii; on the north by Mount Vosegus, (*Vauje,*) which divided it from that of the Leuci; on the west by the country of the Ædui and Lingōnes; and on the south by that of the Ambarri and Allobroḡes.

Sequāni ūrum, (sing. Sequānus, i,) the people of Sequāna. This nation headed one of the factions of the Gallic states, and the Ædui the other.

Sesuvii, ūrum, (or Sesovii,) one of the Armorican states in Gaul, the situation of which is not known.

Sextius, i, (Publius S. Baculus,) a centurion of the first rank in Cæsar's army, in the Gallic wars.

Sextius, i, (Titus, i,) one of the three lieutenants whom Cæsar sent to augment his army, in the sixth year of the war in Gallia, (*France.*)

Sibutzātes, um, a people of Aquitania, whose country lay along the Atur, (*Adour.*) Of their history nothing is known.

Sigambri, ūrum, a German nation, who lived on the east bank of the Rhine, to the south of the river Rura, (*Roir.*)

Silānus, i, (Marcus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he ordered to levy troops for the war in Gallia, (*France.*)

Silius, i, (Titus, i,) an officer whom P. Crassus sent to the Venēti, to procure grain and forage with Velanius. But the Venēti, seized them in expectation of regaining their hostages by this measure.

Sotiātes, ium, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the Garumna, (*Garonne.*) Their territories formed part of what was afterwards called Novempopulāna, bounded by the Garonne, Pyrenees, and Bay of Biscay.

Suessōnes, Suessōnes, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, whose country was bounded on the south by the Matrōna, (*Marne.*) Although a brave and powerful nation, they were obliged to submit to the arms of Cæsar.

Suevi, ūrum, a nation of Germania, (*Germany.*) who inhabited a large tract of country, Suevia, æ, f. lying between the Albis, Elbe, and the Vistūla, (*Vistula.*) on the northern side of Silva, Hercynia. They made many inroads on the Roman territories.

Sulpitius, i, (Publius, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants. Q. Tullius, Cicero, and P. Sulpitius, were stationed among the Ædui, at Cabillo, v. Cabillōnum, (*Chalons.*) and Matisco, (*Mascon.*) on the Arar, (*Saone.*) These two officers were entrusted with the care of provisions.

## T.

TAMESIS, or Thamesis, is, m. the *Thames*, one of the largest rivers of England, rises in Cotswold hills in the western extremity of Gloucestershire, runs eastward, and after passing through London, falls into the German Sea. With respect to commerce, this is the first river in the world. It is navigable about 130 miles, and the tide flows up as far as Richmond in Surrey, which taking the course of the river, is 70 miles.

Tarbelli. ūrum, a people of Aquitania, whose country extended along the sea-coast, from the Pyrenæi Montes, (*Pyrenees.*) to the territories of the Cocosātes.

Tarusātes, ium, a people of Aquitania. The Tarbelli were between them and the Bay of Biscay.

Tasgetius, i, a nobleman of the nation of the Carnutes, whose fore-fathers had possessed the sovereignty of that state.

Taximagulus, i, one of the four kings who reigned over Cantium. (*Kent.*) They seem to have all been under the power of Cassivellaunus.

Tectosages, um, and Tectosagi, orum, a very valiant people of Gallia, a branch of the Volcae, near the Pyrenees. (See *Volcae*.)

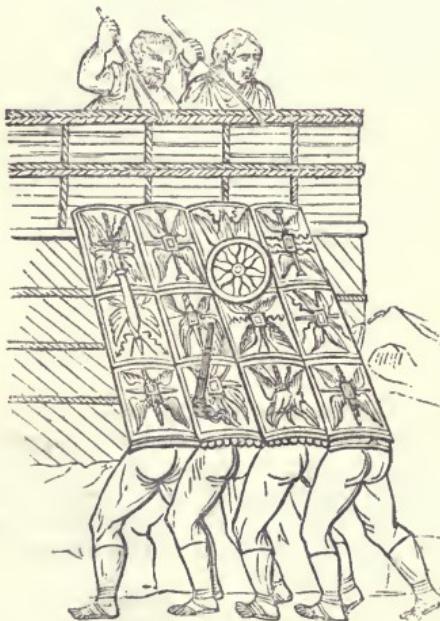
Tenchtéri, orum, a people of Germany, on the river Rhenus, (*Rhine,*) south of the Sigambri.

Terrasidius, i, (Titus, i,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, whom he sent into the country of the Esubii.

Testudo, ūnis, f. I. A wooden tower used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers when employed in undermining the walls of a town, or in battering them with the ram, (See *Aries*.) It was erected of wood, and covered with hides, earth, or any other kind of substance which is with difficulty set on fire.

II. When the soldiers of a company advanced to an assault, they frequently stood close together, and formed a shade or screen of their shields, to protect their bodies against the missile weapons, thrown by the enemy from the walls. This defence they also called *Testudo*, from the resemblance which the locked shields had to the shell or covering of the tortoise, (See the following wood cut,) but it must not be confounded with the tower or man-telet just described.

### TESTUDO.



Tigurinus Pagus, one of the four cantons or districts, into which Helvetia (*Switzerland,*) is divided according to Cæsar, compre-

hending the modern cantons *Zurich*, *Schwitz*, *Schaffhausen*, and the lands of the *Abbey of St. Gal*.

Tigurini, örum, the people of Pagus Tigurinus.

Titus, i, a common prænomen among the Romans.

Titurius, i, (Quintus T. Sabinus,) one of Cæsar's lieutenants, often called simply, Titurius, killed by Ambiorix. (See *Aurunculeius*.)

Tolōsa, æ, *Thoulose*, or *Toulouse*, a town of Aquitania, beautifully situated on the north bank of Garumna. Tolōsa was one of the most flourishing cities of Gaul, afterwards the residence of a Roman colony, and, at a later period, the metropolis of the Visogoths.

Tolosates, ium, the inhabitants of Tolōsa.

Trebius, i, (Marcus T. Gallius,) an officer sent by Cæsar to the Curiosolitæ, to procure provisions.

Treviri, örum, or (sing. Trevir, iři,) a nation of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosella, (*Moselle*,) and Silva Arduenna. Their chief city, Augusta Trevirorum, now *Triers*, or *Treves*, stands on the east bank of the Moselle, over which it has a large bridge.

Tribuni, örum, (sing. Tribunus, i,) militum, Tribunes of the soldiers; officers in the Roman army, who had the command of a division of a legion. To take care of the works and camp, to communicate the watchword to the guards, and to give judgment in certain cases, formed the duty of the military tribunes. Romulus first appointed the tribunes, to whom he gave that name from their being only *three* in number, one out of each tribe. But afterwards, each legion had six tribunes. The right of nomination belonged first to the kings, then to the consuls, or dictators, and, at a later period, to the people.

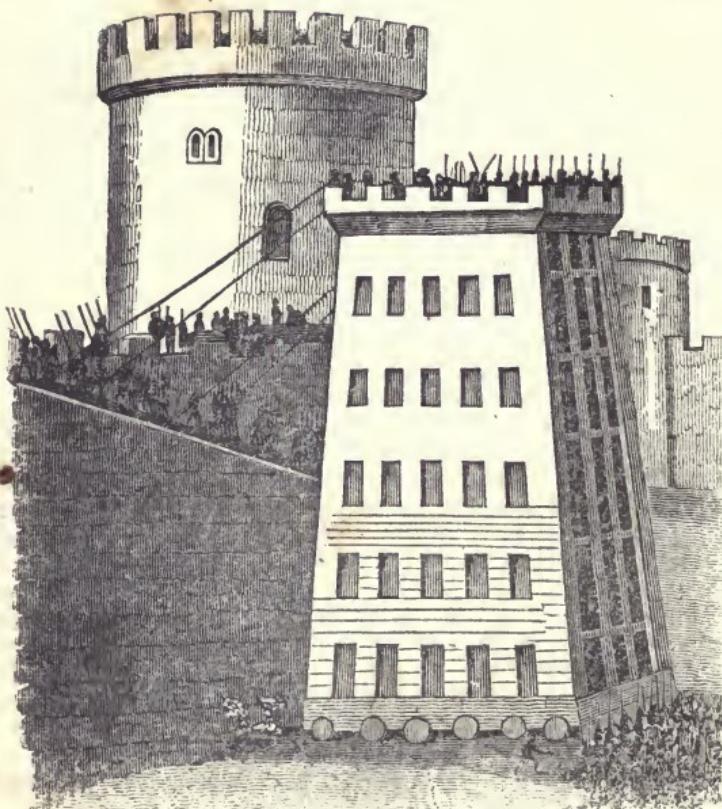
Trinobantes, um, a nation of ancient Britain, inhabiting the counties now called *Essex* and *Middlesex*. Cassivellaunus was their king at the time Cæsar invaded this island.

Tulingi, örum, a people of Germany, between the rivers Danubius, (*Danube*,) and Rhenus, (*Rhine*.)

Turones, um, or, i, örum, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the banks of the river *Loire*, about 140 miles from the sea. Their name is perpetuated by the modern appellation of the country, *Touraine*, and their city *Tours*, anciently Turones.

Turris, is, a tower. The towers used in the Roman military works were of two kinds, the fixed and the moveable. The fixed towers were erected on the *agger*, or mound, and were raised sufficiently high to overlook and command the enemy's ramparts, and from them showers of arrows, darts, and other missiles were thrown by means of various engines. The moveable towers (See wood cut, next page,) were pushed forward on rollers or wheels fixed below. To prevent them from being set on fire they were covered with raw hides and pieces of coarse woollen cloth. They were of immense size, sometimes forty or fifty feet square, and higher than the walls, or even the towers of the city. When brought up against the walls, a place was seldom able to stand out long. Sometimes they were provided with a species of drop or platform, which being let down reached from the tower to the top of the wall and formed a species of bridge by which the assailants took possession of the walls.

## TURRIS.



## U.

**Ubii**, *ōrum*, a people of Germany, whose territories were on the Rhine opposite to the Sigambri.

**Unelli**, *ōrum*, a people of Gallia Celtica, on the northwest of what is now called Normandy. Their country was bounded on three sides by the sea. Their chief town was Coriallum, (*Gouril.*) Off the coast of the Unelli, lay the islands of Cæsarea, (*Jersey,*) Sarnia, (*Guernsey,*) and Redūna, (*Alderney,*) which have long been in possession of the British.

**Usipētes**, *um*, or **Usipiī**, *ōrum*, a people of Germany, on the right bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine.*)

## V.

**Vahalis**, *is*, *m.* *Wahal*, or, *Waal*, the left branch of the Rhenus. (*Rhine.*) It joins the Mosa, (*Meuse,*) at the island of Voorn, and falls into the German sea below the Breil.

**Valerius**, *i*, (*Caius V. Cabūrus,*) a chief man among the Gauls in Provincia, whose original name appears to have been *Cabūrus*.

On being made a Roman citizen, by C. Valerius Flaccus, he, as was usual, took the name of his patron.

Valerius, i, (Caius, V. Flaccus,) a noble Roman, who conferred the freedom of the city on C. Valerius Caburus.

Valerius i, (Caius V. Procillus,) the son of C. Valerius Caburus, was the chief man in Provincia. Cæsar, on account of his knowledge of the Gallic language, sent him and M. Mettius to hold an interview with Ariovistus, king of Germany. The German king imprisoned them both, but they were afterwards rescued by the Romans during the flight of their army.

Vallum, the ramparts of a Roman encampment, composed of the earth dug out from the ditch, and having sharp stakes stuck into it to keep it together. (See *Castra*.)

Vangiōnes, um, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the west bank of the Rhenus, (*Rhine*.) They were originally from Germany, and, at one time, had probably lands on both sides of that river. Their chief town was Borbetomagus, now *Worms*.

Velanius, i, (Quintus, i,) sent by Cæsar with Silius to procure corn from the Veneti, who detained them in order to receive the hostages which they had given to that general.

Velauni, ūrum, a small tribe in Gallia Celtica, on the sources of the Ligēris. Their chief city was Anderitium, now *Javoli*, or *Javoux*.

Velites, light-armed troops. They were equipped with bows, slings, seven javelins or spears with slender points like arrows, so that, when thrown, they bent, and could not easily be returned by the enemy; a Spanish sword, having both edge and point; a round buckler (*parma*,) about three feet in diameter, made of wood and covered with leather; and a helmet or casque for the head, generally made of the skin of some wild beast. When the army was drawn up in order of battle, the *velites* were placed in the spaces or intervals between the maniples, or else on the wings. (See *Legio*.)

Velocasses. (See *Belloccasses*.)

Venēti, ūrum, a nation in the west part of Gallia Celtica, whose chief town was Venetiā. Their country lay on the sea coast, northwest from the mouth of the Liger, (*Loire*.)

Verāgri, ūrum, a people who lived in that part of Provincia, now called *Dauphine*, on the south bank of the Rhodānus, (*Rhone*,) above Lacus Lemanus, (the *Lake of Geneva*.)

Verbīgēnus, i, (sc. *pagus*,) or, Urbigēnus, one of the four divisions of Helvetia, (*Switzerland*,) included the cantons of *Friburg* and *Bern*, with the districts of *Neufchatel* and *Vallengin*.

Vergobrētus, i, the title of the supreme magistrate among the *Ædui*, who was created yearly, and had the power of life and death over his countrymen.

Veromandui, ūrum, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Nervii and Suessiones. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanuōrum, (St. Quentin,) on the right bank of the Samāra, (*Somme*.) Like most of the other nations of Gallia Belgica, they were originally from Germany.

Vertīco, ūnis, a nobleman of the Nervii, who was in Cicero's camp, when attacked by the Eburōnes, and prevailed on a slave to carry a letter to Cæsar, communicating information of that event.

Verudoctius, i, one of the Helvetii. He and Nameius were at the head of the embassy sent to Cæsar, requesting permission to march through Provincia.

Vesontio, ōnis, f. *Besâcon*, the chief town of the Sequâni. on the east bank of the river Dubis, (*Doux*.)

Vigilia, æ, f. a watch, the time a Roman soldier remained on guard during the night. Of these there were four, each three hours long. (See Gr. App. I.)

Vineæ, arum, f. a shed, used by the Romans for protecting the soldiers in besieging towns. It consisted of four upright posts, upon which was fixed a roof of hurdle or wicker-work. Above the hurdles were spread raw hides, a little earth, &c. to protect it from fire. The size of the vineæ differed according to circumstances. The whole rested upon wheels, so that this mantelet would be easily moved, and under it the besiegers either worked the ram, (See *Aries*,) or tried to undermine the walls. (See *Pluteus*.)

Virdomârus, one of the Ædui, more distinguished by political influence, than by noble birth. Cæsar, at the request of Divitiâcus, raised him to the highest dignity in the state.

Viridövix, icis, the leading man among the Unelli, who headed a powerful army in an attack on Sabînus, one of Cæsar's lieutenants stationed among them, who defeated Viridövix by an artful stratagem.

Vocates, ium, a people of Aquitania, supposed by some to be the same with Vasâtes, whose territories lay on the south bank of the Garonne, about ninety miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was *Cossio*.

Vocio, ōnis, king of the Norici, to whose sister Ariovistus was married.

Vocontii, ūrum, a nation of Gaul, on the banks of a small stream called Druna, (*Drome*,) which falls into the Rhodânum, (*Rhone*,) about 100 miles from the mouth of that river. Their chief town was Dia, *Die*.

Vosëgus, i, or Vogësus, m. *Vauge*, is a branch of Mount Jura, stretching in a northern direction, in which are the sources of the Arar, (*Saone*,) the Mosa, (*Meuse*,) and the Mosella, (*Moselle*.)

Volcatius Tullus, Volcatii Tulli, an officer, who, according to Cæsar, sustained, at Dyrrachium, (*Durazzo*,) with three cohorts, the charge of a whole legion.

Volcæ, arum, a numerous and powerful nation of Gaul, between the Garumna, (*Garonne*,) and the Rhodânum, (*Rhone*,) divided into the Arecomici, and Tectosâges, q. v.

Volusenus, i, (Caius, i,) an officer whom Cæsar sent with a galley to survey the coast of Britain opposite Gaul, and to acquire as correct information as he could, respecting the harbors and landing places, previously to his sailing against that island.

BULLIONS'  
SERIES OF GRAMMARS,  
ENGLISH, LATIN AND GREEK,  
*ON THE SAME PLAN,*

FOR THE USE OF

**Colleges, Academies & Common Schools.**  
(Published by Pratt, Woodford & Co., N. Y.)

---

In preparing this series, the main object has been, First: To provide for the use of schools a set of class books on this important branch of study, more simple in their arrangement, more complete in their parts, and better adapted to the purposes of public instruction, than any heretofore in use in our public Seminaries: and Secondly, to give the whole a uniform character by following, in each, substantially, the same arrangement of parts, using the same grammatical terms, and expressing the definitions, rules, and leading parts, as nearly as the nature of the case would admit in the same language; and thus to render the study of one Grammar a more profitable introduction to the study of another than it can be, when the books used differ so widely from each other in their whole style and arrangement, as those now in use commonly do. By this means, it is believed, much time and labor will be saved, both to teacher and pupil,—the analogy and peculiarities of the different languages being constantly kept in view, will show what is common to all, or peculiar to each,—the confusion and difficulty unnecessarily occasioned by the use of

elementary works, differing widely from each other in language and structure will be avoided,—and the progress of the student rendered much more rapid, easy and satisfactory.

These works form a complete series of elementary books, in which the substance of the best Grammars in each language has been compressed into a volume of convenient size, handsomely printed on a fine paper, neatly and strongly bound, and at a moderate price. The whole series is now submitted to the judgment of a discerning public, and especially to teachers and superintendents of schools, and seminaries of learning throughout the United States.

The following notices and recommendations of the works separately, and of the series, both from individuals of the highest standing in the community, and from the public press, will furnish some idea of the plan proposed, and of the manner in which it has been executed

## I. THE PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

*Comprising the substance of the most approved English Grammars extant—with copious exercises in PARSING and SYNTAX. Fifth edition with an APPENDIX, of various and useful matter, pp. 216, 12 mo. New-York, Robinson, Pratt & Co.*

This work, on the plan of Murray's Grammar, has been prepared with much care, and with special reference to the wants of our Common Schools. It comprises in a condensed form, and expressed in plain and perspicuous language, all that is useful and important in the works of the latest and best writers on this subject,—an advantage possessed in an equal degree by no similar work now in use. It is the result not only of much study and careful comparison, but of nearly twenty-five years experience in the school room, during which, the wants of the pupil and the character of books best adapted to those wants, have been carefully noted ; and its adaptation to the purpose of instruction has now been thoroughly tested and approved in some of the best schools in this country. It is beautifully printed on a fine strong paper, neatly and firmly

bound, and forms one of the most complete, useful, and economical school books ever offered to the public. The following are a few extracts from,

#### NOTICES AND RECOMMENDATIONS.

The undersigned have great satisfaction in recommending to the public, "The Principles of English Grammar," by Prof. BULLIONS, of the Albany Academy. Proceeding upon the plan of Murray, he has availed himself of the labors of the most distinguished grammarians, both at home and abroad; and made such a happy use of the helps afforded him, that we know of no work of the kind, in the same compass, which is equal to it in point of merit. Among its many excellencies, it is not the least, that Prof. B. has given a practical illustration of every principle from the beginning to the end; and the possession of his Grammar entirely supersedes the necessity of procuring a separate volume of Exercises on the Rules of Syntax. In a word, we can truly say, in the language of the author, "that there is nothing of much importance in Murray's larger Grammar, or in the works of subsequent writers, that will not be found condensed here."

JOHN LUDLOW, ISAAC FERRIS, ALFRED CONKLING, T. ROMEYN BECK.	ALONZO CRITTENTON, J. M. GARFIELD, ROBERT MCKEE.
--	--

*Albany, October 8, 1842.*

[*An Extract from the Minutes of the Board of Trustees of the Albany Female Academy.*]

At a meeting of the trustees of the Albany Female Academy, held on the third instant, the book committee reported, that they had examined Professor Bullions' English Grammar, recently published in this city: and that in their opinion, it contains all that is useful in the most improved treatises now in use, as well as much valuable original matter: that from the copious exercises in false syntax, it will supersede the necessity of a separate volume on that subject; and recommend that it should be used as the text book in this institution.

On motion, it was resolved, that the report of the committee be accepted, and the treatise on English Grammar; by the Rev. Peter Bullions, adopted as the text book in this academy.

An Extract from the Minutes.

A. CRITTENTON, *Secretary of the Board of Trustees, and Principal of the Academy.*

*Albany, October 13, 1834.*

*Sing-Sing, November 1, 1834.*

DEAR SIR—I have examined your English Grammar with no small degree of satisfaction; and though I am not in the habit of recommending books in this manner, I am constrained in this case to say, I think you have conferred another important favour on the cause of education.

The great defects of most of the English grammars now in use, particularly in the omission of many necessary definitions, or in the want of perspicuity in those given, and also in the rules of construction, are in a great measure happily supplied. I am so well pleased with the result of your labors, that I have adopted it, (as I did your Greek Grammar) for both our institutions.

Yours respectfully,

NATHANIEL S. PRIME, *Principal of Mt. Pleasant Academy,*

REV. P. BULLIONS,

The undersigned hold the responsibility of recommendation as an important one—often abused, and very frequently used to oblige a personal friend, or to get rid of an urgent applicant. They further appeal to their own conduct for years past, to show that they have only occasionally assumed this responsibility; and therefore feel the greater confidence in venturing to recommend the examination, and the adoption of the Rev. Dr. Bullions' English Grammar, as at once the most concise and the most comprehensive of any with which they are acquainted; as furnishing a satisfactory solution of nearly all the difficulties of the English language; as containing a full series of exercises in false syntax, with rules for their correction; and finally, that the arrangement is in every way calculated to carry the pupil from step to step in the successful acquisition of that most important end of education, the knowledge and use of the English language.

GIDEON HAWLEY,  
T. ROMEYN BECK,  
JOHN A. DIX.

March 1, 1842.

A cursory examination of the English Grammar of Dr. Bullions, has satisfied me, that it has just claims on public favour. It is concise and simple; the matter is well digested; the exercises excellent, and the typographical execution worthy of all praise. The subscriber takes pleasure in recommending it to the notice of Teachers, and of all persons interested in education.

ALONZO POTTER.

*Union College, Sept. 6, 1842.*

The English Grammar of the Rev. Dr. Bullions, appears to me, to be the best manual which has appeared as yet. With all the good points of Murray, it has additions and emendations, which I cannot but think would have commended themselves to Murray himself, and if I were a teacher of English Grammar, I would without hesitation prefer it to any other book of the kind,

JAMES W. ALEXANDER,  
*Professor of Belles Lettres, College of N. J.*

*Princeton, Aug. 15, 1842*

*Extract of a letter from Rev. BENJAMIN HALE, D.D., President of Geneva College N. Y.*

Rev. DR. BULLIONS.—Dear Sir—I have lately procured a copy of your English Grammar, and given it such attention as my time has permitted, and I do not hesitate to express my conviction, that it is entitled to higher

confidence than any other English Grammar in use among us, and my wish, that it may come into general use. I have seen enough to satisfy me, that you have diligently consulted the best sources, and combined your materials with discrimination and judgment. We have, as a faculty, recommended it by placing it on the list of books to be used by candidates in preparation for this college. I have personally recommended it, and will continue to recommend it, as I have opportunity.

Very respectfully, dear sir, your friend, &c.

BENJAMIN HALE.

*Geneva College, July 13, 1842.*

*Extract of a letter from Rev. CYRUS MASON, D.D., Rector of the Grammar School in the University of New-York.*

*University, New-York, June 13th, 1842.*

REV. DR. BULLIONS.—Dear Sir—At the suggestion of the late Mr. Leckie, head classical master in the Grammar School, we began to introduce your grammars at the opening of the present year. We have made use chiefly of the Greek and English Grammar. The result thus far is a conviction that we have profited by the change, which I was very slow to make; and I doubt not that our farther experience will confirm the good opinion we entertain of your labors in this department of learning. Wishing you a large reward, I remain, very truly yours,

C. MASON, *Rector.*

## NOTICES FROM THE PUBLIC PRESS.

From a REPORT PRESENTED TO THE JEFFERSON Co. ASSOCIATION OF TEACHERS, *on the English Grammars now in use, the merits of each, and the best method of teaching them.* By the Rev. J. R. BOYD, Principal of Black River Institute.

“ 2. The Grammar by Prof. BULLIONS of the Albany Academy, is constructed on the same plan as that of Brown; and while it is not so copious in its exercises, nor so full in its observations upon the language, yet it is far more simple in its phraseology, more clear in its arrangement, more free perhaps from errors or things needing improvement, and at the same time contains all that is necessary to be learned in gaining a knowledge of the structure of our language. The Rules of Syntax and observations under them, are expressed generally in the best manner. The Verb is most vividly explained, and that portion of the work contains much not to be found in other grammars, while it judiciously omits a great deal to be found in them, that is unworthy of insertion.

“ It is excellent upon Prosody, and upon Poetic Diction

and gives an admirable summary of directions for correct and elegant writing, and the different forms of composition. The typography of the book cannot be too highly commended—a circumstance that greatly affects the comfort and improvement of the learner.

"This grammar is equally well adapted to the beginner and to the advanced scholar. The course of instruction which Prof. B. recommends in the use of his grammar, seems wisely adapted to secure in the readiest manner the improvement of the pupil. The book is not so large as to appal the beginner, nor so small as to be of little use to those advanced. On the whole, in my judgment, no work has yet appeared, which presents equally high claims to general use. It is copious without redundancy—it is well printed, and forms a volume pleasing to the eye. It is lucid and simple, while in the main, it is philosophically exact.—Among the old Grammars, our decided preference is given to that of Prof. Bullions."

[From the Albany Argus.]

**PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.**—This work besides containing a full system of grammar, is rendered more immediately useful for academies and common schools, by containing copious examples in good grammar for parsing, and in bad grammar for correction; and all of these are arranged directly under the rule to which they apply. Thus, instead of two books, which are required, (the grammar and the exercises,) the learner finds both in one, for a price at least not greater than the others.

[From the Newburgh Journal.]

**BULLIONS' ENGLISH GRAMMAR.**—It is not one of the smallest evils connected with our present system of common school education, that our schools are flooded with such a variety of books on elementary subjects, not only differing in arrangement, but frequently involving absurd and contradictory principles. And to no subject are these remarks more applicable, than to English Grammar. And until some one elementary work of an approved character shall be generally introduced into our common schools, we despair of realizing a general proficiency in this important branch of education. It is with pleasure, therefore, that we witness the increasing popularity of "Bullions' English Grammar." From a familiar acquaintance with the work, from the publication of the first edition, we have no hesitation in pronouncing it the best Grammar with which we are acquainted. The perspicuity of its definitions, the correctness of its principles, the symmetry of its arrangements, as well as the neat and accurate form in which it is presented, and withal the cheapness of the work, are so many recommendations to its general use.

Professor BULLIONS' English Grammar is obviously the fruit of sound and enlightened judgment, patient labor and close reflection. It partakes of the character both of an original work and of a compilation. Following the principles of Murray, and adopting in the main the plan of Lennie, the most distinguished of his successors, the aim of the author, as he states in his preface, has been to correct what is erroneous, to retrench what is superfluous or unimportant, to compress what is prolix, to elucidate what is obscure, and to determine what is left doubtful, in the books already in use. In laboring to accomplish this excellent design, he has contrived to condense, in very perspicuous language, within the compass of a small, handsomely printed volume, about 200 pages, and costing but 50 cents, all that is requisite in this form to the acquisition of a thorough knowledge of the grammar of our language. It contains so great a number of exercises in parsing and syntax, judiciously interspersed, as to supersede the necessity of separate manuals of exercises now in use. Among other highly useful things to be found in this book, and not usually met with in works of this nature, are some very valuable critical remarks, and a pretty long "list of improper expressions," which unhappily have crept into use in different parts of our country. Under the head of Prosody, the author has, it is believed, given a better explanation of the principles of English versification, than is to be found in any other work of this nature in this country. In short, I hazard the prediction that this will be found to be decidedly the plainest, most perfect, and most useful manual of English grammar that has yet appeared.

Z.

#### EXTRACTS FROM LETTERS.

The following, are extracts from letters from County Superintendents of Common Schools in the State of New-York, to whom copies of the work had been sent for examination.

*From ALEXANDER FONDA, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com. Schools, Schenectady Co.*

Schenectady, March 30, 1842.

DEAR SIR—I acknowledge the receipt of a copy of your English Grammar, left upon my office desk yesterday afternoon. When in your city some three weeks since, I was presented with a copy by S. S. Randall, Esq.; from the examination I was enabled to give it, and from the opinion expressed in relation to it, by one of the oldest and most experienced teachers of this county, to whom I presented it, as well as from the knowledge I possessed by reputation of its author, I had before I received the copy from you, determined to introduce it as far as I was able, as a class book in the schools of this county.

*From CHAUNCEY GOODRICH, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com. Schools, Onondaga Co.*

Canal, June 24, 1842.

DEAR SIR—Your favor of the 1st instant has just come to hand. The Grammar referred to has been received and examined. I am fully satisfied of its superior merits as a grammar for common schools, over any

other work I have seen. I shall take the earliest measures for its introduction into the schools under my supervision.

*From ROSWELL K. BOURNE, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com. Schools, Chenango Co.  
Pitcher, June 30. 1842.*

DEAR SIR—Some time since I received a copy of a work on English grammar, by the Rev. Peter Bullions, D.D. for which I am much obliged. I have given the book as close an examination as circumstances would permit. The book is well got up, and exhibits the thorough acquaintance of the author with his subject. I think it well calculated for our common schools.

*From GARNSEY BEACH, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Putnam Co.  
Patterson, July 2, 1842.*

DEAR SIR—Yours of the first ult, was received on Thursday last. As it respects your Grammar I have carefully examined it, and without entering into particulars, I consider it the best I have ever seen, and as such, I have recommended it to the several schools under my care.

*From O. W. RANDALL, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Oswego Co.  
Phænix, July 2, 1842.*

MR. P. BULLIONS,—Dear Sir—I have for the last two weeks devoted some considerable time, in perusing your system of English Grammar, and in reply to yours, requesting my views of the work, I can cheerfully say, that its general arrangement, is admirably adapted either to the novice or adept. The § 27th and § 28th on verbs, with the attendant remarks, are highly important, and essential to the full completion of any system of grammar. The work taken together is remarkable for simplicity, lucidity and exactness, and is calculated not only to make the correct grammarians, but also a correct prosodian. Whatever may be its fate in the field, it enters with a large share of merit on its side, and with full as fair prospect of success as any work extant.

*From W. S. PRESTON, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Com Schools, Suffolk Co. N. Y.  
Patchogue, L. I. July 6, 1842.*

PROF. P. BULLIONS,—Dear Sir—Some time since I received a copy of your English Grammar, for which I am much obliged. I have devoted as much time to its perusal as circumstances would permit, and can say of it, that I believe it claims decided preference over the Grammars generally used in schools throughout this country, and indeed I may say, over the many works on that science extant.

*From JAMES HENRY, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Herkimer Co.  
Little-Falls, July 11, 1842.*

PROF. BULLIONS,—Sir—I have read with as much attention as my avocations would allow, the work you had the kindness to send me, upon English Grammar, and so far as I am capable of forming an opinion of the merits of your book, I concur generally in the views expressed in the extract from the report of M. Boyd, as contained in your circular.

*From D. H. STEVENS, Dep. Supt. of Common Schools, Franklin Co. N. Y.*  
*Moira, Aug. 27, 1842.*

Rev. P. BULLIONS,—Dear Sir—On Wednesday the 24th instant, the committee determined upon a series of books, and I have the happiness to inform you, that your English Grammar will be reported on the first Wednesday in October at the next meeting of the Association, as the most brief, perspicuous and philosophical work, upon that subject within our knowledge.

*From R. W. FINCH, Esq. Dep. Supt. of Common Schools. Steuben Co. N. Y.*  
*Bath, Sept. 11, 1842.*

DEAR SIR—Having at length given your English Grammar a careful perusal; and having compared it with all the modern works on the subject, which have any considerable claims to merit, I am prepared to make a more enlightened decision, and one that is satisfactory to myself. *The work has my decided preference.*

*From J. W. FAIRFIELD, and CYRUS CURTISS, Esqrs. Dep. Superintendents of Common Schools, Hudson, N. Y.*

*Hudson, Sept. 15, 1842.*

Rev. P. BULLIONS,—Sir—We have examined a copy of your English Grammar, with reference to the introduction of the same into our public schools, and we take pleasure in saying that the examination has proved very satisfactory. We cannot, without occupying too much space, specify the particular points of excellence which we noticed in the arrangement of the different parts, the clearness of expression and illustration, and the precise adaptation of the Rules of Syntax, to the principles previously laid down. It is sufficient to say, that we believe it to be, in all the requisites of a good school book, superior to any other English Grammar which has come under our observation.

## II. THE PRINCIPLES OF LATIN GRAMMAR, &c.

This work is upon the foundation of ADAM'S LATIN GRAMMAR, so long and so well known as a text book in this country. The object aimed at was to combine with all that is excellent in the work of Adam, the important results of subsequent labors in this field,—to correct errors and supply defects,—to bring the whole up to that point which the present state of classical learning requires,—and to give it such a form as to render it a suitable part of the series. The following notices are furnished.

*From REV. JAMES W. ALEXANDER, Prof. Belles Lettres in the College of New-Jersey.*

*Princeton, N. J. Aug. 15, 1842.*

I have examined with some care the Latin Grammar of the Rev. Dr. Bullions. It is, if I may hazard a judgment, a most valuable work, evincing that peculiar apprehension of the pupil's necessities, which nothing but long continued practice as an instructor can produce. Among our various Latin Grammars, it deserves the place which is occupied by the best; and no teacher, as I think, need hesitate a moment about introducing it.

[From the Biblical Repertory, or Princeton Review, Jan. 1842.]

THE PRINCIPLES OF LATIN GRAMMAR, &c.—This completes the series proposed by the learned author, who has now furnished us with an English, a Latin, and a Greek Grammar, which have this peculiar recommendation that they are arranged in the same order, and expressed in the same terms, so far as the differences of the languages permit. The basis of this manual is the well known Grammar of Adam, an excellent summary, but at the same time one which admitted of retrenchment, addition, and emendation, all which have been ably furnished by Dr. Bullions. We have not made a business of perusing the work laboriously, but we have looked over the whole and bestowed particular attention on certain parts; and therefore feel at liberty to recommend it with great confidence, especially to all such teachers as have been in the habit of using Adam's Grammar.

### III. THE PRINCIPLES OF GREEK GRAMMAR, &c.

The object of this publication was to provide a comprehensive manual of Greek Grammar, adapted to the use of the younger, as well as to the more advanced class of students in our schools and colleges, and especially of those under the author's own care. To this end, the leading principles of Greek Grammar are exhibited in rules as few and brief as possible, so as to be easily committed to memory, and at the same time so comprehensive and perspicuous, as to be of general and easy application.

The following notices of this work, from different sources, will show the estimate formed of it by competent judges.

BULLIONS' GREEK GRAMMAR.—We have examined the second edition of Dr. Bullions' Greek Grammar, and consider it, upon the whole, the best grammar of the Greek language with which we are acquainted. The parts to be committed to memory are both concise and comprehensive; the illustrations are full without prolixity, and the arrangement natural and judicious. The present edition is considerably reduced in size from the former, without, as we apprehend, at all impairing its value.

It discovers in its compilation much labor and research, as well as sound judgment. We are persuaded that the general use of it in our grammar schools and academies would facilitate the acquisition of a thorough knowledge of the language. Judicious teachers pursuing the plan marked out by the author in his preface, would usually conduct their pupils to a competent knowledge of the language in a less time by several months than by the systems formerly in use. We therefore give it our cordial recommendation.

ELIPHALET NOTT,  
R. PROUDFIT,  
ALONZO POTTER.

*Union College, December 19, 1840.*

*Extract of a letter from Rev. DANIEL D. WHEDON, A.M. Professor of Ancient Languages and Literature, in the Wesleyan University, Middleton, Ct.*

*Wesleyan University, March 29, 1842.*

Rev. Dr. BULLIONS,—Dear Sir—Although I have not the honor of

your personal acquaintance, I take the liberty of addressing to you my thanks for your excellent Greek Grammar. Notwithstanding many personal, urgent, and interested appeals in favor of other grammars—and our literary market seems to abound with that kind of stock—the intrinsic superiority of your manual over every rival, induced me, after I saw your last edition, to adopt it in the Greek department of the Wesleyan University, and the success of my present Freshman class, amply justifies the course.

*Extract of a letter from HENRY BANNISTER, A.M. Principal of the Academy in Fairfield, N. Y.*

*Fairfield Academy, May 12, 1842.*

Rev. Doct. BULLIONS,—Sir—Sometime since I received your English and Greek Grammar, of each, one copy; and, if it is not too late, I would now return you my sincere thanks. I have not found in any work, suitable for a text book in schools, an analysis of the verb so strictly philosophical, and at the same time so easy to the learner to master and to retain when mastered, as that contained in your work. The editorial observations on government, and indeed the whole matter and arrangement of the Syntax, especially commend your work to general use in schools.

[From the Princeton Review, for Jan. 1840.]

It is with pleasure we welcome a second edition of this manual, which we continue to regard as still unsurpassed by any similar work in our language. The typography and the quality of the paper are uncommonly good. We observe valuable additions and alterations. For all that we can see, everything worth knowing in Thiersch is here condensed into a few pages. We have certainly never seen the anatomy of the Greek verb so neatly demonstrated. The Syntax is full, and presents the leading facts and principles, by rules, so as to be easily committed to memory. To learners who are beginning the language, and especially to teachers of grammar schools, we earnestly recommend this book.

[From the New-York Observer.]

BULLIONS' PRINCIPLES OF GREEK GRAMMAR, &c. 2d edition. With pleasure we hail the second edition of this valuable work, and are happy to find that the revision which it has undergone has resulted in decided improvements. Formed, as it is, on the basis of that most symmetrical of all modern grammars. Dr. Moor's Greek Grammar, which its learned author never lived to complete. It is now made to embrace not only the general rules, but all the *minutiae* essential to a critical knowledge of that ancient and elegant language. One of the chief excellencies of this model, and one that is fully retained in this grammar, is to be found in the simplicity, perspicuity, conciseness, and yet fulness of the definitions and rules for the various modifications of the language. The sense is clearly expressed, while scarcely a particle is used that could have been dispensed with. We have no hesitation in expressing the opinion, that Dr. B. has produced the most complete and useful Greek grammar that is to be found in the English language.

## RECOMMENDATIONS OF THE SERIES.

*From the Rev. JOHN LUDLOW, D.D. Provost of the University of Penn.*

No one I think can ever examine the series of Grammars published by Dr. Bullions, without a deep conviction of their superior excellence. When the English Grammar, the first in the series, was published in 1834. it was my pleasure, in connexion with some honored individuals, in the city of Albany, to bear the highest testimony to its worth; that testimony, if I mistake not, received the unanimous approval of all whose judgment can or ought to influence public opinion. I have seen, with great gratification, that the 2d and 3d in the series, the Latin and Greek, have met with the same favorable judgement, which I believe to be entirely deserved, and in which I do most heartily concur.

*From the Hon. ALFRED CONKLING, Judge of the United States Court in the Northern District of New-York, published in the Cayuga Patriot.*

BULLIONS' SERIES OF GRAMMARS.—By the recent publication of "THE PRINCIPLES OF LATIN GRAMMAR," this series of grammars (English, Latin, and Greek,) is at length completed. To their preparation, Dr. Bullions has devoted many years of the best portion of his life. In the composition of these books, he has shown an intimate acquaintance with the works of his ablest predecessors; and while upon the one hand, he has not scrupled freely to avail himself of their labors, on the other hand, by studiously avoiding all that is objectionable in them, and by re-modelling, improving, and illustrating the rest, he has unquestionably succeeded in constructing the best—decidedly the very best—grammar, in each of the three above named languages, that has yet appeared. Such is the deliberate and impartial judgment which has been repeatedly expressed by the most competent judges, respecting the English and Greek grammars; and such, I hesitate not to believe, will be the judgment formed of the Latin grammar. But independently of the superiority of these works separately considered, they possess, collectively, the great additional recommendation of having their leading parts *arranged in the same order*, and, as far as properly can be done, *expressed in the same language*. An acquaintance with one of them, therefore, cannot fail greatly to facilitate the study of another, and at the same time, by directing the attention of the student distinctly to the points of agreement and of difference in the several languages, to render his acquisitions more accurate, and at the same time to give him clearer and more comprehensive views of the general principles of language. The importance of using in academies and schools of the United States none but ably written and unexceptionable school books, is incalculable; and without intending unnecessarily to depreciate the labors of others, as a friend of sound education, I cannot refrain from expressing an earnest hope of seeing this series of grammars in general use. They are all beautifully printed on very good paper, and are sold at very reasonable prices.









YB 35669

PA6235  
394  
1845  
Educ  
Lib

M577099

